

英文法讲义

英文法講義

PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

By

W. WANG

王文川編

THE KAIMING BOOK COMPANY, LTD

英 文 法 講 義

二十三年三月初版 卅六年三月合訂本再版

每册定價國幣五元二角

編 著 者 王 文 川

發 行 者 開 明 書 店
代表人范洗人

印 刷 者 開 明 書 店

有 著 作 權 * 不 准 翻 印

編者的幾句話

學一種外國語，必須明其語的性質。說，明語的性質的，就是文法。文法原是學習一種外國語的方便手段，決不是和「三字經」「百家姓」一樣的東西。

可是中國向來學習英文法的態度有點奇特，初中一年級的學生，就叫他讀英文本的文法，先生叮嚀地囑咐學生，叫他讀熟“A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing”，學生也就起勁地讀；但他的中，卻毫沒有「名詞者爲人，地，或物之名也」這個觀念。讀了一本文法，還是等於不讀。

編者教了幾年英文，因有鑑於此，所以編了這本全用中文解釋的文法。這書的有否價值，編者亦不敢抱何等自信，且讓將來讀過這書的人去說吧。

這書完全是抽暇編成的，又加匆促付印，內中錯誤在所不免，望讀者諒之；如肯賜教，幸甚。

張沛霖先生對於本書，盡力之處很多，編者應該鄭重地道謝；還有胡伯懇與孫立源兩先生也很有幫助編者的地方，誌此聊表謝意。

編者識

一九三三年四月一日 白馬湖

本書之參考書

1. S. Yamasaki, A New English Grammar Self-taught.
2. Okada, Exercises in English Grammar.
3. L. Yamada, Manual of English Grammar.
4. Sagara, Lessons in English Grammar.

其他參照 Jespersen Kruisinga Onions 等諸名家之點亦甚多。

緒論 (INTRODUCTION)

I. 八品詞 (The Eight Parts of Speech)

英語“a”，“b”，“c”等二十六字母，每個叫做 **Letter** (文字)，全部叫做 **Alphabet**；連結文字而含有意義者叫做詞 (**Word**)。

詞的種類叫做品詞 (**Parts of Speech**)，品詞可分為以下八類：——

[注意] 文法家中亦有人將冠詞 (**Article**) 與形容詞分立，使助動詞 (**Auxiliary Verb**) 離動詞獨立而成爲十品詞的。

(1) **Nouns**(名詞)——不論有形或無形，凡表示一切事物之名者，統叫做名詞。

Columbus discovered America. (哥倫布發見美洲。)

There is a book on the table. (桌上有書。)

The people welcomed the squadron. (人民歡迎了艦隊。)

Bread is made of flour. (麵包是小麥粉做的。)

Diligence is secret of success. (勤勉爲成功的祕訣。)

(2) **Pronouns** (代名詞)——用以代表名詞。

Napoleon was a great man. He (=Napoleon) was a Frenchman. (拿破侖是一個偉人。他是法國人。)

London is the capital of England. It (=London) is situated on both banks of the Thames. (倫敦爲英國的首都。牠位在泰晤士河兩岸。)

I have a gold watch, and my sister has also one (=a gold watch).

Mine (=my watch) is better than hers (=her watch). (我有一隻金錶，我的妹子也有一隻。我的比她的好。)

(3) **Adjectives** (形容詞)——用以形容名詞或代名詞。

A rich man. (富人)

He is diligent. (他是勤力的。)

Articles (冠詞)——“a”, “an”, “the”三字原為形容詞之一種，但便宜上另立一門，叫做 **Article**。實際上“a”, “an”二字乃形容詞 **one** 之轉訛，用於指未決定之一個事物，故叫做 **Indefinite Articles** (不定冠詞)。“a”用在 **Consonant** (子音) 之前，“an”用在 **Vowel** (母音) 之前。又“the”原含有“this”, “that”等意思，用以指特定之事物，故叫做 **Definite Articles** (定冠詞)。

He bought a pear and an orange. (他買了一個梨頭和一個橘子。)

The lion is king of beasts. (獅為百獸之王。)

(4) **Verbs** (動詞)——用以述事物之動作或狀態。表此種動作或狀態之主體物，叫做 **Subject** (主語)。

He struck the boy. (他打了孩子。)

Snow is white. (雪是白的。)

凡動詞所表示之動作只止於自身而不及於其他事物者，皆謂之 **Intransitive Verb** (自動詞)。

The sun shines. (太陽發光。)

Flowers bloom. (花開。)

自動詞中亦有非得他詞之補助不能表出完全之意味的。如：

He is a scholar. (他是學者。)

He became a merchant. (他成了商人。)

上例中之“is”與“became”因不能單獨表示完全之意味，故此等自動詞叫做 **Incomplete Intransitive Verb** (不完全自動詞)。補助此等動詞之詞叫做 **Complement** (補足語)。

[注意] 上例第一句中之“is”，因其只不過結合“**He**”與“**a scholar**”表明其間之關係，故亦有人稱做 **Copular** (繫詞)。

動詞所表之動作及於其他事物者，叫做 **Transitive Verb** (他動詞)。受其動作之事物，叫做 **Object** (目的語)。

He killed a tiger. (他殺了一隻虎。)

他動詞中，亦有需要兩個目的語者。如：

He gave me a watch. (他給了我一隻錶。)

此種動詞，叫做 **Dative Verb** (授與動詞)。表所給與之人者爲 **Indirect Object** (間接目的語)，表所給與之物者爲 **Direct Object** (直接目的語)。

他動詞中又有非得他詞——即補足語——之補助不能表出完全之意味的。此種他動詞叫做 **Incomplete Transitive Verb** (不完全他動詞)。

He made her his wife. (他把她做了妻子。)

自動詞之補足語，因屬 **Subject**，故叫做 **Subjective Complement** (主格補足語)。他動詞之補足語，因屬 **Object**，故叫做 **Objective Complement** (目的格補足語)。又，不問 **Complement** 之爲 **Subjective** 或 **Objective**，若爲名詞，便叫做 **Noun Complement**，若爲形容詞，便叫做 **Adjective Complement**。

Auxiliary Verbs (助動詞)——動詞之中有結合其他動詞而加以特殊的意味者，這叫做助動詞。

He will come. (他將來。)

I can swim. (我能游泳。)

(5) **Adverbs** (副詞)——用以修飾動詞，形容詞，及其他副詞。

He speaks English very well. (他英語說得很好。)

He is a very clever boy. (他是個很聰明的孩子。)

(6) **Prepositions** (前置詞)——位在名詞或代名詞之前，表示名詞或代名詞與其他詞之關係。

I went to the park with him. (我和他往公園裏去了。)

He stood before the door. (他立在門前。)

前置詞下面的名詞或代名詞，爲前置詞的 **Object**。如上例中

“park”, 爲 “to” 的 Object, “him” 爲 “with” 的 Object, “door” 爲 “before” 的 Object.

(7) **Conjunctions** (接續詞)——用以連結詞與詞 (Word), 短語與短語 (Phrase), 句與句。

They are father **and** son. (他們是父子。)

Did you go there on foot **or** by train? (你還是徒步往那裏去的呢, 抑還是乘車去的?)

He came **after** you left. (你去了之後他來了。)

(8) **Interjections** (間投詞)——插入文中, 用以表示感情。

Alas! how foolish I was! (唉! 我是怎樣的愚蠢呀!)

Oh! what shall I do! (哦! 我怎樣做好呢!)

以上八品詞相互之關係如下:——

Adjective + **Noun**

Adverb + **Adjective**

Adverb + **Adverb**

{ **Verb** + Adverb

{ **Adverb** + Verb

Preposition + { **Noun**
 { **Pronoun**

詞 + **Conjunction** + 詞

短語 + **Conjunction** + 短語

句 + **Conjunction** + 句

Interjection (獨立)

Exercise I.

試述下列文句中各 Word 之品詞:——

1. One day some boys went out for a walk. (有一天幾個孩子出去散步。)

2. It was a fine day, and the birds sang songs and flew from tree to

tree. (那是天氣晴朗的一日,鳥唱着歌,從這樹飛到那樹。)

3. They waled quickly down the steep lane to the river. (他們快快地走下了峻嶮的小路往河邊去了。)
4. Heigh-ho! I'm tire^d to death! (啊唷!我疲乏得要死了!)
5. Never tell a lie. (決不要說謊。)

II. 句 (Sentence)

把 Word 連結起來表示整個思想的,叫做句 (Sentence)。例如 “a pretty bird,” 此三語因思想未曾完結,不得稱為句;若說

I see a pretty bird. (我看到一隻美麗的鳥。)

則思想完全,就成為 Sentence。

每一 Sentence 的最初一字,必須用大寫字 (Capital Letter)。

凡 Sentence 皆由二大要素合成。其一為思想之主題事物,叫做 Subject (主部),其二述主題事物之動作,狀態,作用或性質,叫做 Predicate (述部)。如

Birds sing. (鳥唱歌。)

這 Sentence 中,“Birds” 為 Subject, “sing” 為 Predicate。又如

These pretty little birds sing very merrily. (這些美麗的小鳥非常愉快地唱歌。)

這 Sentence 雖然很長,然其要素仍不外乎兩種,即 “These pretty little birds” 為其主部, “sing very merrily” 為其述部。

主部大抵以名詞或代名詞為中心,叫做 Subject-word (主語); 述部大抵以動詞為中心,叫做 Predicate-word (述語)。

凡修飾主語及述語的各部分,統叫做 Modifier (修飾語)。如前例中 “these pretty little” 為主語 “birds” 之 modifier; “very merrily” 為述語 “sing” 之 Modifier。

[注意] Sentence 必須具備 Subject 與 Predicate, 但亦有一方或雙方皆略去者。例如表命令的文句中, 常省去主語 "You", 如 "Come here", "Go away" 等。又如表感嘆之文句 "What a pretty bird!", 其中有主語 "it" 與述語 "is" 略去, 補足起來, 則為 "What a pretty bird it is!"

(1) 句的成分 (The Elements of the Sentence)

句的成分, 依其構造可分為 Word (詞), Phrase (短語), 及 Clause (短句) 三類。

1. **Word** (詞)——凡人的聲音之含有意義者統叫做詞。詞可分為八品類, 我們前面已經說過了。
2. **Phrase** (短語)——集合兩個或兩個以上的 Word 而與一 Part of Speech 有同樣作用者, 叫做 Phrase. Phrase 不具備 Subject 與 Predicate.

How to do this is unknown. (這東西的製法不明。)

I don't know how to do it. (我不知道這是怎樣做的。)

上兩例中第一句的 "How to do this" 為句中的 Subject, 第二句的 "how to do it" 為 Object; 兩者皆相當於 Noun, 故叫做 **Noun Phrase** (名詞短語)。

A man of courage lived in this place. (一個勇敢的人住在這裏。)

上例中之 "a man of courage" 與 "a courageous man" 同義, "of courage" 即等於形容詞 "courageous", 故 "of courage" 叫做 **Adjective Phrase** (形容詞短語)。

又, 同例中的 "in this place" 與副詞 "here" 相等, 故謂之 **Adverb Phrase** (副詞短語)。

Phrase 之最普通者為以上三種, 但亦有其他種類的 Phrase, 今略述如下:——

Verb Phrase (動詞短語):——

Make haste slowly. (從容急事。)

Preposition Phrase (前置詞短語):——

In spite of his learning, he is a fool. (雖然他有學問,他却是一個愚物。)

Conjunction Phrase (接續詞短語):——

He has experience as well as knowledge. (他兼有經驗與知識。)

Interjection Phrase (間投詞短語):——

Good Heavens! (老天菩薩!)

3. **Clause (短句)**——成爲 **Sentence** 的一部而自身具有 **Subject** 與 **Predicate** 者,叫做 **Clause**.

例如 “*He is poor*” 與 “*He is contented*”, 各爲具有 **Subject** 與 **Predicate** 的 **Sentence**. 若把這兩句 **Sentence** 用 “*but*” 連結起來, 成爲

He is poor, but he is contented. (他雖窮,却是安分守己。)

一 **Sentence** 時,則 “*He is poor*” 與 “*he is contented*” 兩者,就各成爲 **Clause**. 又因爲這兩個 **Clause** 在於對等的地位,故叫做 **Coordinate Clause** (對等短句)。或因其可以互相獨立,故又叫做 **Independent Clause** (獨立短句)。

What he says is true. (他說的話是真的。)

上句中的 “*What he says*”, 雖具有 **Subject** “*he*” 與 **Predicate verb** “*says*”, 然其意味全與 “*his statement*” 相同,故其作用與名詞無異,爲 “*is*” 之 **Subject**. 此種 **Clause**, 叫做 **Noun Clause** (名詞短句)。

This is the village where I was born. (這是我誕生出世的村子。)

上例的意味,與 “*This is my native village*” 相等。其中 “*where I was born*” 這一 **Clause**, 雖具有主語 “*I*” 與述語 “*was born*”, 其意味畢竟和 “*native*” 這形容詞相同,爲 “*village*” 之修飾語。故

此種 Clause, 叫做 **Adjective Clause** (形容詞短句)。

I did as he told me. (我照他所說地做了。)

上例中“as he told me”雖具有主語“he”與述語“told”, 全部卻為“did”的修飾語, 其作用與副詞同, 故叫做 **Adverb Clause** (副詞短句)。

上述三例中之“what he says”, “where I was born”與“as he told me”三者, 雖各有 Subject 與 Predicate, 其作用卻與名詞, 形容詞, 副詞等單語相同, 必須隸屬於其他部分, 自身不能表出完結的思想。故 **Noun Clause**, **Adjective Clause**, **Adverb Clause** 三者, 都叫做 **Subordinate Clause** (從屬短句) 或 **Dependent Clause** (附屬短句)。反之, 統率此等從屬短句者, 叫做 **Principal Clause** (主位短句)。

今總括以上所說, 列表於下:——

<p style="text-align: center;">Word</p>	<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>Noun Pronoun</p> </td> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>Verb</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"> <p>Adjective</p> </td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> <p>Adverb</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"> <p>Preposition</p> </td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"> <p>Conjunction</p> </td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"> <p>Interjection</p> </td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	<p>Noun Pronoun</p>	<p>Verb</p>	<p>Adjective</p>	<p>Adverb</p>	<p>Preposition</p>		<p>Conjunction</p>		<p>Interjection</p>	
<p>Noun Pronoun</p>	<p>Verb</p>										
<p>Adjective</p>	<p>Adverb</p>										
<p>Preposition</p>											
<p>Conjunction</p>											
<p>Interjection</p>											
<p style="text-align: center;">Phrase</p> <p>Preposition + { Pronoun Noun</p>	<p>Noun Phrase Adjective Phrase Adverb Phrase</p>										
<p style="text-align: center;">Clause</p> <p>Conjunction + Subject + Predicate</p>	<p>Coordinate Clause Principal Clause</p> <p>Dependent Clause { Adjective Clause Noun Clause Adverb Clause</p>										

Phrase	
Noun	How to do this is unknown.
Phrase	(<i>The method</i> is unknown.)
Adjective	We all love the flag of China .
Phrase	(We all love the <i>Chinese</i> flag.)
Adverb	My uncle lives in this village at present.
Phrase	(My uncle lives <i>here now</i> .)

Dependent Clause	
Noun	That we shall succeed is certain.
Clause	(<i>Our success</i> is certain.)
Adjective	I like a boy who is kind.
Clause	(I like a <i>kind</i> boy.)
Adverb	Put it where you found it.
Clause	(Put it <i>there</i> .)

(2) 句的種類 (Kinds of Sentence)

(a) 用法上的分類 (Sentence Classified by Use).

1. Declarative (or Assertive) Sentence (敘述文句) —

爲單敘述事實的文句。敘述文句之末尾用 **Period (or Full Stop)** (句點)“.”。

The sun shines in the day-time. (太陽在白晝發光。)

I can not swim. (我不能游泳。)

2. **Interrogative Sentence** (疑問文句)——此爲發問之文句。疑問文句之末尾必用 **Interrogation Mark (or Question Mark)** (問號)“?”。

When does the sun shine? (太陽什麼時候發光?)

Can you swim? (你能游泳嗎?)

3. **Imperative Sentence** (命令文句)——此爲表命令，禁止，願望等之文句。命令文句之末尾通例用 **Period** (句點)，但亦有用 **Exclamation Mark** (感嘆號)“!”以強語勢的。

Come here, my boy. (我的孩子，到這裏來呀。)

Boys, stop that noise. (孩子們，不要那樣紛擾。)

Lend me some money. (請借我若干錢。)

命令文句之主語，必爲“you”，但通常略去。

4. **Exclamative(or Exclamatory)Sentence**(感嘆文句)——以感嘆之語氣敘述事物之文句，謂之感嘆文句。末尾用 **Exclamation Mark** (感嘆號)“!”。

O, what a pretty flower this is! (哦，這是多麼美的花呀!)

How honest he is! (他真是一個誠實的人呀!)

[注意] 以上四種之外，尙有人添立 **Optative Sentence** (祈願文句) 一項，將表示祈願之文句，歸入此類。其實這原是感嘆文句之一種，無須另立一門。如

May the emperor live long! (願聖壽無窮!)

上述四種文句，凡表示打消之意的，叫做 **Negative Sentence** (否定文句)；不表打消之意的，叫做 **Affirmative Sentence** (肯定文句)。

(b) 構造上的分類 (Sentence Classified By Structure).

1. **Simple Sentence** (單文句)——只含一個 Subject 與一個 Predicate verb 的文句,叫做單文句。

Bird flies. (鳥飛。)

A crow, stealing a piece of meat at a butcher's shop, flew to a high branch of a tree. (烏鴉在肉店裏偷了一片肉後,飛到高高的樹枝上去了。)

2. **Complex Sentence** (複合文句)——含有 Dependent Clause 之文句,叫做複合文句。

I know that he is honest. (我知道他是正直的。)[名詞短句]

This is the house where he lived. (這是他住過的家。)[形容詞短句]

I must wait till he comes. (我必須等待着候他到來。)[副詞短句]

3. **Compound Sentence** (集合文句)——連接兩個或兩個以上的 Independent Clause 的文句,叫做集合文句。

The sun rose, and the fog dispersed. (太陽出來,霧就散了。)

He is poor, but he is contented. (他雖窮,却安分守己。)

4. **Mixed Sentence** (混合文句)——複合文句與複合文句或單文句結合的文句,叫做混合文句。

I am as poor as you are, but I am happy because I am contented. (我和你一樣貧窮,但我因為滿足着,所以是幸福的。)

It is true he is old, but he is strong. (的確他是年老了,但他却是壯健的。)

上兩例中第一例為兩句複合文句的結合,第二例為複合文句與單文句的結合,都是混合文句。

Exercise II.

試述下列文句構造上的種類,並指出 Phrase 或 Clause 的類別:——

1. We arrived there after the sun had set. (日沒之後,我們到了那邊。)

2. We arrived there after sunset. (日沒後我們到了那邊。)

3. You advance slowly, but steadily. (你進步雖緩,却是着實。)
4. The spring I was fourteen I left home. (十四歲的春季我離了家。)
5. Is this the man of whom you spoke the other day? (這就是你前幾天說過的那個人嗎?)
6. It is certain that he will succeed. (他之成功是當然的。)
7. I have no work to do and no one to talk with. (我沒有做的事情,也沒有互相談天的人。)
8. Young birds may fall when they begin to fly, but their wings grow stronger through these efforts. (雛鳥開始飛時,也許要掉下來,但他們的羽翼却因此種努力而強健起來。)
9. To tell a lie is not right. (說謊話是不行的。)
10. Is he an Englishman or an American? (他是英國人呢還是美國人?)

(3) 語 的 配 置 (Position of Words)

語的怎樣配列順序,構成文句,乃是一個很複雜的問題。今略舉大體的規則如下:詳細的說明,當在各品詞篇中講述。

動詞有五類,我們已經講過,句的形式也可以依動詞分作五種。

第一. [主語 + 動詞]

Flower blooms. (花開。)

第二. [主語 + 動詞 + 補足語]

Henry is a poor boy. (亨利是個窮孩子。)

第三. [主語 + 動詞 + 目的語]

Columbus discovered America. (哥倫布發見美洲。)

第四. [主語 + 動詞 + 間接目的 + 直接目的]

He gave me a watch. (他給了我一隻錶。)

第五. [主語 + 動詞 + 目的語 + 補足語]

They elected him a mayor. (他們選他為市長。)

動詞	{	自動詞	{	完全自動詞.....第一形式	
				不完全自動詞.....補足語.....第二形式	
	{	他動詞	{	完全他動詞	目的語一個.....第三形式
					目的語兩個.....第四形式
		不完全他動詞..目的語.補足語..	第五形式		

Exercise III.

試述以下各文句屬於何種形式：——

1. He is my uncle. (他是我的叔父。)
2. His father made him a physician. (他父親使他成了醫生。)
3. His mother made him a new suit of clothes. (他母親給他做了一套新的衣服。)
4. Mr. Chang teaches English in that school. (張君在那個校裏教英文。)
5. I have no brother. (我沒有兄弟。)
6. He taught me English. (他教我英文。)
7. They called him old Ben. (他們叫他爲斑老伯。)
8. They all became great men. (他們都成了偉人。)
9. I will show you the way. (我願給你引路。)
10. We must make our parents happy. (我們必須使兩親幸福。)

第一章

名詞 (NOUNS)

I. 名詞的分類 (Classes of Nouns)

名詞通例分爲以下五種：

- (1) 固有名詞 (Proper Nouns)
- (2) 普通名詞 (Common Nouns)
- (3) 集合名詞 (Collective Nouns)
- (4) 物質名詞 (Material Nouns)
- (5) 抽象名詞 (Abstract Nouns)

【注意】與(5)的抽象名詞相對，(1)，(2)，(3)，(4)四種都叫做具體名詞 (Concrete Nouns).

A. 固有名詞 (Proper Nouns)

固有名詞是附於特殊的人或物的特殊名稱，全用大寫字(Capital Letter)寫起。就原則而論，普通並無複數形，且不附定冠詞。其最普通者，列舉如下：——

- (a) 人名，地名，船名及公共建築物等的名稱。
- (b) 報章，雜誌，書籍等的名稱。
- (c) 宗教名——如 Christianity (耶穌教)，Buddhism (佛教) 等。

(d) 天體名——如 Venus (金星), Mars (火星), Jupiter (木星)等。

[例外] 太陽, 月, 地球三者, 雖為天體, 却歸入在 Common Noun 之中, 用小寫字 (Small Letter) 寫起, 且附定冠詞 “the”。

(e) 月, 曜, 及祭日的名稱——如 January (一月), February (二月), Sunday (日曜), Monday (月曜), Christmas (耶穌聖誕節), Easter (復活節)等。

[注意] 四季名之 spring, summer, autumn, winter, 通例作普通名詞看待。

固有名詞用作通普名詞 (Proper Nouns Used As Common Nouns)

固有名詞原為一人一物的特殊名稱, 所以沒有複數, 不附冠詞。前面已經說過, 冠詞 “a” 或 “an”, 含有 “one” 的意味。譬如世界上只有一個上海, 若我們說 “a Shanghai”, 那便是可笑了。又, 定冠詞 “the”, 原為 “this”, “that” 等之意, 乃用於區別及指定一種事物的。所以 “the Shanghai” 是不通的說法。然而, 固有名詞也竟有當作普通名詞用的。作普通名詞用時, 單數複數冠詞等的用法, 全依照普通名詞的規則。今舉固有名詞轉用作普通名詞的例於下:——

1. 表示與固有名詞有同一或類似的性質的:

I wish to become **a Newton**. (我希望成一個牛頓那樣的人。)

He is **the Newton** of the age. (他是當代的牛頓。)

I hope there may be many future **Newtons** in this class. (我望這級中有許多未來的牛頓。)

上三例中的 “Newton” 一字, 乃 “great mathematician like Newton” 之意。

2. 有同一固有名詞的，不止一個時：

There are three Changs in this class. (這級中有三個姓張的人。)

Is the Chang you speak of a tall man? (你所說的那張君是身子高大的人嗎?)

3. 指國民，家族或團體中的一人時：

He is a true American. (他是一個真正的美國人。)

His father is a Wang, and his mother a Chang. (他父親是姓王的人，他母親是姓張的人。)

He is a Christian. (他是個基督教徒。)

固有名詞與定冠詞 (“The” with Proper Nouns)

附定冠詞“the”的固有名詞，主要的有以下數種：

- a. 江河——如：the Thames (泰晤士河), the Rhine (萊茵河), the Yangtsekiang (揚子江)等。
- b. 海洋，灣，海峽，運河——如：the Red Sea (紅海), the Pacific Ocean (太平洋), the Persian Gulf (波斯灣), the Straits of Gibraltar (直布羅陀海峽), the Panama Canal (巴拿馬運河)等。

[注意] 海灣有兩種說法，如‘東京灣’，若把灣字放在前面，下接“of”，則為“the Bay of Tokyo”；但若把東京兩字放在前面，就不必用定冠詞，只說“Tokyo Ba.”。其他“Mount” (山)，“Lake” (湖)，“Cape” (岬)等，若將這些字作帽頭用時，概不用定冠詞“the”。如：Mount Fuji, Lake Ontario, Cape Comorin 等。

- c. 船及艦隊——如：the Hsin Kiang Tien (新江天), the Atlantic Fleet (大西洋艦隊), the Victoria (維多利亞艦), the Baltic Squadron (巴爾蒂克艦隊)等。
- d. 官衙，學校，病院，劇場等公共建築物及商店公司——如：the Foreign Office (外交部), the Liverpool University (利物

浦大學), the Red Cross Hospital (紅十字病院), the Imperial Theatre (帝國劇場), the League of Nations (國際聯盟團), the Kaiming Book Co. (開明書店)等。

[注意] 英國之有名建築物, 有許多不附以定冠詞。如: Westminster Abber, London Bridge, Oxford University 等。又, 含 “Street”, “Park”, “Station” 等詞的固有名詞, 普通亦不用 “the”。如: Regent Street, Hyde Park, Victoria Station 等。

- e. 報章, 雜誌, 書物——如: the Chicago Daily News (芝加哥日報), the Juvenile Student (中學生雜誌), the Bible (聖經) 等。

[注意] 人名作為書物的題目時, 不用 “the”。如:

Have you read Mencius? (你讀過孟子嗎?)

又, 以作者代表作品時, 亦不用 “the”。如

I have read Shakespeare. (我讀過莎翁的作品。)

f. 複數的固有名詞:

1. 國名——the United States of America (亞美利加合衆國)。
2. 國民名——the Chinese (中華民國人), the English (英國人)。
3. 家族名——the Capulets (客普來特家)。
4. 山脈名——the Himalayas (西馬拉亞山脈), the Rocky Mountains (落機山脈)。
5. 羣島名——the East Indies (東印度羣島), the Philippines (非列賓羣島)。

[注意] 單數形的地名, 有少數也用定冠詞。這些地名, 原為普通名詞的轉用。如荷蘭首都 “the Hague”, 原義為(庭園); 倫敦之街名 “the Strand”, 原義為(河岸)。

- g. 表性格的形容詞與人名同用時——如: the ambitious Caesar

(野心勃勃的凱撒), Peter the Great (=the great Peter 彼得大帝)等。

[注意] 若固有名詞前面有“poor”, “old”, “little”, “young”, “dear”, “good”, “honest”, “sweet”等常態形容詞時,因其不表特殊的性格,故不用“the”。

h. 國語名——普通國語名,如: Chinese (中國語), English (英語)等,概不附定冠詞。但指出特定的國語或一作品的國語時,附“the”。如:——

- 比較 { He is studying both **French** and **English**. (他兼習法語和英語。)
- 比較 { “**Eau**” is the **French** for the **English** “**water**”
(Eau 為相當於英語 water 的法國語。)
- 比較 { To him **French** is easier than **German**. (在他,法語比德語容易。)
- 比較 { This story is translated from the **English**. (這故事是從英語翻譯的。)

Exercise IV.

(1) 將定冠詞“the”放入下列各句中適當的地方:——

1. English Channel lies between **Great Britain** and **France**.
2. **Washington** is the capital of **United States** of **North America**.
3. **Himalaya** are the highest mountain range on earth.
4. Bay of Bengal separates **India** from **Burma**.
5. **Gentle Paul** had laid down his life for his country.
6. Other famous public buildings are **House of Parliament**, **Buckingham Palace**, **British Museum**, **Westminster Abbey**, **St. Paul's Cathedral**, and so on.

(2) 將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 諸君中，有許多將來的歌德吧。
2. 你不在家的時候，有一個姓王的人來訪問過了。
3. 他在校裏畢業後，就出發到南洋羣島去了。
4. 我讀孟子，我的哥哥讀論語。
5. 揚子江流注東海。

B. 普通名詞 (Common Nouns)

普通名詞者是同種類的人或具有一定形狀的事物間普遍地通用的名詞。

如說“學生”，則凡是在學校裏求學的，不論那一個人都可適用，所以這學生兩字便是普通名詞。又如說“書”，則凡是用紙張裝釘有文章的都可以叫做書，所以書也是普通名詞。但是“水”卻不能叫做 Common Noun；雖然不論井水，海水，河水都可以叫做水，但是因為牠沒有一定的形狀，所以不得列入普通名詞。

普通名詞有指同種類人或物的全體者，有只指一個者，亦有指其中數個者。表一個人或物時為單數 (Singular)，表兩個或兩個以上時為複數 (Plural)。

普通名詞指不定的一個人或物時，用不定冠詞；指特定的人或物時，不論單數複數，用定冠詞。所以普通名詞的單數，必附定冠詞或不定冠詞。

普通名詞的用法 (Uses of Common Nouns)

1. 將不定冠詞冠在單數普通名詞前面時，有以下兩種意味。
(a) 一般不定 (Universal-Indefinite) (a=any.)

A boy (=any boy) likes to play. (孩子喜歡玩耍。)

上例中的“A boy”，並不只限定一個孩子，為“any boy”(無論那一個孩子)的意味，故結局與“All boys”(凡孩子)同義。

(b) 有限不定(Limited-Indefinite)(a=a certain.)

I met a boy. (我遇見了一個孩子。)

上例中的“a boy”等於“a certain boy”(某一個孩子)，與(a)例的“A boy”(凡孩子)有一般的意味者不同。

2. 將定冠詞冠在單數普通名詞的前面，則指特定(Definite)的一人或一物。

He is the man I spoke of to you the other day. (他就是我前幾天對你說起過的那個人。)

上例中的“the man”，因為有“I spoke of to you the other day”這幾個限制的字附在上面，成為特定的人，所以用定冠詞。

3. 普通名詞的複數形，有相當於以上三種單數形的用法，為容易了解起見，列表於下。

Singular

Plural

Universal Indefinite

A boy likes to play.

Boys like to play.

(凡孩子喜歡遊戲。)

(孩子都喜歡遊戲。)

Limited Indefinite

I met a boy.

I met some boys.

(我遇見了一個孩子。)

(我遇見了數個孩子。)

Definite

The boy whom I met.

The boys whom I met.

(我所遇見的孩子。)

(我所遇見的孩子們。)

4. 不定複數(Indefinite Plural)——此爲不加形容詞或其他語，只漠然表示多數的用法。

We used to chat for hours together. (我們老是整幾個鐘頭一處談天。)

The sound was to be heard miles away. (聲音在好幾哩路之外可以聽到。)

5. 將定冠詞附在單數普通名詞上面，可表示該普通名詞的種類全體。這叫做 **Representative Singular** (代表單數)，如說“犬是忠實的動物”，英語中可用三種方法敘述：

(a) **The dog is a faithful animal.**

(b) **A dog is a faithful animal.**

(c) **Dogs are faithful animals.**

上三例中的 (a)，即爲代表單數的例。

[注意] man 與 woman 兩字，不在此例。表全體時，既不附“a”或“the”，亦不用複數。如：

Man is lord of the creation. (人爲萬物之靈。)

Man is stronger than woman. (男子比女子強。)

6. 代表單數又有用以表示抽象的觀念的。

The pen is mightier than the sword. (筆比劍有力 = 文勝於武。)

What is learned in the cradle is carried to the grave. (兒時所學的東西，至死不忘。)

When one is poor the beggar will come out. (人窮時就現出乞丐的根性。)

上例皆以具體物表示該具體物所屬的抽象觀念：

the pen = literary influence. (文筆的力)

the sword = military power. (武力)

the cradle = infancy. (幼年時代)

the grave = death. (死)

Exercise V.

試將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 男子非幫助女子不可。
2. 牛有角，但馬沒有。
3. 蒸汽機關是 James Watt 所發明。
4. 他拋去軍職，做了一個農夫。
5. 好幾天過去了，他還是一點信息都沒有。

C. 集合名詞 (Collective Nouns)

集合名詞是集合體的名稱。如軍人的集合體是軍隊 (army)，軍艦的集合體是艦隊 (fleet) 等。

集合名詞可分為以下三種：

1. 全等於普通名詞的集合名詞——將集合體作為一個團體看待的集合名詞，實為普通名詞的一種，用法與普通名詞毫無差異。單數時可用不定冠詞，亦可成為複數。

今將這種集合名詞擇要列舉於下：——

Singular	Plural
a nation (國民)	nations
a people (民族)	peoples
a family (家族)	families
an army (軍隊)	armies
a fleet (艦隊)	fleets
a party (黨,團)	parties
a company (公司)	companies

- { The French are a gay **people**. (法國人是快活的民族。)
- { The Chinese **people**. (中華民族)
- { The **peoples** of Asia. (亞細亞諸民族)

2. 單數形具有複數意義的普通名詞——不將集合體看作一個團體，而指這集合體所組織成的個別物體者，屬於此類。此種集合名詞，又叫做 **Noun of Multitude** (羣集名詞)。

Common Noun

He has a large **family**.

(他有着一個大的家族。)

This **class** is very small.

(這級人數很少。)

Noun of Multitude

Are your **family** all well?

(你家的人個個都好嗎?)

This **class** are all diligent.

(這級人都個個用功。)

以上所舉，為集合名詞的普通名詞與羣集名詞兼用的例，集合名詞中又有專用作羣集名詞，而絕對無複數形者，今略舉其主要者如下：——

the nobility (貴族)

the clergy (僧侶)

the peasantry (農民)

the police (警官)

people (人民, 人人)

cattle (牛)

poultry (家禽)

fish (魚)

[注意] 附有“the”者，係指屬於一類的人全部而言。又，“fish”一字作純粹的普通名詞用時，可用不定冠詞及複數形。

In England, **the nobility** are wealthy. (英國的貴族是富裕的。)

These **cattle** are foreign breed. (這些牛是外國產的。)

The **people** love their king. (人民愛他們的王。)

People say he is very rich. (人們說他很有錢。)

Twenty or thirty **people** were present. (二三十人出席了。)

羣集名詞既為單數形而有複數意義，則羣集名詞用作主語時，其動詞亦必用複數。此種複數形的動詞用於單數形的主語，叫做 **Plural Concord** (複數一致)。又，羣集名詞，因其意義為複數，故代名詞用“they”及“who”。Singular Collective Noun 則用“it”與“which”。

Collective Singular

A **civilized people** knows its own interest.
 (文明的國民知道自己的利害關係。)
 A **people which is civilized**.
 (開化的國民。)

Noun of Multitude

Educated **people** know their own interest. (有教育的人們知道他們自己的利害關係。)
People who are idle.
 (懶怠的人們。)

[注意] “the public” (公衆)一字,其動詞單複兩形可以通用。

The **public is (are)** the best judge (judges). (公衆是最善的判斷者。)

3. 形與意味皆爲單數的集合名詞——此種集合名詞,其性質與物質名詞相同,舉其重要者如下:——

clothing (衣服) furniture (家具) game (獵物)

food (食物) produce (農作物) merchandise (商品)

此等名詞,其用法全與物質名詞相同,即形雖爲單數,若指一般事物時,不用不定冠詞;表數的觀念時,用 “a piece of”, “an article of” 等;表量的形容詞爲 “much”, “little”, 不宜用 “many” 或 “few”。

A table is a useful **piece of furniture**. (桌是有用的家具。)

Man needs various **kinds of food**. (人需要各種食物。)

Much clothing is needed in cold countries. (在寒冷的國中需要許多衣服。)

We have plenty of room, but **little furniture**. (我們房間多,但家具却少。)

[注意] 上例中 “clothing” 爲單數,而 “clothes” 通例爲複數; “merchandise” 爲單數而 “goods” 常爲複數。又, “produce” (田地上的農作物) 爲單數,而 products (物產) 常用複數。

4. 此外尚有作數量名詞用的集合名詞,舉其要者如次:——

a crowd of people

a shoal (or school) of fish

a group of children

a brood of chickens

a herd of cattle, horses, deer	a collection of painting
a flock of sheep, birds	a party of tourists
a swarm of bees	

此等皆為第一種的集合名詞，與普通名詞相等，所以當然可用複數形。

Exercise VI.

I. 試將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 桌是必要的家具。
2. 冬天需要許多衣服。
3. 他非養許多家族裏面的人不可。
4. 中國人是勤勉的國民。
5. 那隻輪船也乘客人，也裝貨品。

II. 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. The audience on that occasion were very large. (那時聽衆很多。)
2. His family is set against the match. (他的家族反對這婚事。)
3. The army was flying in all directions. (軍隊向四方逃散。)
4. Who is that people at the gate? (門前的人們是誰?)
5. The audience was satisfied. (聽衆感到了滿足。)

D. 物質名詞 (Material Nouns)

物質名詞表示物質的名稱。

物質名詞與普通名詞不同，無一定的形狀。如：“This bottle is made of glass”中的“bottle”，因有一定形狀，破碎後便不得再叫做“bottle”，故為普通名詞；但“glass”並無定形，破碎後仍不失為“glass”，故為物質名詞。物質名詞的主要者如下：

(a) 物品的材料：

wood (木材), stone (石頭), ivory (象牙), wool (羊毛), earth (土), paper (紙), cotton (棉花) 等。

(b) 金屬及化學元素：

gold (金), silver (銀), iron (鐵), copper (銅), oxygen (酸素), hydrogen (水素), nitrogen (窒素) 等。

(c) 液體及氣體：

water (水), wine (葡萄酒), beer (啤酒), oil (油), gas (瓦斯), smoke (烟), air (空氣) 等。

(d) 食料品：

rice (米), meat (肉), fish (魚), sugar (糖), salt (鹽), fruit (水果), bread (麵包) 等。

[注意] 食料品中如“apple”, “peach”, “egg”, “biscuit”等，因能分別個數，故屬於普通名詞。又，“wheat”（小麥）與“barley”（大麥）為物質名詞，但“oats”（燕麥）常用複數。

物質名詞的用法 (Uses of Material Nouns)

物質名詞因無一定形狀，故不能如普通名詞有個數分別。其規則：

(a) 物質名詞無複數。

(b) 物質名詞不得用不定冠詞“a”或“an”。

1. 物質名詞汎指一物全般時不用冠詞：

Beef is more nourishing than pork. (牛肉比豬肉富於滋養。)

Milk is made into butter and cheese. (牛乳製成牛油與乾酪。)

2. 物質名詞表數量時，用“some”（若干的），“a little”（一點兒），much（許多）等形容詞，疑問文及否定文中用“any”。

I want **some** sugar. (我要些糖。)

If you have **any** money, please lend me **some**. (假使你有錢，請借點給我。)

We have recently had **much** rain. (近來雨水很多。)

3. 物質名詞指特殊的物質時，用定冠詞“the”。

The water of this well is not good to drink. (這井裏的水喝不來。)

物質名詞用作普通名詞

(Material Nouns Used as Common Nouns)

物質名詞表物質的種類，部分，偶發事件，或以物質做成的物品時，常用作普通名詞。此等名詞，既可用不定冠詞，亦可變成複數。

Material

Common

It is made of metal.

(這是金屬製的。)

Iron is a useful metal.

(鐵是有用的金屬。)

His house is built of stone.

(他的房子是石造的。)

He threw a stone at the dog.

(他向犬投石子。)

Fire burns wood.

(火燃木。)

There was a big fire in my neighbourhood last night. (昨晚隣近發生大火。)

Glass is very brittle.

(玻璃是很脆的。)

Several glasses tumbled from the table.

(幾隻杯子從桌上滾落。)

物質名詞的數量表示法，略舉其主要者如下：

1. a piece of chalk (一枝粉筆)

4. a pound of sugar (一磅糖)

2. a bottle of wine (一瓶酒)

5. two glasses of milk (二杯牛乳)

3. a cup of tea (coffee) (一杯茶，
一杯咖啡)

6. a bag of rice (一袋米)

Exercise VII.

I. 試將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 今年雨水很多。
2. 我喜歡牛肉，但不喜歡魚。
3. 請給我拿一枝粉筆和兩張紙來。
4. 不要把石子拋入河中。
5. 牛油是什麼東西做的？

II. 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. These chopsticks are made of bones. (這些筷是用骨做的。)
2. Have you money with you? (你身邊有錢嗎?)
3. He is very fond of biscuit. (他很喜歡餅乾。)
4. The handle of my knife is ivory. (我的小刀的柄是象牙的。)
5. Go and get me a few chalks. (去給我拿幾枝粉筆來。)

E. 抽象名詞 (Abstract Nouns)

抽象名詞是表示性質，狀態，或動作的名詞。

將具有形體的個別物，歸納出其性質或動作，而附以名稱，就叫做抽象名詞。如“whiteness”一抽象名詞，實為從“white snow”，“white paper”，“white wall”等裏面抽出其共通性質而造成的名詞。

1. 表示性質的抽象名詞，大部分係由形容詞加語尾而成。

(a) 從 Saxon 語系形容詞變成的抽象名詞，語尾為 -ness, -dom, -hood, -th 等。

Adjectives

happy (幸福的)
idle (怠惰的)

Abstract Nouns

happiness (幸福)
idleness (怠惰)

wise (聰明的)	wisdom (智)
free (自由的)	freedom (自由)
false (虛偽的)	falsehood (虛偽)
true (真的)	truth (真實)
high (高的)	height (高)
brave (勇敢的)	bravery (勇氣)

(b) 從 Latin 語系形容詞變成的抽象名詞，語尾爲 -ce, -cy, -ity 等。

Adjectives

silent (靜的)
diligent (勤力的)
decent (端正的)
vacant (空虛的)
pure (純粹的)
rapid (快的)
honest (正直的)
poor (窮的)

Abstract Nouns

silence (靜肅)
diligence (勤勉)
decency (端正)
vacancy (空虛)
purity (純粹)
rapidity (迅速)
honesty (正直)
poverty (貧窮)

2. 表動作的抽象名詞，大抵由動詞變成。

(a) Saxon 語系動詞，加 -ing 語尾，或變更綴法而成抽象名詞。

Verbs

to read (讀)
to live (生存)
to do (做)
to think (想)
to speak (說)

Abstract Nouns

reading (讀書)
life (生命, 生活)
deed (行爲)
thought (思想)
speech (言語)

(b) 從 Latin 語系動詞變成的抽象名詞，語尾爲 -tion, -sion, -ment, -ence 等。

Verbs

to act (行)
to imagine (想像)

Abstract Nouns

action (動作)
imagination (想像)

to decide (決定)	decision (決定)
to divide (分開)	division (分割)
to judge (判斷)	judgment (裁判)
to punish (責罰)	punishment (責罰)
to prefer (選)	preference (選擇)

3. 表狀態(即身分,地位,境遇等)的抽象名詞,大多是從普通名詞變成的。

Common Nouns

child (孩兒)
 man (成人)
 widow (寡婦)
 friend (朋友)
 infant (幼兒)

Abstract Nouns

childhood (孩兒時代)
 manhood (成人期)
 widowhood (寡婦的境遇)
 friendship (友誼)
 infancy (幼年時代)

4. 學問的名稱,亦屬抽象名詞。

art (藝術), science (科學), philosophy (哲學), literature (文學), botany (植物學), zoology (動物學), chemistry (化學), physics (物理學)等。

抽象名詞的用法 (Uses of Abstract Nouns)

1. 抽象名詞用於含有廣泛的意味時,不用定冠詞。

Necessity is the mother of **invention**. (必要為發明之母。)

Happiness consists in **contentment**. (幸福在於滿足。)

2. 抽象名詞表示特定的性質或狀態時,用定冠詞。

The rich envy the **happiness** of the poor. (富者羨慕貧者的幸福。)

He has the **wisdom** of Solomon. (他有着所羅門一般的智慧。)

3. 抽象名詞中,也有偶用“some”的。

He has **some** experience. (他有若干經驗。)

抽象名詞用作普通名詞 (Abstract Nouns Used as Common Nouns)

抽象名詞可用作普通名詞，舉例如下：——

(1) 附有形容詞時。

He had achieved a *great success*. (他得了一個大大的成功。)

He has a *deep knowledge* of English. (他有高深的英語知識。)

[注意] 但 *weather* (天氣), *progress* (進步), *history* (歷史) 等, 雖附有形容詞, 亦不能成爲普通名詞, 故不得用不定冠詞。

In *such fine weather*, we can't remain indoors. (這樣好的天氣, 我們不能留居家中。)

He has made *great progress* in his English. (他英文大有進步。)

Chinese history. (中國歷史)

(2) 表種類, 例, 或動作的結果時。

Charity is a *virtue*. (慈善是一種德行。)

He has done me a *kindness* (= a kind act). (他給我幫了忙。)

I have been there two or three *times*. (那邊我去過兩三次。)

He gave me a *painting*. 他給了我一張畫。)

(3) 指具有抽象名詞的性質的人或物時。

What a *beauty* she is! (她是怎樣的一個美人呀!)

The *seven wonders* of the world. (世界的七不思議)

抽象名詞用作集合名詞 (Abstract Nouns Used as Collective Nouns)

抽象名詞又有作複數普通名詞用的, 即所謂 Noun of Multitude (羣集名詞)。如:

Youth (= young people) should respect *age* (= old people). (青年必須尊敬老人。)

Envy (*envious people*) hates what *justice* (= *just people*) admires.
(正直者所稱許的, 妒者惡之。)

抽象名詞的慣用 (Idiomatic Uses of Abstract Nouns)

1. 抽象名詞與“of”連接時, 成形容詞短語 (Adjective Phrase).

a man of ability = an able man. (有技倆的人)

a man of learning = a learned man. (有學問的人)

a woman of beauty = a beautiful woman. (美婦人)

a thing of great value = a valuable thing. (貴重品)

這種 Adjective phrase 又可用作 Complement.

The fact is of scientific interest (= interesting from a scientific point of view). (這事件有科學上的興味。)

He is of no use (= useless) to me. (他於我無用。)

He is twenty years of age (= old). (他是二十歲。)

2. 抽象名詞與“with”, “in”, “by”等連接時, 成副詞短語 (Adverbial phrase).

He treated me with kindness (= kindly). (他親切地待我。)

I can read this book with ease (= easily). (我能容易地讀這本書。)

They gazed at one another in amazement (= amazedly). (他們驚異地互相看着。)

The victor marched off in triumph (= triumphantly). (勝利者意氣揚揚地走開了。)

By good luck (= luckily) I found him at home. (幸而我找到了他在家裏。)

It came to my ears quite by chance. (這件事我偶然聽到了。)

[注意] 但 in + 抽象名詞亦有成爲形容詞短語的。如: “The flowers in full bloom” (滿開的花), “a friend in need” (共患難的朋友)等。

3. “All” + 抽象名詞或抽象名詞 + “itself”, 可作爲形容詞的代用。

He is all attention
He is attention itself } — He is very attentive. (他非常注意。)

She is all beauty }
 She is beauty itself } = She is very beautiful. (她很美麗。)

要而言之，“She is all beauty”即“*She is full of beauty*”之意，又，“She is beauty itself”即等於“*She is the impersonation of beauty*”（美的化身）。

4. 抽象名詞用作貴人的尊稱。

Your, His, or Her Majesty. (陛下)

Your, His, or Her Excellency. (閣下)

People say that Your Excellency is going to resign. (外傳閣下將辭職。)

[注意] 上例中之“Your Excellency is”等於“you are”，此等直接對談句中，不說“you”而用尊稱時，動詞須用第三人稱。

慣用複數 (Idiomatic Plurals)

抽象名詞本不宜用複數形，但為區別意義的不同，亦有用複數形的。今略舉其要者如下：——

{ height (高)	{ pain (痛苦)	{ ruin (破滅)
{ heights (高地)	{ pains (苦心, 勞力)	{ ruins (遺跡, 廢墟)
{ depth (深)	{ duty (義務)	{ content (滿足)
{ depths (深淵)	{ duties (職務)	{ contents (內容)

{ Let me give you a piece of advice. (我給你一片忠告, 如何?)
 { We received advices from abroad. (我們從國外得了報告。)

{ Time and tide wait for no man. (歲月不待人。)
 { The spirit of the times. (時代精神)

Exercise VIII.

試將以下各 Word 變成名詞：——

choose (選), live (生活), try (試), white (白), just (正), advise (忠告),
 believe (信), discover (發見), lose (失), occupy (占), feel (感到), strong

(強), move (動), fail (失敗), wise (聰明), invent (發明), unite (結合), difficult (困難), young (年青), succeed (成功)。

試將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 彼乃貪慾的化身。
2. 勤勉為成功之父，忍耐為成功之母。
3. 他非常關心孩子們的教育。
4. 我偶然和他成了朋友。
5. 這發見有着學術上的興味。

II. 名詞的變化 (Inflections of Nouns)

A. 數 (Number)

凡名詞表一個事物時為單數(Singular Number)，表兩個以上的事物時為複數(Plural Number)。

(a) 五種名詞中有複數者只有普通名詞。

(b) 固有名詞、物質名詞及抽象名詞本無複數，惟轉用作普通名詞時有之。

(c) 與普通名詞相等的集合名詞，可成複數，但羣集名詞 (Noun of Multitude)，因形雖為單數，而意義卻為複數，故須作複數看待。

複數的作法 (Formation of the Plural)

1. 大部分的名詞，加 s 於單數的末尾，便成複數。

{ dog (犬)	{ book (書)	{ table (桌)	{ name (名)
{ dogs	{ books	{ tables	{ names

2. 以下四種名詞，在末尾加 **-es**。(a) 語尾爲 **s, z, ch, sh, x** 時。

{kiss (接吻)	{dish (碟)	{fox (狐)	{inch (吋)	{ax (斧)
{kisses	{dishes	{foxes	{inches	{axes

[注意] 但末尾之 **ch** 讀 (k) 音時，只加 **s**。

{monarch (君主)	{stomach (胃)
{monarchs	{stomachs

(b) 語尾爲子音字母 + **y** 時，將 **y** 變作 **i** 再加 **-es**。

{army (軍隊)	{fly (蠅)	{city (市)	{lady (婦人)
{armies	{flies	{cities	{ladies

[注意] 語尾爲母音字母 + **y** 時，只加 **s**。如：

{day (日子)	{boy (孩子)	{monkey (猴)
{days	{boys	{monkeys

但 **quy** 因 **qu** 二字母讀 (kw) 音，爲二重子音，其複數照 **b** 項之規則。如：

{colloquy (對話)	{soliloquy (獨語)
{colloquies	{soliloquies

(c) 語尾爲子音字母 + **o** 時，大都加 **-es**。

{hero (英雄)	{negro (黑奴)	{volcano (火山)	{motto (座右銘)
{heroes	{negroes	{volcanoes	{mottoes

但下列諸詞，只加 **-s**。

halo——balos (光輪), piano——pianos (鋼琴), solo——solos (獨唱)等。

又下列諸詞，既可加以 **-s**，亦可加以 **-es**。

mosquito——mosquitos or mosquito^s (蚊), tobacco——tobacco^s or tobacco^s (煙草)。

凡語尾爲 **oo, io, eo, yo** 者，皆加 **-s**。

{bamboo (竹)	{portfolio (挾)	{embryo (胚)	{cameo (施浮彫之玉石)
{bamboos	{portfolios	{embryos	{cameos

(d) 語尾爲 f, fe 時, 大都變爲 -ves.

{ calf (犢)	{ leaf (葉)	{ thief (賊)	{ knife (小刀)	{ life (生命)
{ calves	{ leaves	{ thieves	{ knives	{ lives

但亦有只加 -s 者。

{ handkerchief (手帕)	{ grief (愁)	{ roof (屋頂)	{ gulf (灣)
{ handkerchiefs	{ griefs	{ roofs	{ gulfs

語尾爲短母音 + ff 或 rf 時, 只加 -s.

{ cuff (袖口)	{ muff (手圍巾)	{ dwarf (矮子)	{ wharf (碼頭)
{ cuffs	{ muffs	{ dwarfs	{ wharfs (or wharves)

複數語尾的發音——複數語尾 -s, -es 的發音, 有以下三種。

(a) f, k, p, t 後面的 -s 常爲清音 (s). 如: roofs, books, cups, cats 等。

(b) 語尾 th 通常爲清音。加 -s 時, 有變爲濁音者, 亦有不變爲濁音者。又清音 (th) 後面的 -s 爲清音 (s), 濁音 (dh) 後面的 -s 亦爲濁音 (z).

(1) 單數複數皆爲清音: 如 cloth (klawth) — cloths (klawths), month (mũnth) — months (mũnth), death (dēth) — deaths (dēths) 等。

(2) 單數爲清音, 複數爲濁音: 如 path (pahth) — paths (pahdhz), bath (bahth) — baths bahdhz, mouth (mowth) — mouths (mowdhz) 等。

(c) s, z, j, ch, sh 等音後面的 -es, 成另一 Syllable (音節), 讀作 iz (i 爲 ĭ 與 ě 的合音)。如 benches (bēn'chìz), (櫂); breezes (brē'zìz), (微風); branches (brah'nehìz), (枝); cages (kā'jìz), (籠)。

(d) 其他 -s, -es 皆爲濁音, 讀作 (z). 如 cabs (馬車), birds (鳥), bees (蜂), dogs (犬), lads (少年), worms (蟲), kings (王), boys (孩子), pens (筆) 等。

3. 變母音而成複數。

{ man (人, 男)	{ woman (女)	{ foot (足)	{ goose (鵞)
{ men	{ women (讀作 wim'ɪn)	{ feet	{ geese
{ tooth (齒)	{ mouse (小鼠)	{ louse (虱)	
{ teeth	{ mice	{ lice	

4. 語尾加 -en 而成複數。

{ child (孩子)	{ ox (牡牛)	{ brother (同胞, 同業者)
{ children	{ oxen	{ brethren

5. 單數與複數同形。

deer (鹿), sheep (羊), swine (豚), trout (鱒), corps (軍隊)等。

6. 外來語的複數。

(a) Latin (拉丁語)。

{ focus (焦點)	{ radius (半徑)	{ formula (公式)
{ foci (or -cuses)	{ radii (or radiuses)	{ formulæ (or -las)
{ memorandum (備忘錄)	{ index (索引)	{ species (種)
{ memorandam (or -dums)	{ indices (or -dexes)	{ species

(b) Greek (希臘語)。

{ phenomenon (現象)	{ crisis (危機)	{ analysis (解剖)	{ oasis (沃地)
{ phenomena	{ crises	{ analyses	{ oases
{ criterion (標準)	{ parenthesis (插句, 括弧)	{ basis (基礎)	
{ criteria	{ parentheses	{ bases	

(c) French (法國語)。

{ beau [bō] (色男)	{ bureau (局)	{ madame [mədah'm] (夫人)
{ beaux	{ bureaux	{ mesdames [mədah'm]
{ monsieur [məsyêr'] (先生)	{ corps [kōr] (軍隊)	
{ messieurs [məsyêr']	{ corps [kōrz]	

(d) Italian (意大利語)。

{	bandit (山賊)	{	dilettante (dīlītān'ti), (美術愛好家)
	banditti (bāndīt'i)		dilettanti (-tē)

(e) Hebrew (希伯來語)。

{	cherub (天使, 美童)	{	seraph (天使)
	cherubim (or-bus)		seraphim (or rap'him)

7. 合成名詞的複數, 只要將其中主要一語變成複數即可。

{	commander-in-chief (司令官)	{	looker-on (傍觀者)	{	bystander (傍觀者)
	commanders-in-chief		lookers-on		bystanders
{	court-martial (軍法會議)	{	hanger-on (寄食者)	{	maid-servant (女僕)
	courts-martial		hangers-on		maid-servants

[注意] 但 man-servant (男僕) 的複數為 men-servant. 又, Miss Young (楊女士) 的複數, 通例為 Miss Youngs, 但亦可用 Misses Young.

8. 常用複數形的普通名詞。

(a) 由兩部分合成的器具名——如 scissors (剪刀), trousers (褲), scales (天平稱), spectacles (眼鏡), compasses (圓規) 等。此等名詞表個數時用 “pair”. 如 “two pair(s) of spectacles”, “a pair of scissors”.

(b) clothes (衣服) 常用複數, 表一套兩套用 “suit”.

(c) contents (內容, 目錄), colours (軍旗)。

(d) 語尾為 -ics 之學術名, 本為複數, 卻作單數看待。如: gymnastics (體操), physics (物理學), ethics (倫理學), politics (政治學), mathematics (數學)。

[注意] 但 music (音樂), logic (論理), arithmetic (算術) 用單數形。

(e) goods (商品), effects (動產), riches (富)。

[注意] riches 原為法語 “richesse” 的轉訛, 並非複數, 通例却作複數看待。如 Riches bring cares. (財使人憂。)

(f) billiards (彈子), draughts (西洋棋) 等。

(g) sands (沙原), waters (水源), downs (丘原)。

(h) news (新聞), tidings (消息), means (手段) 等, 雖為複數, 卻作單數論。如:

Is there any news? (有什麼新聞嗎?)

(i) thanks (感謝), 常有不作動詞而單獨用者。如:

(I offer you) *Many thanks.* (多謝。)

(j) pains (苦心) 原為複數, 但不說 “many pains”, 而用 “great pains”, 單複數都可以用。如:

Great pains have (or has) been taken. (費了許多苦心。)

(k) ashes (灰), dregs (殘滓), embers (餘燼) 等殘物之類。

(l) sweepings (埃堆), savings (貯蓄), shavings (刨屑) 等儲積物。

(m) measles (麻疹), small-pox (= small-pocks) (天然痘) 等原為複數, 通例卻作單數看待。

9. 名詞中亦有意義不同的兩種複數形的。

brother	{brothers (兄弟)	cloth	{cloths (布類)
	{brethren (同胞, 同人)		{clothes (衣服)}
genius	{geniuses (天才)	penny	{pennies (貨幣數)
	{genii (魔鬼)}		{pence (金額)}
		staff	{stave (杖)
			{staffs (職員)}

10. 成複數時有兩種意義的名詞。

{colour (色)	{custom (習慣)	{letter (字)	{part (部分)
{force (力)	{premise (前提)	{spectacle (奇觀)	

複數語尾的省略 (Omission of the Plural Inflection)

1. 與數詞連用的複數名詞，作形容詞用時，無複數形。

A **ten-pound** note. (一張十鎊的紙幣)

A **five-act** play. (五幕劇)

A **three-year-old** child. (三歲的孩兒)

[注意] 通常用複數形的 Word，作形容詞用時，仍用複數形。

An **honours** graduate. (優等卒業生)

customs duties. (關稅)

2. 數詞 “dozen” (打), “score” (二十), “hundred” (百), “thousand” (千) 與其他數詞連用時，不用複數。

two dozen (兩打), three score (六十), four hundred (四百), five thousand (五千)。

但漠然表示多數時，用複數。

We consume **dozens** of eggs every day. (我們每天用好幾打雞卵。)

I have met him **hundreds** of times. (我遇見過他好幾百次。)

Scores of ships were wrecked in the last storm. (上次暴風雨中沉沒了幾十隻船。)

Thousands of people flocked to the scene. (幾千人集在當地。)

3. “Pair”, “couple”, “yoke”, “head”, “sail” 等與數詞連用時，無複數形。

Two **pair** of stockings. (襪兩雙)

Three **couple** of hounds. (獵犬三對)

A fleet of twelve **sail**. (軍艦十二艘)

Fifty **head** of cattle. (牛五十頭)

[注意] 但 “pair” 與 “couple” 亦可用複數形。

4. “Foot”, “horse” 作 ‘步兵’, ‘騎兵’ 解時，不用複數。

30,000 **foot** and 5,000 **horse**. (步兵三萬，騎兵五千)

Exercise IX.

1. 試將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 人有幾枚牙齒？
2. 我身長五呎六吋。
3. 日本有許多火山。
4. 我買了兩打手帕和三雙襪子。
5. 他在小河裏捉了許多魚。

2. 試將下列各 Word 變成複數：——

foot man (男傭人), life (生命), negro (黑奴), sheep (羊), German (德國人), father-in-law (岳父), consul-general (總領事), race (競爭)。

3. 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. There are many monkeies in the zoological ga den. (動物園中有許多猿。)
2. He must be near-sighted, for he wears a spectacle. (他一定是近視的，因為他戴着一副眼鏡。)
3. I have bought two dozens of handkerchieves. (我買了兩打手帕。)
4. They shot many deers. (他們獵了許多鹿。)

B. 人稱 (Person)

名詞表說話的人者屬第一人稱 (First Person), 表說話的對手方者屬第二人稱 (Second Person), 表談話中所言及的人或事物者屬第三人稱 (Third Person) .

First Person

We students should not do any such thing. (我們學生不應該做這種事情。)

I, Chang, will never retreat a step. (我老張決不退讓一步。)

Second Person

You boys should never tell a lie. (你們孩子決不宜說謊。)

Where have *you* been, *Wang?* (王君,你剛才在那裏?)

Third Person

This book sells well. (這書銷行很好。)

[注意] 名詞差不多全部屬第三人稱。第一, 第二人稱的名詞, 除用作代名詞的同格名詞以外, 幾乎沒有。

C. 性 (Gender)

名詞中有表示男性者, 有表示女性者, 有表示男女共通性者, 又有表示無性物者, 共分四類。

1. Masculine Gender (男性)

man (男人), father (父), boy (少年), king (王)

2. Feminine Gender (女性)

woman (女人), mother (母), girl (少女), queen (女王)

3. Common Gender (通性)

person (人), parent (雙親), child (孩兒), sovereign (君主)

4. Neuter Gender (無性)

stone (石), tree (木), box (箱), school (學校)

性的表示法 (Modes of Denoting Gender)

性的表示法有以下三種。

1. 全然用不同的 Word:

Masculine

man (男)
son (兒子)
brother (兄弟)
husband (夫)
uncle (叔父)
nephew (姪)

Feminine

woman (女)
daughter (女兒)
sister (姊妹)
wife (妻)
aunt (叔母)
niece (姪女)

lord (貴人)	lady (貴婦人)
sir (先生)	madame (夫人)
widower (鰥夫)	widow (寡婦)
horse (牡馬)	mare (牝馬)

[注意] “lover” 通用於男性，女性爲 “mistress” 或 “sweetheart”。但 “a pair of lovers”，通用於男性女性，爲通性名詞，意爲 “相愛的兩人”。

2. 將表性的詞加於名詞的前或後。

原來劣等動物無指出性的必要，故大部分爲通性。但遇必要時，則附加 **he-**, **she-**, **male**, 或 **female** 等表出之。

he-goat (牡山羊)	she-goat (牝山羊)
cock-sparrow (雄雀)	hen-sparrow (雌雀)
jack-ass (雄驢)	she-ass (雌驢)

又，屬於人類的通性名詞，遇有特別表示性的必要時，亦仿上例：

boy student (男學生)	girl student (女學生)
orphan-boy (孤兒)	orphan-girl (孤女)
man-servant (男僕)	maid-servant (女僕)

3. 男性名詞的語尾附加 **-ess** 而成女性名詞 (但其中亦有變動 syllable 者)。

god (神)	goddess (女神)
duke (公爵)	duchess (公爵夫人)
actor (伶人)	actress (女伶)
master (家主)	mistress (主婦)
lad (少年)	lass (少女)
tiger (虎)	tigress (牝虎)

關於性的注意事項 (Remarks on Gender)

1. 述雌雄動物共通的事件時，通例以男性名詞代表全體。

The lion is a beast of prey. (獅子爲食肉獸。)[包含 the lioness]

Man is mortal. (人是要死的。)[包含 woman]

但雌者比雄者更有用時，則以女性名詞代表全體。如 cow (牝牛)，hen (母雞)，duck (雌鴨)，goose (雌鵝) 等。

A cow has no front teeth. (牛無前齒。) [包含 ox 在內]

2. 有男女性別的動物名，其代名詞也可用“he”或“she”，但不妨一律用“it”。

The lion is strong enough to kill a horse with its sharp teeth and claws, and then drag it away to its den in the forest. (獅子的力，足以用牙與爪殺一馬，而把牠拉到森林中的洞窟裏去。)

A fox caught a hen and killed it. (狐捉了一隻牝雞，把牠殺了。)

3. 用通性名詞表人時，其代名詞的性別，須依其人的實際性別而決定。

My cousin has caught a butterfly with his net. (我的堂兄弟用網捉了一隻蝴蝶。) [若為堂姊妹時，則須用 her net]

用通性名詞表動物時，代名詞用“it”；但這通性名詞若作為主要的話題者，則用“he”或“she”。

I have a dog. His name is Teddy. (我有一隻狗，名叫 Teddy。)

I have a cat. She is very sly. (我有一隻貓，她狡猾得很。)

[注意] 若將動物的性別置於問題外時，則強者如獅子，犬，鷹等用“he”，柔弱者如貓，兔，鸚鵡等用“she”。

“Man” 汎指‘人’的意義時，連“woman”亦包括在內，其代名詞仍用“he”。又，‘人’的性別如不明時，亦用“he”。但實際上此種“he”即為“he or she”。

Some one has forgotten his (=or her) umbrella. (有人把傘忘了。)

4. “Baby”與“Child”的性別不明時，通例用代名詞“it”(亦有用“he”者)。

The baby was playing with its toys. (嬰孩弄玩具。)

The child seems to have lost its way. (孩兒好像迷了路。)

5. 無生物或抽象名詞作擬人化用時，概以強大或可怕者作男性，柔弱可愛者作女性。

Masculine:—the Sun (日), Death (死), Time (時), War (戰爭) 等。

Feminine:—the Moon (月), Nature (自然), Peace (和平), Hope (希望) 等。

英語的擬人法(Personification), 普通用於詩中。平常太陽及月亮為無性名詞。

6. 船隻大抵用女性代名詞，但亦可用“it”。

Where was the ship lost? **She** sank off the coast of S. (船沉在那裏? 沉在 S. 洋面中。)

[注意] “airship” 當然屬於女性，但近來亦有將“train”, “motor-car”, “aeroplane” 等用女性代名詞的。

7. 國名在地理的觀察上用“it”，下政治的觀察時用“she”，但亦有兩方皆用“she”的。

Switzerland is noted for **its** (**her**) scenery. (瑞士以景色聞名。)

China must take up arms against **her** bitter enemy. (中國必須與其大敵開戰。)

[注意] 都名亦有作女性看待的。

London is more favoured with sunshines to-day than **she** was yesterday. (倫敦今天的天氣比昨天好。)

Exercise X.

I. 寫出 Gender 與以下各詞相反的名詞：——

queen, count, duke, niece, prince, waiter, grandson, tiger, gentleman, landlord, heroine, brother-in-law.

II. 將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 他的父母聽到了他的成功，歡喜得很。
2. 她十六歲時成了寡婦。

3. 犬見了貓就追在牠的後面。
4. 嬰孩眼在死去了的母親的旁邊。

D. 格 (Case)

Sentence 中, 名詞對於其他詞的關係叫做格 (Case). 格有三種。

1. Nominative Case (主格)。

John fought bravely. (約翰勇敢地作戰。)

2. Possessive Case (所有格)。

This is John's sword. (這是約翰的劍。)

3. Objective Case (目的格)。

The general praised John. (大將稱讚了約翰。)

(a) 主格 (Nominative Case)

屬於主格的名詞, 大概分下列四種:——

1. 動詞的主語。

Bees make honey. (蜜蜂釀蜜。)

2. 不完全自動詞或受動態 (Passive Voice) 的補足語。

My brother is a physician. (我的兄弟是醫生。)

He was elected an M. P. (他被選為代議士。)

上例中之“physician”為不完全自動詞“is”的 Complement, “M. P.”為“was elected”的 Complement, 兩者均與 Subject 同屬一個人。這種表同一事物的名詞, 因其位置在述部 (Predicate), 所以叫做 **Predicate Nominative** (述部主格)。

3. 呼喚人的名詞——這叫做 **Nominative of Address** (呼喚主格) 或 **Vocative Case** (呼格)。

Mr. Wang, read more slowly. (王君, 讀得更慢一點。)

Be diligent, boys. (諸君, 勤力一點。)

4. 獨立分詞 (Absolute Participle) 之意味上的主語 (Sense Subject) —— 此種主語，因與他部分無文法上的關係，所以叫做 **Nominative Absolute** (獨立主格)。

School being over, I played tennis with some friends. (課業終了以後，我和幾個友人打網球。)

[注意] Nominative Absolute 切勿與正句中的主語混同。

{ John being absent, there was no one who can solve the problem. (因約翰缺席，故無人能解答該問題。) [Nominative Absolute]
 { John, being sick, did not go to school. (約翰因有病，不曾往學校裏去。)
 [此句中之 John 爲 “did not go” 之 Subject]

(b) 所有格 (Possessive Case)

所有格的作法 (Formation of the Possessive)

1. 將 Apostrophe's 卽 's 加於名詞的語尾。這 's 義與 “of” 同。

A boy's cap (= the cap of a boy). (孩子的帽)

A dog's tail (= the tail of a dog). (狗的尾巴)

2. 只以 Apostrophe 加於名詞的語尾。

(1) 語尾爲 “s” 之複數名詞。

A girls' school (女學校); Birds' nest (鳥的巢)

(2) 語尾爲 -sas, -ses, -sis, -sos, -sus 等的固有名詞。

Moses' laws. (摩西十誡)

Jesus' teaching. (耶穌的教訓)

如只有最後一字爲 “s” 時，則加 “'s”。如：St. James's palace (聖詹姆士王宮)，Dickens's novels (迭更斯的小說) 等。

[注意] 所有格 “s” 之發音，與複數的 “s” 發音同。但 “s's”，“z's”，“x's”，“ch's”，“sh's” 中 s 的發音，完全與複數的 -es 相同，讀 (lz)。

A fox's (fōk'siz) tail. Dickens's (dīkēn'ziz) novel.

(3) 語尾爲 -ce 的抽象名詞放在 “sake” 一字前面時。

For appearance's sake. (爲體裁着想)

For goodness's sake. (對不起得很; 爲想道計)

3. 合成名詞 (Compound Noun) 與附有形容詞的名詞, 只將最後一語變成所有格。

Some one else's hat. (另外人的帽子)

The commander-in-chief's official residence. (總司令的官邸)

Herod married his brother Philip's wife. (希律娶了他哥哥腓力的妻子。)

My son-in-law's house. (我的女婿的家)

4. 兩個以上的 Word 用 “and” 連結起來, 表示個別之所有 (Separate Possession) 時, 各 Word 須加 's; 表共同的所有 (Joint Possession) 時, 只在最後一 Word 加 's.

This is Tom, James and Dick's room. (這是 Tom, James, Dick 三人共有的房間。)

Tom's, James' and Dick's room(s) look to the south. (Tom 的房間, James 的房間, 和 Dick 的房間都是朝南的。)

[注意] 第二例中的 “Tom's” 及 “James'” 爲 “Tom's room” 與 “James' room” 的略形。因上面兩個 room 都省去, 故 “Dick's rooms” 亦可以寫作 “Dick's room”, 但普通用複數形的居多。

所有格的意義 (Meaning of the Possessive)

1. 表所有者 (Possessor).

My brother's watch. (我兄弟的錶)

A man's happiness. (人的幸福)

2. 表著者 (Author), 發明者 (Inventor), 或發見者 (Discoverer).

Longfellow's poems. (朗發羅的詩)

Marconi's wireless telegraphy. (馬可尼無線電信)

3. 表目的所在的主體物。

A **girls' school** (女學校): 意即 "A school with the object of educating girls".

A **children's hospital** (小兒科病院): 意即 "A hospital with the object of treating children".

4. 位在含有自動詞意味的名詞之前時, 表行為的主體 (Agent).

A **man's birth, death, success, arrival.** (人之生, 死, 成功, 到達)

My brother's speech. (我兄弟的演說)

5. 位在含有他動詞意味的名詞之前時, 表行為的承受者。

The boy's murderer was sentenced to death. (殺該孩子的人被判處死刑。)

No one came to **my brother's rescue.** (沒有人來救我的兄弟。)

所有格的用法 (Uses of the Possessive)

1. 用所有格者, 只限於人或其他動物。無生物的名詞, 其所有格用 "of" 表示 (但人及其他動物, 亦可兼用 "of" 表示所有格)。

Our teacher's name = the name of our teacher. (我們先生的名字)

That horse's legs = the legs of that horse. (那匹馬的腳)

但遇無生物時, 只能用 "of".

The legs of that table. (那張桌的腳)

The door of this room. (這房間的門)

[注意] 若為代名詞時, 無生物亦可以用所有格。如

The length of the table is twice its breadth. (此桌長二倍於幅。)

2. 人及動物名詞外, 下列名詞, 可用所有形。

(a) 擬人物 (Personified Objects) 或半擬人物 (Quasi-Personified Object).

Fortune's favourite (運命的寵兒); **Heaven's will** (天意); **the sun's ray** (日光); **the moon's disk** (月盤); **the earth's surface** (地球的

表面); for the country's good (爲國家); the ocean's roar (海的咆哮)等。

Be prompt at duty's call and never listen to temptation's whisper.
(須急從義務的命令,勿傾耳於誘惑之細語。)

(b) 表時間 (Time), 距離 (Distance), 價格 (Value) 及重量 (Weight) 的名詞。

a week's journey (一週間的旅行); without a moment's hesitation (無一刻之躊躇); to-day's paper (今天的報紙); last year's crops (去年的收穫)等。

a hair's breadth (千鈞一髮); fifty mile's journey (五十哩的旅行)等。
a dollar's worth (一元之價值); ten cents' worth of sugar (一角錢的糖)等。

a ton's weight (一噸重); two pounds' weight (兩磅重)等。

(c) 含 “sake”, “end” 的 Idiomatic Phrase (慣用短語) 中的名詞。

For Heaven's sake, spare the poor fellow. (看天的面上,饒了那可憐蟲吧。)

At last we got to our journey's end. (我們終於到了目的地。)

The examination is gone through for form's sake. (試驗乃是爲形式而舉行的。)

for convenience' sake. (爲便利起見)

for conscience' sake. (爲安良心起見) 等等。

[注意] “Sake” 前面的 Word 若以 s 音結尾時 爲發音便利計,只附(')。

關於所有格的注意事項 (Remarks on the Possessive)

1. 所有格名詞下面的 “house” (家); “shop”, “store” (店); “palace” (宮殿); “church” (教會) 等場所名詞, 通常可以略去。

I met him at my uncle's [house]. (我在叔父家裏遇見過他。)

I bought it at a stationer's [shop]. (這個我在文具店裏買的。)

St. James's [Palace]. (聖詹姆士宮殿)

St. Paul's [Cathedral]. (聖保羅教堂)

2. 所有格有代替定冠詞的作用。例如 “the wife of my friend” (我朋友的妻)，若說 “my friend's wife”，則可省去一個 “the” 字。

[注意] 所有格有省去定冠詞的作用，但不能省去不定冠詞。如：

A girl's name = the name of a girl.

A girls' school = a school for girls. (這 “a” 字，乃屬於 “school” 一字的)

3. 前面已見的名詞，在所有格下面可以省去。

This hat is my sister's [hat]. (這是我姊姊的帽子。)

The thermometer in common use in China is Fahrenheit's [thermometer].

(中國普通所用者為華氏寒暑表。)

4. 所有格與不定冠詞併用時，須將所有格放在後面，前用 “of”。例如說 “我父親的友人中之一人” 時，不說 “my father's a friend” 或 “a my father's friend”，須用 “a friend of my father's” 的形式。試比較下例：——

{ My brother's books. (兄的書籍全部)
 { My brother's book. (特定的一本兄的書)
 { A book of my brother's. (兄的書籍中的一本)

5. 所有格與 “some”, “any”, “no”, “this”, “that” 等字併用時，亦用上述 (4) 的形式。若說 “我哥哥的這隻錶” 時，必須說 “this watch of my brother's”，兄的錶一隻或數隻，可以不管。

Any friend of my brother's is welcome. (不論兄的那一個朋友都歡迎。)

No eloquence of her mother's could persuade her to marry. (母的雄辯終不能勸她允諾結婚。)

(c) 目的格 (Objective Case)

屬於目的格的名詞，有以下數種。

1. 動詞的目的語：

(a) **Direct Object** (直接目的語)。

The teacher praised **Chang**. (先生稱讚了張君。)

(b) **Indirect Object** (間接目的語)。

He gave **Chang** a book. (他給了張君一本書。)

(c) **Object of a Passive Verb** (受動動詞的目的語)。

Chang was given a **book**. (人給張君一本書。)

(d) **Cognate Object** (同意目的語)。

He lived a **happy life**. (他過了幸福的生活。)

2. 不完全他動詞的補足語，即 Objective Complement.

They think him a **scholar**. (他們以為他是學者。)

They made him **king**. (他們奉他為王。)

[注意] 此種動詞，改為 Passive (受動) 時，Objective Complement 便成為 Subjective Complement, 屬 Nominative Case.

{ Obj. — They made him **king**.

{ Nom. — He was made **king**.

3. 前置詞的目的語。

He was praised *by* his teacher. (他被先生稱讚。)

4. 副詞目的格 (**Adverbial Object**) —— 即名詞作副詞用，表時日，期間，度量，距離，方向，年齡，價值等者。此等目的格，可看作“前置詞 + 名詞 = 副詞短語”的代用。

He stayed [for] five years in Germany. (他在德國住了五年。)[期間]

I did not go to school [on] that day. (那天我不曾到學校裏去。)[時日]

He is [by] two years older than I. (他比我兩歲。)[年齡]

Come this way. (向這裏來。)[方向]

This is a great deal better than that. (這個比那個好得多。)[程度]

The board was an inch thick. (板的厚是一吋。)[數量]

I have walked twenty miles to day. (我今天走了二十哩。)[距離]

This ring is worth a hundred dollars. (這戒子值一百元。)[價值]

5. 敘述的目的格 (Objective of Description)——名詞作爲 Adjective Complement 用而將前面的“of”一字略去。

It is no use crying. (哭也無益。)

The earth is the shape of an orange. (地球的形狀像橘子。)

He is about your own age. (他和你年紀差不多。)

[注意] 敘述物的性質時，必須用 Adjective Complement. 如“*He is diligence*”，便是不通的文句。

(d) 同格名詞 (Nouns in Apposition)

甲名詞用於說明乙名詞(或代名詞)時，甲名詞就是乙名詞(或代名詞)的同格名詞。

(a) John, the carpenter, is an honest man. (木匠約翰是一個正直的人。)

(b) I bought this book at Smith's, the bookseller. (這書我在史密斯書店買的。)

(c) How do you like Mr. Huang, the new principal? (新校長黃先生你道如何?)

上例中 (a) 之“carpenter”與 Subject “John”同格，爲 Nominative Case. (b) 之“bookseller”與所有格“Smith's”同格，爲 Possessive Case. (c) 之“principal”與“Mr. Huang”同格，爲 Objective Case.

Exercise XI.

(A)

改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. The King's Palace of England is very magnificent. (英王的宮殿壯麗得很。)
2. This class's boys are diligent. (這級學生用功。)
3. I met him at the barber. (我在理髮店裏遇見了他。)
4. I met my brother's friend yesterday. (Can you guess who it was? (我昨天遇見了我兄弟的一個朋友,你猜是那一個?)
5. This table's legs are very short. (這桌的腳很短。)
6. John, Frank, and Mary's boots are stolen. (John, Frank 與 Mary 的靴被偷去了。)
7. He is to come again in next spring. (來春他又要來的。)
8. The people elected him to president. (人民選他做總統。)
9. This your composition is very well written. (你這篇文章寫得很好。)
10. I think I must go to the dentist. (我想我必須到牙科醫生那裏去。)

(B)

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 你回去的時候,走過理髮店嗎?
2. 地球表面的四分之三是水。
3. 他將一年的收入,消耗在一個月的旅行上面了。
4. 我還沒有讀過今天的報紙,有什麼有趣的記事嗎?
5. 我昨天在書店裏買了兩本英漢辭典。

(C)

試述下列文句中名詞的 Case：——

1. I thought the man was a burglar. (我想那人是一個賊。)
2. I thought the man (to be) a burglar. (我想那人是一個賊。)
3. The man was thought to be a burglar. (其人被想作為是一個賊。)
4. I mistook the man for a burglar. (我把那人誤認為賊。)

-
5. Her mother gave her a pretty doll. (她母親給了她一個美麗的洋囡囡。)
 6. A pretty doll was given her. (人給她一個美麗的洋囡囡。)
 7. She was given a pretty doll. (她得了一個美麗的洋囡囡。)
 8. Where are you going this summer? (今年夏天你預備到那裏去?)

第二章

代名詞 (PRONOUNS)

代名詞普通分下列四種：——

1. **Personal Pronouns** (人稱代名詞)
2. **Demonstrative Pronouns** (指示代名詞)
3. **Interrogative Pronouns** (疑問代名詞)
4. **Relative Pronouns** (關係代名詞)

[注意] 文法家中有將 Personal Pronoun 分作兩種，另立一門叫做 Possessive Pronoun (所有代名詞) 的；亦有將 Demonstrative Pronoun 稱做 Adjective Pronoun 的。

1. 人稱代名詞 (Personal Pronouns)

代名詞中完全具備文法上的人稱者，叫做人稱代名詞。

人稱代名詞除人稱以外，有數 (Number)，格 (Case)，性 (Gender) 的變化，請看下表。

人 稱	性	數	主 格	所有格	目的格
第一人稱	通性	單 數	I	my	me
		複 數	we	our	us
第二人稱	通性	單 數	you thou	your thy	you thee
		複 數	you ye	your your	you you
第三人稱	男性	單 數	he	his	him
	女性		she	her	her
	無性		it	its	it
	通性	複 數	they	their	them

關於人稱代名詞的注意事項 (Remarks on Personal Pronouns)

1. 第一人稱“**I**”不論放在什麼地方，常用大寫 (Capital letter).
2. “you and I”及“he and I”，均可用“we”替代，“you and he”可用“you”替代。

You and I (= we) have done our best. (君與我盡了力了。)

He and I (= we) have done our best. (彼與我盡了力了。)

You and he (= you) have done your best. (君與彼盡了力了。)

3. 第一人稱複數“**we**”，有下列的特別用法：——

(a) 君主稱自己時，不用“**I**”而用“**we**”，相當於我國之“朕”或“寡人”。這叫做“**Plural of Majesty**”。

We are pleased with your faithful services. (朕嘉賞卿的功勞。)

(b) 新聞記者等稱自己亦用“**we**”，相當於我國之“吾人”或“吾輩”，用以示代表同人及輿論的心意。這叫做“**Editorial we**”。

We always make it our object to guide the public opinion. (吾輩常以指導輿論爲己任。)

[注意] (a) 的合成代名詞只用“**ourselves**”，而 (b) 的合成代名詞用“**ourselves**”。

4. 第二人稱的單數複數皆用 you. 單數之“**thou**”，“**thy**”，“**thee**”及複數的“**ye**”，爲古體用法。只用於詩歌，祈禱文，及其他嚴肅的文句中。但 Quaker 宗的信徒，日常談話中亦用之。

O thou Almighty God! (哦，爾萬能之神！)

O my country! thy welfare is all I care for! (哦，祖國！余只以爾之安寧爲慮！)

Know ye, our subjects. (朕告爾等臣民。)

5. 第三人稱的代名詞，等於附“**the**”的普通名詞。

Where is the man? — He (= the man) is at the door. (其人在何處？——他在門口。)

6. 有性的區別的，只限於第三人稱單數。

7. “It” 用於代替特定的名詞，代況指一事物時用 “one”。

Have you a knife? — Yes I have one (= a knife).
 (你有小刀嗎? ——我有一把。)
 Have you the knife that I gave you the other day? — Yes, I have it (= the knife that you gave me).
 (你拿着我日前給你的那把小刀嗎? ——是的，我拿着。)

8. 代替附 “the” 的物質名詞用 “it”; 代替附 “the” 的複數名詞用 “they”。但代替意味不定的物質名詞與複數普通名詞時，用 “some”, “any”。

Where shall I put the money? — Put it (=the money) in the drawer.
 (我把錢放到什麼地方去好呢? ——放到抽斗裏去。)
 If you are in need of money, I will lend you some (=some money).
 (假使你少錢用，我可以借你若干。)

Have you read the books I have lent you? — Yes, I have read them (=the books you have lent me). (我借給你的書讀過了嗎? ——我讀過了。)
 If you like to read novels, I will lend you some (=some novels).
 (假使你喜歡讀小說，我可以借你幾本。)

9. 成爲主語用的 “it”，可作 “a + Common Noun” 的代用。

I have never seen an aeroplane, and I wish to see what it (=an aeroplane) is like. (我從沒看見過飛機，很想看一看牠是怎樣的一件東西。)

10. 若把兩個以上的人稱代名詞並列起來，單數時的順序爲 (1) 第二人稱，(2) 第三人稱，(3) 第一人稱；複數時的順序爲 (1) 第一人稱，(2) 第二人稱，(2) 第三人稱。

You, she, and I
 Both you and I
 Either you or he
 Neither he nor I

We, you, and they
 We and you
 We nor they
 You or they

11. 代所有格的“my”, “your”, “his”等可用“of me”, “of you”, “of him”. 但此種用法只限於少數的 Idiomatic Phrases.

I can not for the life of me recollect his name. (我無論如何記不起他的名字。)

You will be the death of me. (我為你將縮短壽命。)

I never saw the like of him in my life. (我生來不曾見過像他那樣的人。)

12. 人稱代名詞往往有用於汎指一般的人的。

(a) “We”——意為‘我們人間’。

We are apt to despise those who are below us. (人易於輕視那些不如己者。)

We should obey our parents. (人必須服從父母。)

(b) “You”——其意味與上項的“we”相似。

He is what you call a self-made man. (他是一個所謂自己成就的人。)

You can not master a foreign language in a year or two. (人不能一兩年間就學成一種外國語。)

(c) “He who (or that)”用於表“any one who”之意。但“*He who*”, “*they who*”, 只用於文語, 口語中用“*one who*”, “*those who*”。

He who touches pitch shall be defiled therewith. (近墨者黑。)

He that ruleth (= rules) his mind is better than he that taketh a city. (取一城者不如治一己之心者。)

(d) “They”用於汎指某部分的人們, 多用於行爲者不明時。此種文句, 概可用 Passive Construction 代之。

We can not cross the bridge; they are repairing it (= it is being repaired). (我們不能過橋去, 因正在修理中。)

They speak English (= English is spoken) in America. (美國是講英語的。)

(e) “They”又表示“people”之意。

They say (= people say; it is said) that he is going to resign. (人說他將辭職。)

They say that the rice-crop is very good this year (人言本年稻的收成很好。)

“It” 的用法 (Uses of “It”)

1. “It” 代表前出的 Word, Phrase 或 Clause.

He bought a *gold watch*, and gave *it* to me. (他買了一只金錶,送給了我。)

He tried to *rise*, but found *it* impossible. (他想立起來,但是做不到。)

He is an honest man; I know *it* well. (他是個正直的人,這點我很明白。)

2. 用於指後面的 Word, Phrase 或 Clause.

(a) 將主語的 Word, Phrase 或 Clause 放在後面,而先用 “It” 作 **Formal Subject** (形式上之主語)。

It is a vicious beast, *that horse of yours*. (你那匹馬,是一隻無法制御的畜生。)

It is wrong *to tell a lie*. (說謊話是不行的。)

It is no use *trying to excuse yourself*. (你想自己辯解也是無用的。)

It is true *that he has failed*. (他之失敗是的確的。)

It makes no difference *whether it is bamboo or not*. (這是否是竹,並無多大關係。)

It is a secret *how I did it*. (這東西我怎樣做的,是一個祕密。)

(b) 將目的語的 Phrase 或 Clause 放在後面,而先用 “It” 作 **Formal Object** (形式上之目的語)。

I thought *it impossible to do so*. (我想這樣做是不可能的。)

I think *it likely that he has failed*. (他失敗了,我想這是或許會有的事。)

(c) 不顧人稱,數,與性的關係而以 “it” 指人或物。

Who is *it* [that is at the door]? (門口立着的是誰?)

I suppose *it is Miss Chen*. 我想這是陳女士。)

Who is there? — *It is I*. (是那一個? — 是我。)

Who broke *it*? — *It was they that broke it*. (誰打破的? — 是他們打破的。)

(d) 若要使文中之主語，目的語，或副詞等加強語氣時，用 “It is... that....” 之形式。

- { He struck this boy on the head yesterday. (他昨天打這孩子的頭。)
 { It was he that struck this boy. (打這孩子的就是他。)
 { It was this boy that he struck. (他所打的，就是這個孩子。)
 { It was on the head that he struck this boy. (他打這孩子，打在他頭上。)
 { It was yesterday that he struck this boy. (他打這孩子，是在昨天。)

[注意] 此種文句中關係代名詞的人稱及數，並不與先行詞 “it” 一致，須依照加強語氣的一詞而定。如：——

It is I that am wrong. (錯的是我。)

It is not you that are to blame. (所應該責備的並不是你。)

3. 代替 “he”, “she”, “you” 等代名詞，用以表親愛 (endearment) 或輕蔑 (contempt) 之意。

What a pretty little girl it is (=she is)! (伊是怎樣美麗的一個小姑娘呀!)

What an ass it is (=he is)! (他是怎樣的一個笨驢呀!)

4. 用以漠然地表天氣，時刻，距離及明暗。

(a) 天氣 (Weather): ——

It (=the weather) was very fine yesterday. (昨天天氣很好。)

It (=the air) is very cold to-day. (今天天氣很冷。)

It (=the wind) is blowing hard. (風猛烈地吹着。)

It rains (=rain falls) much in June. (六月中多雨。)

It lightens and thunders. 電光閃閃，雷聲隆隆。)

(b) 時刻 (Time): ——

What time is it? (但普通說 “What is the time?”) (幾點鐘了?)

It is half past eleven. (十一點半。)

It (=the clock) has just struck one. (剛剛打過一點鐘。)

It (=the hour) is still early. (時間還早呢。)

It is getting dark. (暗起來了。)

It is time to go to bed. (是睡眠的時候了。)

What day of the week is it? (今天星期幾?)

It (= *the season*) was spring and the birds were singing on every side. (那是春天,鳥兒到處歌唱着。)

It is now three years since she died. (她死後已三年了。)

It will not be long before he gets well. (他不久就會痊癒吧。)

(c) 距離 (Distance): ——

How far is it from here to Ningpo? (此地到寧波有多少遠?)

It (= *the distance*) is about two miles to the next village. (到隣村有兩哩光景。)

It is five minutes' walk from here to the station. (從這裏到火車站步行須五分鐘。)

(d) 明暗 (Light or Darkness): ——

It is still dark indoors. (屋裏還暗。)

It is already light outdoors. (門外已經亮了。)

5. 除上面各種用法之外,尚有下列的慣用法。

Is it well with you? (你安好嗎?)

How is it with your children? (= How are your children?) (你的孩子們好嗎?)

It is very kind of you. (你很親切。)

It is all up with me (= It is all over with me). (萬事休矣。)

We had a pleasant time of it. (我們過了一個快活的時候。)

He had the best of it. (他得了勝。)

You will catch it. (你要挨罵的。)

We must fight it out. (我們必須戰到底。)

I had to foot it. (我非走不可了。)

Rumour has it (= says) that he is dead. (謠傳說他死了。)

It is always so with him. (他老是這個樣子的。)

As good luck would have it. (幸虧得。)

It is with ignorant people as with shallow waters. (無學的人與淺水的河無異。)

It says in the papers (=The papers say). (報上載着)

It fared well with me. (萬事順利地進行了。)

[注意] 上述的 'it', 皆為 Indefinite Reference 的 "it"; 此種構文, 叫做 **Impersonal Construction** (無人稱構文)。

代名詞的格的用法 (Uses of Cases)

代名詞的格, 用法與名詞的格同, 故不再詳述, 只舉其須注意者數點如下。

1. 接續詞 "as" 與 "than" 下面的 Nominative Case, 須注意不要誤用 Objective Case.

{ Is she as clever as him? (誤)

{ Is she as clever as he [is]? (正) (她同他一樣的聰明嗎?)

{ She is cleverer than him. (誤)

{ She is cleverer than he [is] (正) (她比他聰明。)

但在 "as" 與 "than" 以下的文句中, 如主語與動詞皆略去時, 則用目的格。諸君須注意這目的格與 "as" 或 "than" 並無直接關係。這乃是被略去的動詞的目的語, 請比較下例:

{ He loves me better than [he loves] her. (他愛我比愛她更甚。)

{ He loves me better than she [loves me]. (他愛我比她愛我更甚。)

{ He loves you as well as [he loves] me. (他愛你同他愛我一樣。)

{ He loves you as well as I [love you]. (他愛你同我愛你一樣。)

[注意] 對於此項規則只有一個例外, 即 "than whom". 但這 "than" 已不是接續詞, 可當作前置詞看。如:

I will ask Mr. Chao, than whom there is no better scholar. (我去問趙先生吧, 因為除他以外沒有更高明的人了。)

2. 動詞的 Complement, 須與有關係的名詞或代名詞的格一致。

(a) I thought (that) it was he. [he 與 was 的主語 it 一致]

(b) It was thought to be he. [he 與 was thought 的主語 it 一致]

(c) I thought it to be him. [him 與 thought 之目的語 it 一致]

(a) 與 (b) 例中之 “he” 爲 Subjective Complement (即 Predicate Nominative), (c) 例中之 “him” 爲 Objective Complement.

[注意] “It is I” 常有誤作 “It is me” 的。此雖不合乎文法，然因上流人士亦常說，所以成爲習慣了。但 “It is him”, “It is her” 的說法是不通行的。

所有代名詞 (Possessive Pronouns)

1. 代名詞的所有格，與形容詞一樣，必附在名詞的前面，用以表所有之意味；但所有代名詞，自身可以獨立。

{ This is **my** book. (這是我的書。)
 { This book is **mine** (= *my book*). (這書是我的。)

上例中第一句爲普通代名詞之所有格，第二句爲所有代名詞，其作用與 “Possessive Case + Noun” 同。所有代名詞與名詞同樣，自身具有 Person, Number 與 Case.

2. Possessive Pronoun 常爲第三人稱，其 Number 爲單複同形。

{ This book is **mine** (= *my book*). (這書是我的。)
 { These books are **mine** (= *my books*). (這些書是我的。)

He and I each bought a ball. **His** (= *his ball*) was cheaper than **mine** (= *my ball*). (我與他各買了一個皮球。他的比我的便宜。)

He and I bought some apples. **His** (= *his apples*) were all very large, while **mine** (= *my apples*) were rather small. (我與他買了許多蘋果，他的都是很大的，而我的都是小的。)

3. 上面所舉的例，皆爲避免既出名詞的重複而用。Possessive Pronoun 又有下列的用法。

Mine (= *my family*) is an old family. (我的家族是一個古老的家族。)

It is **theirs** (= *their duty*) to obey. (服從爲他們的本分。)

書信中結尾用的 “yours truly” 與 “yours faithfully” 等亦屬於此類。

4. Possessive Pronoun 雖有主格與目的格，卻並無所有格。

That is your opinion, **mine** (= my opinion) is quite different. (那是你的意見，我的不大相同。) [mine 爲 Nominative Case.]

He has lost **his**, so I have lent him **mine**. (他將他的丟了，所以我把我的借了給他。) [his 與 mine 皆爲 Objective Case.]

5. 指所有物中的一件或特殊的事物時，用 [a (或 some, this, that, any, no) + of + Possessive Pronoun] 之形式。請參照名詞的所有格。

I went there with a friend of **mine** (= one of my friends). (我和一個朋友到那邊去了。)

That is **no business of yours** (= none of your business). (那不是你管的事情。)

This world of ours is like a great theatre. (我們的這個世界像一個大劇場。)

I have borrowed *some books of his*. (我借了他的幾本書。)

人 稱	數	主 格 及 目 的 格
第 三 人 稱	單	my + 名詞 = mine
		our + 名詞 = ours
	複	your + 名詞 = yours
		your + 名詞 = yours
	同 形	his + 名詞 = his
		her + 名詞 = hers
their + 名詞 = theirs		

反身代名詞 (Reflexive Pronouns)

1. 自身受自己所做的動作時，不用普通目的格，卻用 “my”, “him” 等加 “-self” 或 “-selves” 的代名詞表示之。此等代名詞，因

係複合而成，故又叫做 **Compound Personal Pronouns** (合成人稱代名詞)。

人 稱	數	主格及目的格	所有格
第一人稱	單	myself	my own
	複	ourselves	our own
第二人稱	單	yourself	your own
	複	yourselves	your own
第三人稱	單	himself herself itself	his own her own its own
	複	thmselves	their own
汎指形	單	oneself	one's own

2. Reflexive Pronouns 的用法，大別之可分為二種。

(a) **Reflexive Use** (反身的用法)——表 Agent (行爲者) 對於自己所做的動作，即自身用作動詞的目的語者。這種目的語，叫做 **Reflexive Object** (反身目的語)。

He killed **himself**. (他殺了自己=自殺了。)

It is hard to know **oneself**. (知道自己是不容易的。)

Heaven helps those who help **themselves**. (自助者，天助之。)

Know **thyself**. (須知道你自己。)

(b) **Emphatic Use** (強勢的用法)——爲要加強意味時，作名詞或其他代名詞的同格用者。

No man but has his fault; Confucius **himself** (=even Confucius) was not free from fault. (人焉能無過，即孔子亦不能免之。)

I am a student **myself** (=too). (我也是一個學生。)

He killed the man **himself**. (他親手殺了那個人。)

It was the Queen **herself**. (這就是女王本人。)

[注意] 此種反身代名詞，亦有獨立用者。

Both my brother and **myself** were scolded. (兄與我自己皆被罵了一頓。)

3. 反身代名詞的所有格，其意味比普通人稱代名詞的所有格更強。

His **own** children are ashamed of his conduct. (連他自己的兒女也以他的行為為恥。)

My house is not always **my own** house. (我的家未必一定就是我自己所有的家。)

Study in **your own** room. (在你自己的房間裏學習吧。)

4. 反身代名詞的所有格，與“a”，“some”，“any”，“no”等併用時，其用法與 Possessive Pronoun 同。

The moon has **no light of its own**. (月亮本身無光。)

Has he a **house of his own**? (他自己有家嗎?)

She has **some property of her own**. (她個人有若干財產。)

5. 反身代名詞與前置詞併用而成為種種的成語者。

(1) **Beside + oneself** = mad (發狂)。

He was almost **beside himself** with joy. (他高興得幾乎發狂。)

(2) **By + oneself** = alone (單獨一個人)。

He lives **by himself**. (他一個人住着。)

(3) **For + oneself** = without others' help (以獨自一個人的力)。

Do everything **for yourself**. (萬事一人獨當。)

(4) **For + itself** = for its own sake (本身)。

I love labour **for itself**. (我愛勞動本身。)

(5) **Of + oneself** = spontaneously (自己, 不由己地)。

He woke up of himself. (他自己醒來了。)

(6) **In + oneself** = viewed in its essential qualities (本來)。

It is good in itself. (這東西本來是好的。)

(7) **Between + ourselves** = speaking confidentially (私下說一句)。

Between ourselves, he is a thief. (私下說一句, 他是個賊呢。)

Exercise XII.

1. 將下列文句譯成英文: ——

- (1) 他發了狂把自己的家燒了。
- (2) 這不是我的, 我的比這個大得多。
- (3) 請注意不要傷了自己的身體。
- (4) 他是你的什麼親戚嗎?
- (5) 今天早上我遇見了你的朋友。
- (6) 我的錶上是九點一刻鐘。
- (7) 那個學校裏是教德文的。
- (8) 從這裏到學校有兩哩光景。
- (9) 我所要的, 並不是錢呀。
- (10) 近幾日來儘是使人不快的天氣。

2. 改正下列文句中的錯誤: ——

- (1) It is you that is wrong. (錯的是你。)
- (2) She won't marry such a man as him. (她不願同像他那樣的人結婚。)
- (3) I thought it was your sister, but it was not her. (我以爲她是你的姊妹, 却原來並不是她。)
- (4) Do you need a pen? — Yes, I need (你要筆嗎? —— 我要的。)
- (5) If you have some money, lend me a little. (若你有錢, 請借我一點。)

2. 指示代名詞 (Demonstrative Pronouns)

指示代名詞是指示而且代表某種事物的代名詞。今立表舉其主要者如下。

	Singular	Plural
(1) Definite	this that the other —	these those the others such as (=those who)
(2) Indefinite	one (人) another one who } he who }	they others those who } they who }
(3) Repetitive	one that such	ones those such

[說明] 指示代名詞中指特定的事物者，爲 Definite；指未定的事物者，爲 Indefinite。又，用以避免名詞的重複者，叫做 Repetitive Pronoun (反復代名詞)。

[注意] 指示代名詞與代名形容詞同樣。其分別依用法而定，指示代名詞之次有名詞者爲代名形容詞，無名詞者爲指示代名詞。如：——

- { This is my book. (代名詞)
- { This book is mine. (形容詞)
- { Each of the pupils has his own desk. (代名詞)
- { Each pupil has his own desk. (形容詞)

“This” and “That”

1. “This” (複數爲 “These”) 用於指近邊之事物; “That” (複數爲 “Those”) 用於指較遠之事物。“It” 亦爲同類之指示代名詞, 但其意味較 “this”, “that” 爲弱。

This is a pen; that is a pencil. (這是鋼筆, 那是鉛筆。)

What is this? — It is a book. (這是什麼? — 是書。)

What is that? — It is a map. (那是什麼? — 是地圖。)

2. 將前出兩個事物分別舉出時, 指前者用 “that” (複數 “those”), 指後者用 “this” (複數 “these”).

Work and play are both necessary to health; this (=play) gives us rest, and that (=work) gives us energy. (勞動與遊戲皆於康健必要; 遊戲給與我們安息, 勞動給與我們精力。)

Health is above wealth, for this can not give so much happiness as that. (康健優於財富, 因財富不能如康健一般地給人以幸福。)

3. 爲要避免同一名詞的重複, 常用 “that of...” (複數 “those of...” 作 “the + Noun + of...” 之代用。

This gate is finer than that (=the gate) of my house. (這門比我家的門講究)。

The ears of a rabbit are longer than those (=the ears) of a fox. (兔耳比狐耳長。)

I prefer the style of Carlyle to that (=the style) of Emerson (= I prefer Carlyle's style to Emerson's). (我喜歡 Carlyle 的文體甚於 Emerson 的。)

4. “this” 與 “that” 可代表前出的 Sentence.

You paid your debts; and this is quite sufficient to prove your honesty. (你還了你的欠債, 這足以證明你的誠實。)

You suppose him to be a miser; but that is certainly a mistake. 你以爲他是一個吝嗇人, 那當然是錯誤的。)

5. 將前出的 Sentence 再一次返復，使之增強意味時，用 “and that”。

I must consult with him, **and that at once**. (我必須和他商量，而且非立刻商量不可。)

He is now eleven, **and yet can do nothing but read, and that very poorly**. (他現在十一歲，除讀以外一無所能，而且讀也讀得非常壞。)

“One”

1. “One” 與 “we”, “you” 同樣，用於泛指一般的人，其意味較 “ay one” 少弱。諸君須注意一旦用 “one” 時，其相應之代名詞亦必用 “one”。如所有格必須用 “one’s”，切勿用 “his”；須避忌 “one” 與 “he” 的混用。

One should take care of **one’s** health. (人必須留心自己的健康。)

One is apt to think **oneself** faultless. (人是總以為自己無過的。)

One does well what **one** likes to do. (自己喜歡的事，做起來是不會壞的。)

One must avoid bad company. (人必須避去惡友。)

但 “Any one”, “some one”, “every one”, “each one”, “no one” 等可用 “he”。

Any **one** thinks **himself** wise. (人皆以為自己聰明。)

Every **one** loves **his** mother. (人皆愛他的母。)

No **one** knows what **his** fate will be. (無人知道自己的壽命如何。)

2. “One who” (複數 “those who”) 用於表示 “如何如何的人” 之意。

{ One who is not diligent, will never prosper. } (不勤勉的人，永不得
{ Those who are not diligent, will never prosper. } 出頭。)

3. 為要避免同一名詞的重複，“one” 可作 “a + Common Noun” 的代用。

If you need a dictionary, I will lend you **one** (= a dictionary). (你若要辭典，我可借你一本。)

此種“one”若與表性質的形容詞同用時，可用不定冠詞或複數形。

{ Have you a knife? — Yes, I have a sharp one. (我有一把銳利的小刀。)
 { Have you any knives? — Yes, I have some sharp ones. (我有好幾把銳利的小刀。)

又，“one”“ones”亦可與“the”，“this”，“that”，“these”，“those”，“which”等同用。

Here are three hats. Which one is yours? This one, or that one, or the one on the peg? (這裏有三頂帽。那一頂是你的？這項嗎，那項嗎？抑還是釘上掛着的那項？)

This rule is more important than the preceding ones. (這條規則比前幾條更重要。)

[注意] 在以下幾種情形中，不得用“one”。

(a) 所有格之次不用“one”。但下面附有形容詞時，可用之。

{ Your father's house is larger than my father's. (你父親的房子比我父親的房子大。)
 { Your father's house is larger than my father's old one. (令尊的房子比家父的舊房子大。)

(b) “One”不能作物質名詞的代用。物質名詞重複時，只用形容詞。

Give me some cold water instead of hot (=hot water). (請給我冷水不要開的。)

(c) 表序數即“the first”，“the second”等詞之次，不用“one”。

The first chapter is more interesting than the second (=the second chapter). (第一章比第二章更有趣味。)

4. “One”又有下列的用例。

The little (dear, loved) ones. (孩子們)

The Holy One = One above. (上帝)

The Evil One = the Devil. (惡魔)

“Another” and “Other”

1. “Another” 爲 “an” 與 “other” 之合成語，作代名詞用時，其意味爲 “a different one”; “also one”; “one more”; “a second”。

This is not good enough. Show me **another** (= a different one). (這並不好。請給我別的看看。)

He is a fool, and his wife **another** (= also one). (他是個傻子，他的妻子也是一個傻子。)

One boy said, “I have a headache”; **another** (= one more; the second), “I have a toothache”; and the third, “I have a stomachache”. (一孩兒說頭痛，又一個說齒痛，第三個說胃痛。)

2. “One . . . the other” —— 兩個事物或人，漠然指其中之一時用 “one”，指另一個時用 “the other”。

My brothers are both abroad, **one** in England and **the other** in America. (我的兩個兄弟都在外國，一在英國，一在美國。)

We keep two dogs. **One** is white and **the other** is black. (我們有兩隻狗，一白一黑。)

3. “The one . . . , the other” —— 指前出兩個事物或人時，前者用 “the one”，後者用 “the other”。此用法與 “the former . . . , the latter” 同。但前後顛倒的例也很多。

I have a brother and a sister; **the one** (= the brother) is abroad, and **the other** (= the sister) in Shanghai. (我有一兄一姊，兄在外國，姊在上海。)

The bee and the snake draw material from the same plant. **The one** (= the snake) transmutes it into deadly poison; **the other** (= the bee) into delicious honey. (蜂與蛇取食料於同一植物；後者使之變毒，前者使之成甘蜜。)

4. “The others” —— 指殘留者全部時用 “the others”，此與 “the rest” 同義。

One of them is a Chinese, but **the others** (= the rest) are Anglo-Americans. (其中一個是中國人，其餘的皆爲英美人。)

I know only one or two of these students; the others are wholly unknown to me. (這些學生中我只認識一兩個,其餘的我全不知道。)

5. “Others” 與 “other people” 同義。

You must think of others. (你應該想到別人。)

Some say this, and others say that. (有幾個人這樣說,又有許多人那樣說。)

Do to others as you would have others do to you. (如己之所欲施之於人。)

6. “Each other”, “one another” 皆為‘互相’之意。但 “each other” 用於兩個事物, “one another” 用於兩個以上的事物。

The boy and the girl loved each other (=each of them loved the other).

(少年與少女互相親愛。)

All the brothers stood by one another (=every one of them stood by another). (兄弟們互相幫助。)

[注意] “Each other” 亦有用於兩個以上之事物時, “one another” 亦有用於兩個事物者。

7. “One after the other” 用於兩個事物‘交互’動作時; “one after another” 用於兩個以上事物的‘連續’, 其意味與 “one by one” 幾乎相同。

He raised one of his hands after the other. (他交互地舉左右手。)

They all left the room one after the other. (他們依次一個一個地走出房間。)

Exercise XIII.

I. 將下列文句譯成英文:——

1. 對人須親切而丁寧。
2. 這帽子於我不合,請把另外的給我看看。
3. 我們必須各自忠實地盡我們的職務。
4. 這書比你讀着的書更難。
5. 他是個惡棍,他的兒子也是個惡棍。
6. 這枝筆不好,請給我另外的一枝。
7. 我有兩個兄弟,一個在小學校裏,一個在中學校裏。
8. 你們必須互相親愛。

II. 將下列文句中之黑體字換作適當的代名詞：——

1. He was a patriot; his son was also a patriot. (他是個愛國者，他的兒子也是。)
2. One of them was a girl, the rest were all boys. (其中一個是女孩，其他都是男孩子。)
3. Do you want a knife?—Yes, I want a knife. (你要小刀嗎？——我要的。)
4. This knife is my knife. That is your knife. (這小刀是我的，那是你的小刀。)
5. Though he talked like a man of sense, his actions were the actions of a fool. (他談得來雖像一個聰敏人，他的行動却像愚人的行動。)
6. Health is of more value than money; money can not give such true happiness as health. (康健比金錢貴重；金錢不能像康健一般給人以真的幸福。)
7. I want an umbrella, but no one has an umbrella to spare. (我要一把傘，可是沒有人多出一把來。)
8. These knives are not good; show me better knives. (這些小刀不好，給我好點的看看。)

III. 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. I have not your knife; I have John's one. (我沒有你的小刀；我拿着一把約翰的。)
2. One should obey his parents. (人應該服從父母之命。)
3. That ink is good, but this one is very bad. (那種墨水是好的，但這種墨水很不好。)
4. Your hat is far better than my one. (你的帽子比我的帽子好得多。)
5. One of her two daughters is a musician, another an actress. (他的兩個女兒中一個是音樂家，一個是女伶。)

“Each”

“Each”爲‘各自’，‘每’，‘個個’等之意，多用於表各自分配或各自所有之意味。“Each”用在代名詞或複數名詞之前時，必與“of”連

接；如“each of them”，“each of the boys”等。代名詞所有格時用“his”，動詞用單數形；再“each”若放在名詞或代名詞之後，則以下全部須用單數形。

Each of the students has his own desk. (每個學生有自己的桌子。)

Each of them has his own desk. (他們每個人有自己的桌子。)

They each has a desk. (同上。)

They have each his own desk. (同上。)

They have a desk each. (同上。)

上例中第三第四第五之“each”，皆可作為“they”之 Apposition 看待。又，第五例中之“each”亦不妨作副詞看。

“Either” and “Neither”

“Either”常為單數。(1)用於表‘兩者中之任何一方’(=one or the other of the two)，(2)表‘兩者各方，兩者中不論那一方’(=each of the two)之意。“Either”之打消為“not either”即“neither”。“Neither”用於表示兩方打消之意味。

{ Either of you may go. (你們兩人中有一個可以去的。)

{ Either will do. (兩方都可以。)

Neither will do. (兩方都不對。)

{ I do not know either of them. } (他們兩人我都不知道。)

{ I know neither of them. }

“Either”與打消語聯在一處作副詞用時，有“not too”的意味。

If you do not go, I shall *not* either. (若你不去，我也不去。)

I do not know Italian, *nor* French either. (我不解意大利語，法語也不知道。)

[注意] 表兩個事物的打消，用上述的“not either”或“neither”。遇三個以上的事物時，用“not... any”，“no”，或“none”。須注意“all + 打消語”並不是全部的打消；又“both + 打消語”亦只能打消兩者中的一方。如：

I do not know all of them (=I know some; I do not know the others).

(我並不知道他們全部。——內中有幾個是知道的，其他都不知道。)

Both of his parents are not living (= One of his parents is living, and the other dead). (他的雙親並非兩個都活着。——一個活着，一個死了。)

以上兩例若表全部的打消時，爲

I do not know any of them = I know none of them. (他們中我一個都不知道。)

Neither of his parents is living = Both his parents are dead. (他的兩親都死了。)

“Both” and “All”

“Both” 用於表‘兩方皆’之意；“all” 用於表三個以上事物之全部。

{ Both of them are tired out. (兩人皆疲乏極了。)

{ They are both tired out. (同上。)

{ They both are tired out. (同上。)

{ All of them are dead. (他們全部死了。)

{ They are all dead. (同上。)

{ They all are dead. (同上。)

“Some” and “Any”

“Some” 用於肯定，意爲‘若干’，‘幾個’，用於代複數普通名詞及抽象名詞物質名詞；前者因表多數，故爲複數；後者因表量，故爲單數。“Any” 用於否定，疑問及條件的文句，意爲‘多少’，‘一點也’；與“some” 同樣，代複數普通名詞用時爲複數，代物質名詞用時爲單數。

{ Are there any staying at the hotel? (旅館裏有什麼人住着嗎?) [疑問——普通名詞代用]

{ Yes, there are some. (有幾個住着。) [肯定]

{ No, there are not any (= none). (一個也沒有了。) [否定]

{ Give me a pen if you have any. (有筆的話，請借我一枝。) [條件]

- Is there any left in that inkstand? (那個墨水盒裏有什麼墨水留着嗎?)
 [疑問——物質名詞代用]
 Yes, there is **some** left. (有若干留着。)[肯定]
 No, there is not **any** (= *none*) left. (一點也沒有了。)[否定]
 I will lend you **some** money, if you want **any**. (要錢的話, 我可借你若干。)[條件]

“Some” 用於肯定, 我們已經說過; 但勸人進物時, 疑問文句中亦可用之。

Here are good apples. Won't you eat **some**? (有上等蘋果在此, 你要吃些嗎?)

May I offer you **some**? (少爲一點如何?)

又, “some”, “any”, “every”, “no” 等 word, 與其他 word 如 “body”, “thing”, “one” 等相合, 可作合成代名詞 (但與 “one” 結合時, 普通分爲二字)。

somebody	something	some one
anybody	anything	any one
everybody	everything	every one
nobody	nothing	none

須注意凡修飾 “something”, “anything”, “everything”, “nothing” 等的形容詞, 皆放在此等字的下面。如:

That boy has **something** *white* in his hands. (那孩子手中拿着白的東西。)

Nothing *great* is easy. (偉大的事都不是容易的。)

[注意] “Something”, “nothing”, “everything” 等又有一種特殊的用法。“Something” 有‘相當好的事物’之意; “nothing” 有‘無足取的事物’之意; “everything” 有‘最重要的事物’之意。

Talent is **something**, but tact is **everything**. (才能果然不是無用的, 但最要的是才幹。)

Nowadays money is **everything**. (當今之世金錢萬能。)

You are **everything** to me. 你是我天地間最關重要的人。)

Wealth is **nothing**, position is **nothing**, fame is **nothing**, manhood is **everything**. (富不足取,地位不足取,名譽不足取,最要緊的是決斷的勇氣。)

“None”

“None”等於“no + Noun”,意為“not any”或“not one”,單數複數兩方都可以用,但現今通常用複數。作物質名詞的代用時,當然要用單數。

Is there any ink in the bottle? — No, there is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{none.} \\ \text{no ink.} \end{array} \right.$ [物質名詞代用]

(瓶中有墨水嗎。——一點也沒有了。)

Have you a pencil? — No, I have $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{none.} \\ \text{no pencil.} \end{array} \right.$ [單數普通名詞代用]

(你有筆嗎?——我一枝也沒有。)

Have you any sisters? — No, I have $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{none.} \\ \text{no sisters.} \end{array} \right.$ [複數]

(你有姊妹嗎?——我一個也沒有。)

None but the brave *deserve* the fair. [複數]

(非勇士不能得美人。)

比較 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{None of the three are (or is) present. [單數複數兼用]} \\ \text{(三人中一個都不出席。)} \\ \text{No one is present. [單數]} \\ \text{(沒有一個人出席。)} \end{array} \right.$

“Such”

作代名詞用的“such”,有以下幾種用法。

(a) “Such”代用作前面的名詞。

If you are a gentleman, show yourself **such** (= a gentleman). (假若你是個紳士,請你自己顯出紳士的樣子來。)

He was a great scholar, and was respected as **such** (= a great scholar). (他是個偉大的學者,被人尊視為偉大的學者。)

(b) **Such** = such men (這樣的人們)。

Prosperous men are much exposed to flattery, for **such** (= *such men*) alone can be made to pay for it. (榮者易受諂諛，因只有此等人能付諂諛的代價。)

(c) **Such as** = those who.

Such as (= *those who*) have plenty of money will not want for friends. (錢多的人，不怕沒有朋友。)

“The Same”

“**Same**” 不論作形容詞用或作代名詞用，常與定冠詞“**the**” 或與“**this**”，“**that**” 等連在一處。

He bought a bicycle and sold **the same** (= *that very bicycle*) the next day. (他買了一部腳踏車，第二天就把那部車賣去了。)

Exercise XIV.

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 這兩本小說中你可有讀過一本嗎？
2. 不，我都沒有讀過。
3. 他們兩人都很用功。
4. 若你要錢的話，我可以借你一點。
5. 優等生皆從校長那裏受得賞品。
6. 那瓶裏還有什麼墨水嗎？不，一點也沒有了。
7. 若你是一個男子漢，請表出男子漢的神氣來。
8. 兄弟二人皆遠足去了。

3. 疑問代名詞 (Interrogative Pronouns)

廣義的疑問詞 (Interrogatives, 包含下列三類。

(a) **Interrogative Pronouns** (疑問代名詞): ——

Who? What? Which?

(b) **Interrogative Adjectives** (疑問形容詞): ——

what book? Which book?

(c) **Interrogative Adverbs** (疑問副詞): ——

When? Where? Why? How?

疑問代名詞，爲用於發疑問的代名詞，只有“who”，“what”，“which”三個。就中完全有格的變化者，只有“who”；其他二字無所有格。三字皆單數與複數同形。

Nominative	Who?	What?	Which?
Possessive	Whose?	——	——
Objective	Whom?	What?	Which?

1. “Who” 只用於人。

Who has come? (誰來了?)

Whose dog is that? (那是誰的犬?)

Whom do you want to see? (你要見那一個人?)

[注意] “Whom” 作爲動詞或前置詞的目的語而立於文句的冒頭時，常用作“who”；這雖不合文法，但在口語中，却被認爲無誤。

Who can he mean? (不知他在說那一個人?)

Who is this letter from? (這信是那一個人寄來的?)

Who should I meet but the man you spoke of? (誰知遇見的就是你說的那個人?)

又，“Whose” 可省去下面的名詞，作 Absolute Form 用。

Whose book is this? — I don't know whose it is. (我不知道這是誰的書。)

2. ‘What’ 用於人與物。

What do you want? (你要什麼東西?)

What is he? (他是什麼人?)

須注意“what”用於人時，表職業與身分；“who”用於表姓名與血族關係。

What is he?—He is a lawyer. (他是什麼人?—是一個辯護士。)

Who is he?—He is Mr. Wilson. (他是誰?—是威爾遜先生。)

3. ‘Which’ 常表示選擇的意味，人與物皆可適用。

Which of these books belongs to you? (這些書裏面那一本是你的?)

Which is your cousin? (那一個是你的堂兄弟?)

附屬疑問詞 (Dependent Interrogatives)

1. 疑問詞用作 Noun Clause 的引導語者，叫做 Dependent Interrogative.

普通疑問詞

Who is he?

(他是誰?)

What does he want?

(他要什麼東西?)

Which do you like best?

(那一個你最喜歡?)

Where does he live?

(他住在那裏?)

附屬疑問詞

I don't know **who** he is.

(我不知道他是誰。)

I will ask **what** he wants.

(我想問問他要什麼東西。)

Tell me **which** you like best.

(請告我那一個你最喜歡。)

Nobody knows **where** he lives.

(無人知道他住在什麼地方。)

2. 含附屬疑問詞的疑問文，其疑問詞的位置，依動詞的性質而異。

{(a) Do you know **who** is ill? (生病的是誰你知道嗎?)

{(b) **Who** do you think is ill? (你想生病的是誰?)

(a) 例因其問知道不知道，故可用“‘Yes’或‘No’”回答；但(b)例問病人是誰，不能用“‘Yes’或‘No’”回答。“Know”，“hear”，“ask”，“tell”等屬於(a)類；“think”，“suppose”，“believe”等屬於(b)類。“Say”兩方都可以用。

Have you *heard* what he wants? (他要什麼東西你聽到過嗎?)

Did you *ask* what he wants? (他要什麼東西你問過了嗎?)

Has he *told* what he wants? (他要什麼東西對你說過了嗎?)

What do you *think* (or *suppose*) he wants? (你想他要什麼東西?)

What did he *say* he wanted? (他說要什麼東西?)

Did he *say* what he wanted? (要什麼東西他說過了嗎?)

[注意] 疑問代名詞成爲前置詞的目的格時, 這前置詞有放在疑問詞前者, 亦有放在疑問詞後者, 又有前後皆可隨意者。

{ To whom does this belong? (這東西屬於誰的?)

{ Whom does this belong to? (同上。)

With whom did you speak? (你同那一個說話?)

Whom are you looking for? (你在找那一個?)

Which were you thinking of? (你在想那一個?)

不定疑問代名詞(Indefinite Interrogative Pronouns)

與“who”, “what”, “which”等普通疑問代名詞相對的“any”與“either”, 叫做 Indefinite Interrogative Pronouns.

不定疑問代名詞

Has anybody come?

(有什麼人來過嗎?)

Is that any one's dog?

(那是什麼人的犬?)

Did you meet any one?

(你遇見了什麼人嗎?)

Do you want anything?

(你要什麼東西嗎?)

Do you want any of these books?

(這些書裏面你可有要的吗?)

Do you want either of the two?

(兩者中你有什麼要的吗?)

普通疑問代名詞

Who has come?

(誰來過了?)

Whose dog is that?

(那是誰的犬?)

Whom did you meet?

(你遇見了誰?)

What do you want?

(你要什麼?)

Which of these books do you want?

(這些書裏面你要那一本?)

Which of the two do you want?

(兩者中你要那一個?)

第一例之“Has anybody come?”爲不定的用法，因有否人來過，尙未知道。“Who has come?”指來過的人是誰，故已預先知道有人來過。

Exercise XV.

(1) 將下文譯成英文：——

1. 那紳士是個什麼人？他是個技師。
2. 那個婦人是誰你知道嗎？
3. 你想這是什麼東西？
4. 他到那裏去了，你們知道嗎？我們都不知道。
5. 他在學校裏教你們什麼東西？
6. 那是醫生的車子，什麼人生病了嗎？
7. 你到底是誰，是什麼人？
8. 誰做了這樣的事情？
9. 這是誰做的，你不知道嗎？
10. 你想這是誰做的？

(2) 將以下的黑體字改作疑問代名詞：——

1. Did **he** come in my absence?
2. Was America discovered by **Columbus**?
3. Were you looking at **that tree**?
4. Are you sending for **the doctor**?
5. Is this **John's** dictionary?

(3) 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. Who did you say you met yesterday? (你說你昨天遇見的是誰?)
2. Whom do you think it was? (你以爲這是誰?)
3. Who do you take me to be? (你以爲我是誰?)
4. Do you know whom he is? (他是誰，你知道嗎?)
5. Do you know who you are speaking to? (你對誰說話你知道嗎?)

4. 關係代名詞 (Relative Pronouns)

廣義的關係詞 (Relatives), 有以下三種。

(a) **Relative Pronouns** (關係代名詞):——

Who, Which, That, What;

Whoever, Whichever, Whatever;

As, Than, But.

(b) **Relative Adjectives** (關係形容詞):——

Which, What; Whichever, Whatever.

(c) **Relative Adverbs** (關係副詞):——

When, Where, Why, How.

Relative Pronoun 乃用以代表前面的名詞或代名詞, 而同時結合句之二部分的, 兼有 Pronoun 與 Conjunction 的作用。關係代名詞所代表的名詞或代名詞, 叫做關係代名詞的 **Antecedent** (先行詞)。

This is the hat that I bought yesterday. (這是我昨天買的帽子。)

上例中的“that”, 代表“the hat”, 同時又連結“this is the hat”與“I bought yesterday”二部分。“The hat”是關係代名詞“that”的先行詞。

關係代名詞的人稱與數, 須與前行詞一致。

I, who am a poor man. (第一人稱單數)

You, who are a rich man. (第二人稱單數)

A man who knows English. (第三人稱單數)

主要的關係代名詞爲“who”, “which”, “that”, “what”四個, 其格的變化如次。

Nominative	who	which	that	what
Possessive	whose	{ whose of which	—	—
Objective	whom	which	that	what

限定關係詞與同位關係詞 (Restrictive and Co-ordinate Relatives)

1. 關係代名詞有兩種不同的用法。

(a) Restrictive Use (限定的用法)。

I want a man **who** understands English. (我要一個懂英語的人。)

(b) Continuative Use (追敘的用法)。

I will engage Mr. A, **who** understands English. (我想僱用 A 君, 他是懂英語的。)

(a)例中的“who understands English”用以限定先行詞“man”, 指所要的人, 並不是誰都可以的, 有非懂英語不可的限定意味。就文法上說起來, 這是修飾“man”的 Adjective Clause; 文句全體爲 Complex Sentence. 此等引導 Adjective Clause 的關係詞叫做 Restrictive Relative.

(b)例中的“who understands English”, 並不是限定先行詞“Mr. A”的。這不過是說明或追敘“Mr. A”的情形而已。要而言之, 這文句是“I will engage Mr. A”與“He understands English”兩獨立文句用關係代名詞“who”連結而成的。全體爲兩個 Independent Clause 組成的 Compound Sentence. 此種關係詞, 叫做

Co-ordinate Relative. 諸君須注意此等關係代名詞前面之有無 Comma. 普通有 comma 者爲 Continuatve Use, 無 comma 者爲 Restrictive Use.

2. 同位關係詞, 大多可以用接續詞與代名詞代替。除表追敘外, 又有表理由, 目的, 或讓步者。

(a) I found my friend, **who** (=and he) recognised me at once. (我找見了我的朋友, 他立刻就認識我了。) [追敘]

(b) They should pardon his son, **who** (=as he) has never committed such a fault before. (他們應該饒恕他的兒子, 因他從來不曾犯過這樣的過失。) [理由]

(c) Envoys were sent, **who** should (=that they might) sue for peace. (爲乞和去的使臣已經派出去了。) [目的]

(d) The man, **who** (=though he) was very poor, never complained of his lot. (其人雖窮, 却不會怨恨過自己的運命。) [讓步]

[注意] 最後一例, 因 “who” 與 “though he” 同意, 故全文轉成爲 Complex Sentence 的構造。

“Who” and “Which”

1. “Who” 只能用於人。

He is the man **who** lent me some money the other day. (他便是前幾天借錢給我的那個人。) [Nominative Case]

A woman **whose** husband is dead is called a widow. (丈夫死了的女人叫做寡婦。) [Possessive Case]

The foreigner **whom** we met in the train is an American. (我們在車中遇見的那個外國人是美國人。) [Objective Case]

2. “Which” 用於人以外的動物及無生物。

The river **which** flows through the city. (流貫城市的河) [Nominative]

A river $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whose banks} \\ \text{the banks of which} \\ \text{of which the banks} \end{array} \right\}$ are covered with trees.

兩岸樹木叢生的河。 [Possessive]

The river **which** we crossed. (我們所渡過的河)

[注意] 所有格的關係代名詞,有如下的種種配置方式。

- A proverb, **whose** meaning I do not understand. (意義為“我所不了解的諺語”)
- A proverb, **of which** I do not understand the meaning. (同上)
- A proverb, the meaning **of which** I do not understand. (同上)
- A proverb, **which** I do not understand the meaning **of**. (同上)

3. “Who” 與 “which” 皆可用於 Restrictive, Co-ordinate 兩種用法。作 Co-ordinate 用時,通例在 “who”, “which” 與先行詞之間,附以 Comma.

Restrictive

Mr. A is the man **who** taught me English. (A 先生是教我英語的人。)

I want a book **which** is both interesting and easy. (我要一本有趣而容易的書。)

A child **whose** parents are dead is called an orphan. (兩親死了的孩子叫做孤兒。)

This is the man **whom** I met in the train. (這便是在車中遇見的人。)

Co-ordinate

I lived with Mr. A, **who** taught me English. (我與 A 先生同住,他教我英語。)

I will lend you this book, **which** is both interesting and easy. (這本書我借你吧,因這書有趣而又容易。)

My uncle adopted B, **whose** parents are dead. (我的叔父收 B 做了養子,因 B 的兩親死了。)

The maid announced a visitor, **whom** I had shown in. (婢女說有客人,我便把他引進來了。)

4. Continuative Use 的 “which” 可代表 Phrase 或 Clause.

After leaving school *he went to sea*, **which** he did in order to improve his eyesight. (出了學校他就當了水手,這因為他要想增進他的眼界。)

Caesar crossed the Rubicon, **which** was in effect a declaration of war. (該撒渡過了盧皮孔河,這實際上是一種宣戰。)

They tried hard to catch the moon in the water, **which**, however, was found impossible. (他們起勁想捉住水中的月,然而覺得這是不可能的。)

5. 前置詞普通放在“whom”，“which”的前面，亦有遠放在後面的；但“all of”，“both of”，“some of”，“many of”，“one of”等必須放在“whom”或“which”的前面。

He has three daughters, all of whom are married. (他有三個女兒，都結婚了。)

Is this the man $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{of whom you spoke} \\ \text{(whom) you spoke of} \end{array} \right\}$ the other day? (這就是你前幾天說起過的人嗎?)

This is the house $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in which I live.} \\ \text{(which) I live in.} \end{array} \right\}$ (這是我住的房子。)

“That”

1. “That” 爲通用於人，動物，及無生物的 Restrictive Relative Pronoun (限定關係代名詞)。可以代作限定用的“who”，“whom”，“which”用。

I want a man who (or that) understands English. (我要一個懂英語的人。)

This is the man whom (or that) I met at my uncle's. (這就是我在叔叔家裏遇見過的人。)

I wish to read a book which (or that) is both easy and interesting. (我想讀一本又容易又有興趣的書。)

[注意] “That”不能代“whose”用；又“that”的前面不得放前置詞。請比較：

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The man } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{of whom you spoke.} \\ \text{whom you spoke of.} \end{array} \right\} \text{ (你所說起的人)} \\ \text{The man that you spoke of. (同上)} \end{array} \right.$

2. 在以下幾種情形，通例用“that”。

(a) 先行詞與形容詞的最上級連用時。

He is the greatest poet that China has ever produced. (他是中國最偉大的詩人。)

He was the first man that came. (他是最先來的人。)

(b) 先行詞與 “the only”, “the same”, “the very” 或 “all”, “any”, “no” 等連用時。

Man is *the only* creature **that** is gifted with speech. (人是能言語的唯一的動物。)

This is *the same* watch **that** I lost yesterday. (這就是我昨天失去的錶。)

That is *the very* thing **that** I want. (那正是我所要的東西。)

All that glitters is not gold. (發光的東西未必全是金子。)

No man that has common sense can believe it. (有常識的人不會相信這個。)

(c) 用 “It is . . . that” 的文式加強文句中一部分的語氣時。

It is a nightingale **that** is singing over there. (在那裏歌唱着的是鶯。)

It is not the style, but the sentiment **that** I admire. (我所佩服的不是文體，乃是思想。)

[注意] 關係代名詞的人稱與數，照規則須與 Antecedent 一致；但在 “It is . . . that” 的文式中，人稱與數並不與 Antecedent “it” 一致，須依照 Subjective Complement 的人稱與數而定。

(d) 先行詞包含人與動物(或無生物)時。

The train ran over a *boy and his dog* **that** were just crossing the track. (火車把正在橫過路線走的孩子和他的狗軋死了。)

The *people and manners* **that** one sees there seem to be quite different from those of any other country. (在那裏看到的人民風俗，似乎與別國的很不同。)

(e) 前面有疑問代名詞時。——此種 “that” 乃為要避去 “who . . . who”, “which . . . which” 的重複而用。

Who is the man **that** is standing by the well? (井旁立着的人是誰?)

Who that has sense of honour can do such a thing? (有廉恥心的人，誰會做出這等事情來呢?)

Which of these steamers is the one **that** plies between Shanghai and London? (這些輪船中走上海倫敦之間的是那一隻?)

3. 先行詞中有“that”或“those”時，關係代名詞可用“who”或“which”；因“that...that”，“those...that”讀起來不甚順當。

That kite which Jack made. (傑克所做的紙鳶)

The third door was *that which* we were seeking. (第三條門就是我們所找尋着的那條。)

Heaven helps *those who* help themselves. (天幫助那些自助的人。)

關係代名詞的省略 (Omission of the Relative)

限定關係代名詞成爲動詞或前置詞之目的語時，口語中常被省去。

Is this the book [*which*] you want to read? (這是你要讀的書嗎?)

Is this the man [*whom*] you spoke of? (這就是你說起過的那個人嗎?)

古文體及詩中，Nominative Case 的關係代名詞，亦往往略去。

That's the life [*which*] is meet for me. — *Scott*. (那正是適合於我的生活。)

There is a willow [*which*] grows aslant a brook. — *Shakespeare*. (有一株橫着小川而生的柳樹。)

口語體中亦偶有將主格關係代名詞略去者。

But what is it [*that*] makes the poor old thing so excited? — *Mrs. Humphrey Ward*. (但是使這可憐的老頭兒那樣地興奮的是什麼東西呢?)

"It is your system [*that*] makes such children," said Miss Ophelia. — *Stowe*. (“使孩子成爲這樣子乃是你的法式，” Ophelia 姑娘說。)

[注意] Relative Clause 中有 *there is* (複數 *are*) 時，即現代文中亦省去主格關係代名詞。

He is one of the best men *there are* in the world. (他是世界上最好的人裏面的一個。)

先行詞的省略(Omission of the Antecedent)

詩及諺語中，關係代名詞的先行詞常被省去。

Who (= *he who*) steals my purse, steals trash. — *Shakespeare*. (偷余之錢囊者，與偷廢物同樣。)

Who (= *he who*) never climbs will never fall. (不爬高的人決不會跌下來。)

Whom (= *those whom*) the gods love die young. — *Ryron*. (才子薄命。)

Who (= *he who*) kills a man kills a reasonable creature. — *Milton*. (殺一人者，即殺一理性之動物。)

[注意] 附屬疑問詞的構文與關係代名詞的構文相似，諸君須注意於先行詞的有無。有先行詞者，為關係代名詞，無先行詞者，為附屬代名詞。請比較：——

{ Do you know **who** did it? (你知道做這件事情的人嗎?)

{ *The man who* did it has already run away. (做這件事情的人已逃去了。)

上例中第一句為附屬疑問詞；第二句為關係代名詞，因有“man”作先行詞。

“What”

1. “What” 為兼有先行詞的關係代名詞。依照下列順序，可看出這種“what”原來是從疑問代名詞轉過來的。

(a) **What** do you want? (你要什麼?) [疑問代名詞]

(b) He asked me **what** I wanted. (他問我要什麼。) . . . [附屬疑問代名詞]

(c) He did not know **what** I wanted. (他不知道我所要的東西是什麼。)

(d) He gave me **what** I wanted. (他把我所要的東西給了我。) . . . [關係代名詞]

[注意] 關係代名詞的“what”與附屬疑問代名詞的“what”很難區別。諸君須留意“what”作 Relative Pronoun 用時，必定有先行詞在裏面，作附屬疑問代名詞用時，“what”只用於引導 Dependent Clause。

{ This is **what** (= *that which*) you wanted. (這就是你所要的東西。)

{ I asked **what** you wanted (= *what did you want?*). (我問你要什麼。)

2. “**What**” 通常等於 “that (or those) which” 或 “the thing(s) which”; 但亦有用於作 “all that” 的意味的。

Do you understand **what** (= *that which*) I say? (你明白我所說的話嗎?)

I know **what** (= *the thing which*) you want. (我知道你所要的東西。)

He saves **what** (= *all that*) he earns. (他把勞力的所得都貯蓄起來。)

3. “**What**” 的慣用句。

He has made me **what** I am. (他使我成了現在的我。)

He is not **what** he used to be. (他已不是從前的他了。)

She is **what** you call a ‘new woman’. (她是個所謂新式女子。)

He is a good scholar; and, **what** is better, a good teacher. (他是個有學問的人, 而且, 他又是個好教師。)

From **what** I have seen of him, there is nothing peculiar about him.

(就我所看到的說起來, 他身上並無奇特之點。)

Reading is to the mind **what** food is to the body. (讀書之於精神猶食物之於身體。)

合成關係代名詞 (Compound Relative Pronouns)

1. 將 “-ever” 附於 “who”, “which”, “what” 等代名詞, 這便叫做合成關係代名詞或不定關係代名詞 (Indefinite Relative Pronouns). 其格的變化如次。

Nominative	whoever	whichever	whatever
Possessive	whose-ever	-----	-----
Objective	whomever	whichever	whatever

[注意] 所有格的 “whose-ever” 用法極少; 又, 代替了 “-ever”, 作 “whosoever”, “whichever”, “whatsoever” 亦可。

2. 合成關係代名詞與“what”同樣，自身兼先行詞與關係代名詞。其格須以關係代名詞作標準，不宜以所含的先行詞作爲標準。

{ *Whoever* = any one who.
 { *Whose-ever* = any one whose.
 { *Whomever* = any one whom.

(a) Give it to *whoever* (= *any one who*) wants it. (請將此給與想要的人。)

(b) He flatters *whose-ever* (= *any one whose*) relation is rich. (他諂諛那種親屬有錢的人。)

(c) Give it to *whomev r* (= *any one whom*) you like. (請將此給與你所歡喜的人。)

(a)例中的“*whoever*”，爲“to”的目的語“*any one*”兼“wants”的主格“*who*”的用法。

(b)例中的“*whose-ever*”，爲“flatters”的目的語“*any one*”兼所有形“*whose*”的用法。

(c)例中的“*whomever*”，爲“to”的目的語“*any one*”兼“like”的目的語“*whom*”的用法。(a)與(c)的不同點，在於一作“wants”的主語，一作“like”的目的語。

3. { *Whichever* = either or any that.
 { *Whatever* = anything that.

Here are a gold coin and a Bible. You may choose *whichever* (= *either of the two that*) you like. (有金幣與聖經在此，你可以選你所歡喜的一種。)

You had better see the men for yourself, and choose *whichever* (= *any one of them that*) you like. (你最好親自去看看那些人，選出你所歡喜的一個。)

Do *whatever* (= *anything that*) you like. (做你所歡喜的事吧。)

4. 合成關係代名詞可用作表讓步的 Adverb Clause。但在此種用法中，合成關係代名詞已失其關係代名詞的作用，成爲一種接續

詞。請比較下例：——

- (1) **Whoever** (= *any one who*) breaks this law shall be punished.
(犯此法律者處罰。)... [合成關係代名詞]
- (2) **Whoever** (= *no matter who*) may break this law, he shall be punished. (不論誰犯了這法律,他便要處罰。)... [接續詞]

(1)例的“whoever”，爲“breaks”的主語“who”與“shall be punished”的主語“any one”兼用的合成關係代名詞。(2)的“whoever”則爲“no matter”與疑問詞“who”兼用的一種接續詞。今更舉數例於下。

- (1) You may read **whichever** (= *any or either one that*) you like. (你可以讀你所歡喜的書。)
- (2) **Whichever** (= *no matter which*) you may read, you will find it easy. (不論你讀那一種,你會覺得容易。)
- (1) He succeeds in **whatever** (= *anything that*) he undertakes. (他着手做的事情不論什麼他都成功。)
- (2) **Whatever** (= *no matter what*) he may undertake, he succeeds in it. (不論着手做什麼事情,他都能成功。)

whoever	} + may = no matter	who
whichever		which
whatever		what

[注意] 作爲強勢副詞用的“whatever”，實爲“whatever it may be”的省略形。

There is no doubt **whatever** (= *at all*). (毫無疑義。)

Is there **any** chance **whatever** (= *at all*)? (到底有什麼希望嗎?)

擬似關係代名詞 (Quasi-Relative Pronouns)

“As”, “than”, “but”, 本來爲接續詞, 但有時其用法與關係代名詞相似。這叫做擬似關係代名詞。

1. “As” 作關係代名詞用時，其下面常有代名詞省去，而 “as” 兼有該代名詞的作用。

(1) 前面有 “as” 時。

He is *as* brave a soldier *as* [any that] ever shouldered a rifle. (他
是個不遜於古來任何肩鎗者的勇士——他是古今無雙的勇士。)
As many men *as* came were caught. (來者皆被擒。)

(2) 前面有 “such” 時。

He was not *such* a man *as* would tell a lie (=he was not *that* sort
of man *who* would tell a lie). (他並不是說謊話的那樣的人。)
Avoid *such* man *as* will do you harm. (請勿與於你有害的人相交。)
I will provide you with *such* thing *as* you may need. (我願供給你所
要的東西。)

[注意] “Such... as” 之用法，切勿與 “such... that” 的用法混亂。“Such... that” 的 “that” 為接續詞，無關係代名詞的作用。請比較下例：——

{ He is not *such* a man *as* would tell a lie. (他並不是說謊話的那樣的人。)
He is *such* an honest man (=is so honest) *that* he would not tell a
lie. (他因為非常誠實故不肯說謊。)

(3) 前面有 “the same” 時。

I have bought *the same* bicycle *as* you have. (我買了一部和你的同樣的
腳踏車。)
Bees like *the same* odours *as* we do. (蜜蜂喜歡和我們人類所喜歡的
同一的香味。)

[注意] “The same... that” 之意味全與 “the same... as” 同，“that” 亦為關係代名詞。但普通若文句中 “as” 下面為 clause 而表 “同一” 的意味時用 “that”，表 “同種類” 之意味時用 “as”。

{ This is *the same* man *that* I saw yesterday. (這就是我昨天看到過的同
一個人。)
I have *the same* dictionary *as* you have. (我有和你所有的同樣的字典。)

2. “**Than**” 本來爲接續詞；但亦與 “**as**” 同樣，可作關係代名詞用。

{ There is *as much* money **as** is needed. (有着所需要的錢。)

{ There is *more* money **than** is needed. (有超乎需要以上的錢。)

There are **more** things in heaven and earth, Horatio, **than** are dreamed of in your philosophy. — *Shakespeare*. (Horatio 呀，天地間有着在你的哲學中所夢想不到的許多東西哩。)

3. “**But**” 作 “**that ... not**” 的意味用時，爲關係代名詞；但前面的 Antecedent，必附有打消語，如 “**not**”，“**scarcely**”，“**hardly**” 等。

{ There is *no* rule **but** [it] has exceptions.
 { There is *no* rule **that** has *not* exception-. } (凡規則皆有例外。)
 { Every rule has exceptions.

{ (There is) *no* man **but** errs. } (人皆有過。)
 { There is *no* man **who** does *not* err. }

[注意] “**But**” 作關係代名詞用時，其先行詞的打消語，往往有變成疑問形者。

{ **Who but** knows it? (= Who is there but knows it?)
 { **No one but** knows it (= There is no one but knows it). } (沒有人不知道這個。)
 { Everybody knows it.

須注意下文中的 “**but**” 並不是關係代名詞，乃純粹的接續詞。

{ *No one is so old but* he may learn. } (不論怎樣年老的人，也都可以求學。)
 { *No one is so old that* he may *not* learn. }

{ *Nothing is so hard but* it becomes easy by practice. } (不論怎樣難的事，習練後就成爲容易。)
 { *Nothing is so hard that* it does *not* become easy by practice. }

樣難的事，習練後就成爲容易。)

Exercise XVI.

(1) 填入適當的關係代名詞：——

1. The man () I engaged has now come.

2. The teacher () we loved has gone home.

3. The house () we lived in has fallen down.
4. This is the only dictionary () I have.
5. We saw the men and horses () were going to the front.
6. Shakespeare is the greatest poet () England ever saw.
7. Choose such friends () can benefit you.
8. There is no one () hopes to be happy.
9. This is the very thing () I want.
10. Each house is of the same height () the next.

(2) 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. I will reward whomever can solve this problem. (能解答這問題者我願給與報酬。)
2. I love my parents that are very kind to me. (我愛兩親，他們是很愛護我的。)
3. It is not we who was making the noise. (騷擾者並不是我們。)
4. He is the man whom I believe did it. (我相信做這個的是他。)
5. What can not be cured, it must be endured. (無法可想的事情，只得忍耐。)

(3) 將下列文句譯成中文：——

1. He never promises what he does not intend to perform.
2. Such men as praise you to your face are sure to speak ill of you behind your back.
3. What is worth having comes at the cost which corresponds to its worth.
4. Many are dismayed by difficulties, which in most cases are really our helpers.
5. How happy men would be if they would always love what is right and hate what is wrong.

(4) 將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 丈夫死了的女人叫做寡婦。
2. 要是正直的人誰會做出這等事來呢？
3. 他有兩個兒子，都在我們的學校裏念書。
4. 要想成功的人，必須忍耐。

5. 無過的人是沒有的。
6. 勿將今天能做的事延到明天去做。
7. 這本書並沒有像我所豫想那樣的難。
8. 十年前我所住過的那座房子,昨天晚上燒去了。
9. 你懂得先生在黑板上所寫的東西嗎?
10. 發明這機械的人,一定是個偉大的學者。
11. 不論他對你說什麼話,你最好不要相信他。
12. 什麼事情都應該好好地做。

第三章

形容詞 (ADJECTIVES)

I. 形容詞的種類 (Classes of Adjectives)

形容詞普通分以下三種：——

1. **Pronominal Adjectives** (代名形容詞)
2. **Quantitative Adjectives** (數量形容詞)
3. **Qualifying Adjectives** (性質形容詞)

1. 代名形容詞 (Pronominal Adjectives)

代名形容詞，為帶有代名詞性質的形容詞。此種形容詞單獨用時，便成為代名詞。

This book is mine. (代名形容詞)

This is my book. (指示代名詞)

代名形容詞之主要者如次：——

Possessive (所有)	(單數) my; your; his; her; its. (複數) our; your; their.								
Demonstrative (指示)	<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tbody> <tr> <td style="width: 20%; padding: 5px;">Definite</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">(單數) this; that; such; the same. (複數) these; those; such; the same.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">Indefinite</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">(單數) some; any; a certain; another (複數) some; any; certain; other.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">Distributive</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">each; every; either; neither.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">Quantitative</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">both; all; some; any; no.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Definite	(單數) this; that; such; the same. (複數) these; those; such; the same.	Indefinite	(單數) some; any; a certain; another (複數) some; any; certain; other.	Distributive	each; every; either; neither.	Quantitative	both; all; some; any; no.
Definite	(單數) this; that; such; the same. (複數) these; those; such; the same.								
Indefinite	(單數) some; any; a certain; another (複數) some; any; certain; other.								
Distributive	each; every; either; neither.								
Quantitative	both; all; some; any; no.								
Interrogative (疑問)	what? which?								
Relative (關係)	which; what.								

1. 所有代名形容詞——代名詞的所有格有形容詞的作用。

This is **your** book. (這是你的書。)

It is **my** pen. (這是我的筆。)

2. 指示代名形容詞，即為指點某種事物的形容詞。今將其中之須要注意者加以說明(請參照指示代名詞)。

“Some”

(1) “Some” 附於複數普通名詞時，為“a number of”之意；附於物質名詞時，為“a quantity of”之意；附於抽象名詞時，為“a degree of”之意。

Give me **some** apples. (給我幾個蘋果。)

Give me **some** water. (給我一點水。)

The operation requires **some** skill. (該手術需要多少技巧。)

(2) 複數普通名詞與物質名詞表示有限制的數或量時，必須用“some”；又，“there is (or are)”，“have”，“want”，“give”等動詞下面，其數量大抵有所限制。

There are **some** apples in the basket. (籃中有若干蘋果。)

There is **some** water in the bottle. (瓶中有若干水。)

I have bought **some** tea. (我買了若干茶。)

I met **some** boys on my way home. (回家時我遇見了幾個孩子。)

[注意] 如下的情形，數量雖有限定，卻不用“some”。

(1) 數量非常多時：——

There is **water** in the sea. (海裏有水。)

There are **apples** on the apple-tree. (蘋果樹上有許多蘋果。)

(2) 不着重於分量而着重於物事本身時：——

I want **pears**, not **apples**. (我要的是梨，不是蘋果。)

Shall I give you **tea** or **coffee**? (我給你茶呢還是咖啡?)

(3) “Some” 附於單數普通名詞時，並無數量的觀念，只表示不定之意，為‘什麼人，什麼物，什麼時，什麼地方’之義。

He is suffering from **some** disease. (他生着什麼病。)

There is **some** one at the door. (門口有着什麼人。)

Some student must have written it. (這必定是那一個學生寫的。)

I will tell you **some** day next week. (來週的什麼時候我告訴你吧。)

[注意] “Certain” 與此種用法之 “some” 意味不同。如：——

{ He is reading **some** novel. (他讀着什麼小說。)

{ He is reading **a certain** novel. (他讀着某種小說。)

第一句的“some”，指所讀的小說，不明其為什麼小說；第二句的“a certain”，用於已經知道所讀的是什麼小說，而言者不欲說明或無說明之必要時。

(4) “Some” 放在數詞之前，為“about”之意。另外又有“some few”，“some little”等於“a few”，“a little”的用法。

Some twenty years ago. (二十年光景以前。)

He owes me **some** fifty dollars. (他欠我五十元左右。)

There were **some few** (= a few) foreigners present. (外國人出席者二三人。)

“Any”

(1) “Any” 在疑問文，條件文，否定文中，作“some”之代用。

Do you want **any** book? (你要什麼書嗎?)

Is there **any** one in the parlour? (客堂中有什麼人嗎?)

Isn't **any** place that you wish to visit? (你有什麼想去遊覽的地方嗎?)

If you want **any** book, I will lend you one. (你若想要什麼書的話，我可以借你一本。)

If **any** friends should call, I would see them. (若有友來，吾當會見。)

I don't want **any** book. } (我不要什麼書。)

I want **no** book.

I do not see any one to-day. } (今天我不見什麼人。)
 I see no one to-day. }

[注意] 否定文中之“not any”等於“no”。若作為 Subject 用時，普通用“no”；須把去“any...not”之構文。例如‘無人知道這個’一句，不宜說“Any one does not know it”，應該作“No one knows it”。今略舉數例於下：——

No misfortune comes alone. (不幸是一觸即連續而起的。)

No man is without fault. (人皆有過。)

Nothing comes amiss to a hungry man. (飢者無物不可口。)

(2) “Any”用於 Positive Statement 的文句中時，為‘不論什麼，不論誰，不論何處’之意。又，“any...that”與“whatever”或“whichever”之用法相等。

Bring me some book; any book will do. (請給我拿書來；不論那本都可以。)

Any boy can do that. (不論那個孩子都能做那樣的事。)

You may come at any time. (不論什麼時候你都可以來。)

You may go {to any place (that) you like. } (你可以到你所歡喜的
 {wherever you like. } 不論什麼地方去。)

You will soon be able to read {any book (that) you like.
 {whatever book you like.

(你立刻就能讀你所歡喜的不論什麼書了。)

“This” and “That” (pl. “These” and “Those”)

(1) 表時間時，“this”用於指現在，“these”表示與現在相連接之過去及未來，“that”與“those”多用於表示與現在隔離之過去。

現在：——this week (這星期), this month (本月), this evening (今晚), this year (今年), this morning (今天早晨)等。

過去：——I have been studying English these five years (=for the last five years). (這五年間我學着英語。)

There was no printing in those days. (其時尚無印刷。)

Up to that time all went well. (到那時為止萬事順利。)

未來：—I must study it these two years (*for the next two years*). (今後兩年間我非把他研究一下不可。)

I will take you there one of these days (= *shortly or some day before long*). (過幾天我帶了你到那邊去吧。)

“This day week” 可解作前週之今日或來週之今日。

He left Shanghai this day week. (他於前週的今日離開上海。)

I will see you again this day week. (來週的今日我再來看你吧。)

(2) “This” 與 “that” 對用時，表示不定之意味。

One pig would run this way, another would run that way. (一豕跑到這裏，一豕跑到那裏——東跑西跑。)

The child is always breaking this thing or that (= *some thing or other*). (孩子常常東打破物事，西打破物事。)

“Each” and “Every”

(1) “Each” 與 “every” 皆附於單數名詞。“Each” 爲‘每，各自，個個’之意；“every” 爲 “each and all” 之意，比 “all” 更強。

Each country has its own customs. (各國有自己的習慣。)

I gave each man one dollar. (我給了每個人一元。)

Every man desires to live long. (人皆希望壽長。)

⊙ [注意] nearly every + Singular = most + Plural.

Nearly every student speaks some English. } (大概的學生都會說點英語。)
Most students speak some English. }

(2) “Not every” 爲‘非全部’之意，乃 Partial Negation (部分的否定) 之一種。進一步又有用作‘極少’之意義的。又，
⊙ Not every + Singular = very few + Plural.

Every couple is not a pair. (相配的妻子是稀有的。)

Every man can not be poet. (成爲詩人的人是很少的。)

It is not every man who speaks and writes equally well. (口辭與文筆並佳的人是‘多的。)

③) “Every other” 爲‘隔一’之意。

I go to the doctor's every other day. (我間日往醫生那裏去。)

Write your answer on every other line. (答案請問行寫。)

[參考] Every day (每日)

Every two days)

Every second day (間一, 二日一次)

Every other day)

Every four days)

Every fourth day (間三日, 四日一次)

§ “All” and “Both”

(1) “All” 用於指兩個以上之事物；附於複數普通名詞，物質名詞及抽象名詞時，表數或量之全部。“Both” 用於指兩個事物，爲‘兩者皆’之意。“All” 與 “both” 皆必須放在冠詞，形容詞及所有格代名詞之前。

Both my brothers have studied all their lessons. (我的兩個兄弟都把他們的功課全部學習過了。)

All the students of this school are diligent. (這學校的學生全部用功。)

(2) “All” 與 “both” 之位置。

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{All} \\ \text{Both} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the} \\ \text{his} \end{array} \right\} \text{brothers are diligent. (名詞之前)}$$

$$\text{His brothers are} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{all} \\ \text{both} \end{array} \right\} \text{diligent. (名詞之後)}$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{All} \\ \text{Both} \end{array} \right\} \text{of them are diligent. (代名詞之前)}$$

$$\text{They are} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{all} \\ \text{both} \end{array} \right\} \text{diligent. (代名詞之後)}$$

(3) “All” 附於單數普通名詞或固有名詞時，則為“whole”(全)之意。

He is the best scholar in **all the school** (= *the whole school*). (他是全校中學問最好的人。)

That is the best English school in **all Shanghai** (= *in the whole of Shanghai*). (那是全上海中最好的英語學校。)

He was absent **all last month** (= *during the whole of last month*). (他前個月全部缺席。)

(4) 前面已經講過，複數普通名詞與物質抽象兩種名詞，汎言一般時，不得附冠詞或其他語；但為要增強意味時，可用“all”。

All boys love toys. (孩子統統喜歡玩具。)

All pleasure is bought at the price of pain. (一切快樂都是用苦痛換來的。)

(5) “Not all” 並非表全部之打消，乃屬部分之否定。“Not both” 亦非兩方全部之打消，只表其中一方面之否定。表全部之打消用“not any”，表兩方之打消用“not either”。

Not all good men will prosper, **nor** will **all** bad men fail. (善人未必都繁榮，惡人也未必都失敗。)

All knowledge is **not** good. (知識未必都是好的。)

Both his parents are **not** living. (他的兩親中有一個死去了。)

Both his brothers are **not** diligent. (他的兄弟並非兩人都用功的。)

◎【注意】“Both”與“either”相似；但“both”用於複數名詞，“either”用於單數名詞。

You can take **either** side. (隨便那一方你都可以。)

Put the lamp at **either** end. (把洋燈放在任何那一端。)

上例中之“either”，意為二者中之一方。但“either”亦有如“both”一樣解作兩方之意義的。諸君須留意此種用法。

The river overflowed on **either** side (= *on both sides*). (河水汎溢在兩岸。)

There is a door at **either** end of the room. (房間的兩端各有一門。)

(6) 關於“all”的重要慣用語句。

(a) “At all”用於疑問，條件及打消。

Are you going to do it **at all**? (你到底想做這個嗎?)

If you do it **all**, do it well. (若使你真是要做，好好地做罷。)

Then you are **not** going to do it **at all**. (那麼你是一點也不想做的了。)

(b) **All**=as much as.

I give you **all** I have. (我把我所有的錢給你。)

I will do **all** I can. (我願就能力所及地做。)

(c) **That is all**=there is no more.

That is all I know about the matter. (關於該事件我所知道的只這一點。)

This is all the money I have. (我所有的錢只這一點。)

(d) **For all**=**with all**=in spite of.

For all } his wealth, he is not a happy man. (他雖有金錢，卻不是幸福的人。)
With all }

(e) **After all**=after all is said and done.

I was right, **after all**. (我終於是不錯的。)

After all, man is a selfish being. (畢竟人是自私自利的東西。)

(f) **All but**=almost.

He is **all but** dead. (他同死了差不多——活着只是一個名目。)

He was **all but** drowned. (他幾乎溺死了。)

“Such”

(1) “Such”作形容詞用時，若遇後面之語為單數普通名詞，則常附以不定冠詞，成為“such a”或“such an”；但後面之語若為複數普通名詞或抽象名詞時，則不用冠詞。

I have never read **such an** interesting novel. (這樣有趣的小說我未曾讀過。)[單數普通名詞]

There are many *such men*. (這種人很多。)[複數普通名詞]

I have never heard *such music* in my life. (出生以來我未曾聽到過這種音樂。)[抽象名詞]

(2) **Such as** = like.

Such men as Confucius and Mencius [are] are rare.
Men like Confucius and Mencius are rare. } (像孔子與孟子那樣的人是稀有的。)

[注意] 第一句中之“as”為關係代名詞，第二句中之“like”為前置詞之一種。

(3) **Such that** = so that (但“so”為副詞)。

He is $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{such a fool} \\ \text{so foolish} \end{array} \right\}$ that no one will keep company with him.
 (他愚笨得很，所以無人同他往來。)

(4) “**Such and such**”用於指涉特定之事物，為‘如此如此’，‘這般這般’之意。此與副詞之“so and so”相當。

Tell me to do so and so on *such and such an occasion*. (在這樣這樣的時候，請你對我說這樣這樣地做。)

If you must leave, say you must leave for *such and such reasons*. (如你必須要走，那麼請你說你爲了這樣這樣的理由非走不可。)

(5) “Some”, “any”, “all”, “no”等語，必須放在“such”之前面。

I want *some such man*. (我想要這樣的人。)

There is *no such man* that I know of. (我的腦中並無這樣的人。)

There are *many such men*. (這種人很多。)

Lend me *all such books*. (把這樣的書都借給我吧。)

“Same”

(1) “Same”常與“the”或“this”，“that”等連用(作代名詞用時亦如此)。

Both writers have the *same merits* and the *same faults*. (兩作家有同樣之長所與短處。)

We all attend the same school. (我們在同一個學校裏念書。)

(2) “The same”表種類、性質、意味、數量等之相等時，常與關係代名詞“as”所導的 Clause 同用；表兩者完全為同一(identical)的事物時，通例與關係代名詞“that”所導的 Clause 同用。

{ This is the same watch as I lost. (我所失去的錶與這錶同型。)

{ This is the same watch that I lost. (這就是我所失去的錶。)

I have bought the same bicycle as you have. (我買了一部和你同樣的腳踏車。)

He is the same man that we met at the garden party the other day. (他就是我們前幾天在園遊會中遇見的那個人。)

(3) 抽象的觀念中，因無同種或同一的區別，故“as”與“that”可以隨使用。

He has the same position as (or that) you have. (他有着和你同樣的地位。)

I gave the same price as (or that) he did. (我出了和他同樣的價錢。)

He is engaged in the same work as (or that) you are. (他從事於和你同樣的工作。)

(4) “As”所導的 Clause 中，可以行語的省略而只留名詞，代名詞，或副詞，但“as”仍然為關係代名詞。

Sailors received the same pay as soldiers [received]. (水兵受得了和陸兵同樣的津貼。)

I have the same watch as yours [is]. (我有着和你同樣的錶。)

He gave the same answer as [he had given] before. (他給了和他以前一樣的答覆。)

(5) 表同一的“that” Clause 中如欲省去動詞，可將“that”改為“as”。故“the same... as + Noun (or Pronoun)”之形，兼示同種及同一的意味。

I have the same watch as you have. }

I have the same watch as yours [is]. } (同種)

I attend the same school that he does. }
 I attend the same school as he [does]. } (同一)

(6) 表同一時，可用“the same... with + Noun”之形。

This is the same watch with the one I lost. (這就是我所失去的錶。)

The Greeks looked on the Egyptian Ammon as the same god with their own Zeus. (希臘人把埃及的 Ammon 看作爲就是他們自國的 Zeus.)

(7) “The very same” 與 “one and the same” 等爲增強語氣時的用法。

He died on the very same day that she was born. (他死於正當她產生的那一天。)

These expressions all mean one and the same thing. (此等說法皆表完全同一之意味。)

3. 疑問代名形容詞——疑問代名詞的“**what?**”, “**which?**”, 與名詞同用時，則爲形容詞；人及物皆可以適用。

What colour is her new dress? (她的新衣服是什麼顏色的?)

What man is he? (他是怎樣的人?)

Which pen is better? (那一枝筆好?)

Which man are you going to engage? (你想僱用那一個人?)

疑問形容詞之“**what?**”, 又可作感嘆文句用。但此種用法, “**what?**” 之下須加不定冠詞。

What a beautiful sight! (好一個美景呀!)

What an honest boy he is! (他是怎樣誠實的一個孩子呀!)

4. 關係代名形容詞——關係代名詞 “**what?**”, “**which?**”, “**whatever?**”, “**whichever?**” 與名詞同用時，爲形容詞。

(1) “**Which?**” 用於人及物。

We could not find the lieutenant, which officer (= who) was to show us over the ship. (我們找不見中尉。該士官是應該把船領導給我們的。)

He spoke to me in German, **which** language (= *which*) I do not understand. (他對我說德語, 這德語我是不懂的。)

(2) “**What**” 等於 “**that . . . which**” 或 “**all . . . that**”, 常與 “**little**” 或 “**few**” 連用。不附 “**little**” 時, 亦往往有 “**little**” 之意含在裏面。

I gave **what** money I had about me (= I gave *all* the money *that* I had about me). (我把身邊所有的錢給了。)

I have come to offer **what** service in my power. (我來貢獻我力之所及的助力。)

I ran with **what little** strength I had. (我盡了我所有的力跑了。)

I have sold **what few** things I had. (我把我所有的一點東西都賣去了。)

(3) **Whatever** = any . . . that.

You will soon be able to read **whatever** book you like (= *any* book *that* you like). (你不久就能讀無論那本你所歡喜的書。)

(4) **Whichever** = either or any of . . . that.

Take **whichever** book you like (= *either* of the two books or *any* of the books *that* you like). (請拿不論那一本自己所喜歡的書吧。)

Exercise XVII.

將下列文句譯成中文：——

1. Every good soldier honours his flag, and strives to bring fresh glory on it.
2. He was well-shaped and strong; his hands were very large, and his face was such as you see in picture.
3. And in all the land there was no man to whom the people looked up with so much love and faith.
4. No doubt, not every man is a hero, and heroic opportunities are not given every day; but if you can not do the same thing, you may do something like it.

5. No one knows when he will come, or whether he will come at all, or whether he is even alive.

將“some”, “any”, “every”填入下列文句中的空處：——

1. If there is — one upstairs, tell him to come down. (如果有人人在樓上叫他下來。)
2. Does — bird fly? (鳥都是飛的嗎?)
3. What paper do you want? — paper will do. (你要什麼紙?——隨便什麼紙都可以。)
4. One can not please — body. (人是不能使個個人都歡喜他的。)
5. — body can see him. (誰都可以和他會見。)
6. He has been — where. (他無處不到過。)
7. I can not find my dictionary. — one must have concealed it. (我的辭書不見了, 一定有什麼人把牠藏過了。)
8. I will take you with me — day. (我什麼時候帶了你去把。)

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 到杭州去的車子, 每兩兩個鐘頭一次。
2. 門口有什麼人來了, 你出去看看。
3. 人都知道地球是圓的。
4. 學生是未必全部能成為優等生的。
5. 他的兩個兄弟並不是兩個都聰明的。
6. 沒有人會相信這樣的一件事情。
7. 已經六點鐘了, 他也許終於不來了吧。
8. 明天你無論什麼時候都可以到這裏來。
9. 人各有所長。
10. 他的兩親都老了, 但很康健。

2. 數量形容詞 (Quantitative Adjectives)

表 Number(數), Quantity(量), Degree(度)的形容詞, 叫做數量形容詞。數量形容詞可分為兩類:

(1) 不定數量形容詞(Indefinite Quantitative Adjectives)

(2) 數詞(Numerals)

不定數量形容詞漠然表數目的多少；數詞表一個二個等限定的數目。

(1) 不定數量形容詞 (Indefinite Quantitative Adjectives)

Indefinite Number (用於複數普通名詞)	Quantity or Degree (用於物質與抽象名詞)
many	much
few, a few	little, a little
several	—
enough	enough
some, any, no	some, any, no
all	all

[注意] 表中之“some”, “any”, “all”等, 已在代名形容詞部詳述之。

“Many” and “Few”

1. “Many” 與 “Few” 附於複數名詞時, 表數目之多或少。

He has **many** friends, but **few** true ones. (他有許多朋友, 但真的朋友不多。)

Are there **many** Russians in Shanghai? (上海俄國人多嗎?)

No, there are **few**. (不, 並不多。)

[注意] 漢文中“如何如何者多”, “如何如何者少”等文句, 譯成英語時, 可將“many”與“few”放在主語的前面。

Many Chinese study English. (中國人學英語者多。)

Few Chinese study Italian. (中國人學意大利語者少。)

2. “Many” 往往與 “a” 連用。

There are a great many schools in Shanghai. (上海有許多多學校。)

There are a good many Japanese books in our library. (我們的圖書館裏日文書很多。)

3. “Many a . . .” 的意味雖為複數，卻用單數的構文，其意味較 “many” 為強。

Many a student has fallen a victim to this vice. (許多學生做了這惡習的犧牲者。)

Many a time did I warn him, but to no purpose. (我警告過他許多次數，可是一無成效。)

We waited many and many a day. (我們等了許多許多日子。)

4. “As many” (= the same number of), 用於表數目與前面的數目相同時。

The wall was about fifteen feet high, and as many thick. (牆壁之高似有十五呎，其厚也有十五呎光景。)

We waited about ten minutes; it seemed to me as many hours. (我們等了十分鐘光景，這在我覺得好像是等了十個鐘頭的樣子。)

These are not all the books I have. There are as many more upstairs. (這並不是我全部所有的書，樓上還有這許多呢。)

5. “Like so many”, “as so many” 中的 “so many” 與前項 “as many” 的意味同。因 “as many” 的前再有一個 “as”，語調惡劣，故將第二個 “as” 改作 “so”。“Like so many” 仿此。

The boys climbed the trees like so many monkeys. (孩兒們爬樹完全像猴子的樣子——好像同樣數目的許多猴子爬樹。)

He received her commands as so many marks of favour. (他受得她的命令完全像受得她寵愛的表示似的。)

比較 { He worked like an ant. (他像蟻一樣地勞動。)
(They worked like so many ants. (他們好像蟻一樣地勞動。))

6. “So many” 的用法與“such and such”相似，表漠然‘若干’的數目。

In Japan, they do not say that a room is so many feet long and wide, but that it has so many mats. (在日本，他們不說房間幾呎長幾呎寬，只說房間幾鋪蓆子。)

7. “Few” 與 “a few” 的意味，有所不同。大致 “few” 傾向於‘無’，“a few” 置重於‘有’，“few” 有時幾乎與表打消的 “not” 意味相同。

(a) The composition is well written; it has few mistakes. (這文章做得好的，錯誤稀少——即幾乎沒有錯誤。)

(b) The composition is well written; but it has a few mistakes. (這文章是做得好的，但少少有點錯誤。)

上例中(a)之說錯誤少，為稱讚的說法，(b)之說少少有點錯誤，含有帶貶的口吻；未必一定數目上有什麼多少之差的。

{ I have few friends except you. (君以外我幾乎沒有朋友了。)

{ I have a few friends besides you. (你以外我還有幾個朋友呢。)

上例中第一句表親愛的口吻，第二句是簡慢的語氣。

“Much” and “Little”

1. “Much” 與 “little” 附於物質名詞時，表 Quantity (量)；附於抽象名詞時，表 Degree (程度)。

Quantity: — This ore contains much silver, but little gold. (這礦石含多量之銀質，但金質不多。)

Degree: — He has much skill in teaching, but little patience with his student. (他於教授上有多大之技巧，但對於學生缺少忍耐力。)

2. “As much” 由‘同量’的意味上一轉，可用作‘同事件’的意味。

I was not in the least surprised; for I had fully expected as much. (我一點也不吃驚，因我曾經完全豫料到這個。)

When he was sentenced to death, he seemed as calm as if he had expected as much. (當他受死刑宣告的時候，他從容得來好像豫期着這事似的。)
 He is rather hot-tempered, and owns as much. (他的性子有點暴躁，他自己也承認性子暴躁。)

3. “As so much” 與 “as so many” 同類，附於物質名詞與抽象名詞。

He looks upon time not spent in study as so much lost time. (他把不費之於用功的時間看作爲損失去的時間一樣。)

4. “So much” 用於表不定的量。

Rooms to let are charged at so much a mat in Japan. (在日本，出租的房間課以若干金一幣。)

This article is sold at so much a pound. (這物品以一磅若干錢出賣。)

5. “Little” 與 “a little” 的相差，與 “few” 及 “a few” 的相差同；但這是用於表不定的量的。

{ He grows worse; there is little hope of his recovery. (他一點一點厲害起來，回復的希望幾乎沒有了。)
 { He is not much better, but there is a little hope. (他並不怎樣好起來，但還有些許的希望。)

[注意] { not a little (=no little). (不少，很多。)
 { only a little (=but little). (極少。)

又，{ not a few (=not few). (不少，很多。)
 { only a few (=but few). (極少。)

He has not a little tact. (他有非常的手腕。)

There are only a few such men. (這樣的人是很少的。)

“Several”

“Several” 爲三四乃至五六之意，用於相當多的數目。

He has been in several countries, and knows several language. (他走過好幾國，懂得好幾種國語。)

There are several kinds of bicycle. (腳踏車有好幾種。)

He will stay here for several weeks. (他將在此地滯留數星期。)

“Enough”

“Enough” 用於複數普通名詞與物質名詞，為‘充分’之意，可放在名詞之前，亦可放在名詞之後。

We have apples **enough** (or **enough** apples). (我們有着充足的蘋果)

We have beer **enough** (or **enough** beer). (我們有着充分的啤酒。)

“Enough” 後面有 “for . . .” 或 “to . . .” 時，表‘充分得足以 . . .’ 的意味。

I have **enough** money **for** the purpose. (我有着足以應付的金錢。)

There was **enough** noise **to** wake the dead. (有足以驚醒死人的騷擾聲音——連死人也要驚醒起來的噪聲。)

Exercise XVIII.

將“much”, “little”, “a little”, “many”, “few”, “a few” 中之適當者填入下列文句中的空處：——

1. He has — money, but — sense (他金錢雖多，卻缺少常識。)
2. There are — sights to see here. (此地少可觀之景色。)
3. I am glad to think that there are — kind people. (一想到還有幾個親切的人，覺得歡喜。)
4. Is — rice grown in Corea? (朝鮮米產得多嗎?)
5. He has — to get and — to keep. (他收入微而養育者多。)
6. We were not — disappointed. (我們大失所望。)
7. I have — English books, but — German books. (我有許多英文書，但德文書不多。)
8. We must make haste; we have — time left. (我們必須急一點，時間快完了。)

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 像張君那樣英文寫得好的人是少有的。
2. 我想對於那宗事業，前是沒有什麼希望了。
3. 他有七個兄弟及同樣數目的(七個)堂兄弟。

4. 他到美國去過好許多次數。
5. 我看到三架水上飛機像三隻海鷗似的飛着。
6. 不吃酒者多,但不吃烟者少。
7. 兩三個鐘頭你能學得的東西,我要費兩三天。
8. 他很有學問,而且也有點經驗。
9. 錢少的人朋友也是不多的。
10. 近來天不下雨,井裏水少了。

(2) 數詞 (Numerals)

數詞分以下三種:

- (a) **Cardinal Numerals** (基數詞)
- (b) **Ordinal Numerals** (序數詞)
- (c) **Multiplicative Numerals** (倍數詞)

(a) 基數詞 (Cardinal Numerals)

基數詞爲表“one”(一),“two”(二),“three”(三)“ten”(十),“hundred”(百),“thousand”(千)等普通數目的形容詞。諸君須注意。記數有三種文字:一是如數學書中所用的阿拉伯數字,二是如鐘錶上所用的羅馬數字,三是普通的英文字。用阿拉伯數字說數時,每倒數上第三位須打一Comma,如 1,347 或 3,587,245 等;但年號數字可毋須用 Comma,如 1933 (一千九百三十三年)。不論爲阿拉伯數字或羅馬數字,總之讀時須完全依照英文字所記的讀法。

(1) 從“twenty”(二十)至“ninety”之十位數中,加上單位數時,須連以Hyphen。如“twenty-one”(二十一),“thirty-four”(三十四),“ninety-nine”(九十九)等。

(2) “Hundred”之次有數目時,必須放入“and”讀之;“thousand”之次如無“hundred”,讀時亦須放入“and”。

200—two hundred.

250—two hundred and fifty.

2245—two thousand two hundred and forty-five.

3060—three thousand and sixty.

(3) 從 1,000 至 1,999 之數,有兩種讀法。

1,456 { one thousand four hundred and fifty-six.
fourteen hundred and fifty-six.

(4) 年號的讀法,有以下三種;但最普通的讀法為第一種。

1933 { 1. — nineteen thirty-three.
2. — nineteen hundred and thirty-three.
3. — one thousand nine hundred and thirty-three.

(5) 英語中無相當於‘萬’的一詞,故萬的數目用“thousand”的十倍數表出之。

12,642—twelve thousand six hundred and forty-two.

263,975—two hundred and sixty-three thousand, nine hundred and seventy-five.

456,789,123—four hundred and fifty-six million, seven hundred and eighty-nine thousand, one hundred and twenty-three.

(6) “dozen”(打),“score”(二十),“hundred”(百),“thousand”(千)等表定數時,無複數形,但表漠然的多數時可以用複數形;此已於名詞篇的“Number”部中述之,請參看。

(7) “A dozen”, “a score” 可用於表漠然‘許多’之意。

The tile broke into a dozen pieces. (瓦片碎成了許多破片。)

I have tried a score of times. (我試過許多次數。)

(8) “A couple of” 可作“two”的代用。

I stayed only a couple of days. (我只住了兩天。)

(9) “Million” 之前雖有表定數的數詞,但後面若有名詞跟着時,不得成複數形;無名詞在後面跟着時,則用複數形。

{ three million men.
three millions of men. } (三百萬人。)

(10) “Billion” 在英國爲 a million millions (1,000,000,000,000), 美國爲 a thousand millions (1,000,000,000); “trillion” 在英國爲 a million million millions (1,000,000,000,000,000,000), 美國爲 a million millions (1,000,000,000,000)。

(11) 數字所記的時刻, 其讀法如下。

11.15 a.m. = eleven fifteen ā ěm. (午前十一時十五分。)

The 7.30 p.m. train = the seven thirty pē ěm train. (午後七時半的車子。)

(12) 基數詞往往有作名詞用的, 並且可成複數。

There are three twos in six. (六之中有三個二。)

Five plus two makes seven. (五加二成七。)

The guests departed by twos and threes. (客人二個一組三個一組地走了)

She married while still in her teens. (還不到二十歲的時候她結婚了。)

The peace movement began in the twenties. (和平運動開始於二十年代——即自 1920 至 1930 年之間。)

(b) 序數詞 (Ordinal Numerals)

序數詞爲第一第二第三等表順序的數詞。

(1) 序數詞由基數詞的語尾附加 “th” 而成。但 “first” (第一), “second” (第二), “third” (第三) 爲例外。又, 加 “th” 上去時亦有變更綴法的。

Cardinal — five; eight; nine; twelve; twenty; thirty.

Ordinal — fifth; eighth; ninth; twelfth; twentieth; thirtieth.

[注意] “-ieth” 之發音, 爲 (-ieth). 又, “eight” 之序數 “eighth”, 其發音與 “eightth” 同, 爲 (āt-th).

(2) 記序數詞時可用如下的略體。

first = 1st	eleventh = 11th	twenty-first = 21st
second = 2nd	twelfth = 12th	twenty-second = 22nd
third = 3rd	thirteenth = 13th	twenty-third = 23rd
fourth = 4th	fourteenth = 14th	twenty-fourth = 24th

[注意] 序數詞之前必用定冠詞，如“the first”，“the second”等。“a second”，“a third”，乃用於“another”之意者。

(3) 帝王等的‘第幾世’，通常用羅馬字附於固有名詞之下表出之；讀時須放入定冠詞“the”。

Charles I. = Charles the first. (查爾士一世)

Henry VIII. = Henry the eighth. (亨利第八)

[注意] 此種羅馬數詞，可看作爲 1st, 8th 之略。普通有略字符號之 Full Stop，但亦可以省去。又，西曆年號，常有用此種羅馬數字的；特別於書籍的發行年月及紀念碑，墓誌銘中多用此種數字。今記之於下。

I	II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	XI	XII	XIII	XIV
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
XV	XVI	XVII	XVIII	XIX	XX	XXI	XXX	XL	L	LX			
15	16	17	18	19	20	21	30	40	50	60			
XC	C	CX	CC	CCC	CC	Q	QC	QCC	QCCC	CM	M		
90	100	110	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	1000		
MC	MCC	MCCC	MCC	MQ	MQC	MQCC	MQCCC	MCM					
1100	1200	1300	1400	1500	1600	1700	1800	1900					
MMC													
2100													

羅馬數詞的 V 爲五，X 爲十，L 爲五十，C 爲百，Q 爲五百，爲千。表增加的數字，須寫在右面；減退的數字，寫在左面。
MCMXXXIII = 1933.

(4) 月日的記法，如一月七日，照規則為“the seventh of January”，但亦可以略寫為“the 7th of January”，“Jan. 7th”（讀作 January the seventh 或 January seventh）。

The new term begins on the 5th of September.

(5) 基數詞作序數詞的代用時，放在名詞之後。

No. I. (number one) = the first. (第一)

Lesson II. (lesson two) = the second lesson. (第二課)

Chapter III. (chapter three) = the third chapter. (第三章)

P. 4 (page four) = the fourth page. (第四頁)

Book I. (book one) = the first book. (第一冊)

Act III., Sc. II. (act three, scene two) = the second scene of the third act. (第三幕第二場)

Open the book at page one twelve and read lesson three. (翻開第一百十二頁請讀第三課。)

(6) 序數用於表分數 (Fraction)。但“half”(半)與“quarter”(四分之一)為例外。

$\frac{1}{2}$ —a half (or one half).

$\frac{1}{3}$ —a third (or one third).

$\frac{2}{3}$ —two thirds.

$\frac{1}{4}$ —a quarter (or one fourth).

$\frac{3}{4}$ —three quarters (or three fourths).

$\frac{9}{10}$ —nine tenths.

$2\frac{7}{8}$ —two and seven eighths.

遇分母分子的數目較大時，普通照下面的讀法。

$\frac{319}{458}$ —three hundred and nineteen over (or by) four hundred and fifty-six.

[注意] $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. 讀作“half a pound”。又，小數點之讀法如下：

28.372 = twenty-eight point (or decimal) three seven two.

(7) “First” 可作副詞用；又可與他語結合成副詞句。

The king arrived **first**, and *next* came his retinue. (王先來，其次是他的從者。)

He **first** went to Paris, and *then* to Berlin. (他先到巴黎，然後到柏林。)

I found English difficult **at first**, but I liked it *from the first*. (我起初覺得英語困難，但我從最初就歡喜牠。)

At first he seemed a very promising youth, but *soon afterwards* his zeal began to slacken, and *at last* we gave up all hope of his success. (起初他似乎是一個非常有望的青年，但後來不久他的熱心就衰了，到最後我們就認定他已無成功之希望。)

I met him **then for the first time**. (我那時和他第一次見面。)

[注意] “first” 與 “last” 可與基數詞連用。

Please look over the **first two** chapters. (請看一看最初的兩章。)

Compare the **two first** chapters. (請把兩書的第一章比較一下。)

Examination will be held on the **last two** days of this month. (這個月的最後兩天要舉行試驗了。)

(c) 倍數詞 (Multiplicative Numerals)

1. 倍數詞的普通所用者為 “half” (半), “double” (二倍), “treble” (三倍)。作 “twofold” (二重) 解的 “double” 與 “triple” (=threefold, 三重) 須用冠詞。

I bought it at **half** the usual price. (這個我以普通價錢的一半買的。)

On Sunday, we have to pay **double** the usual fare. (禮拜日我們須付二倍的價錢。)

I offered him **treble** the sum. (我答應給他總數的三倍。)

He has the **double** capacity of preacher and teacher. (他有說教師與教師的二重資格。)

The **triple** alliance. (三國同盟)

A transitive verb sometimes takes a **double** object. (他動詞有時有兩個目的語。)

2. “Half” 的前面通例用 “a”，但有時亦有將 “a” 放在後面的。

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|---|-----------|
| { | Half a mile | } | (半哩) |
| | One half of a mile | | |
| { | Two miles and a half | } | (二哩半) |
| | Two and a half miles | | |
| { | One half of the distance | } | (距離之一半) |
| | Half the distance | | |
| { | Half-a-crown. | } | (半克郎) |
| { | A half-crown piece | } | (半克郎貨幣一個) |

[注意] 1. “Half the sum”, “half one’s pay”, “half a pound” 等原來為 “half of the sum”, “half of one’s pay”, “half of a pound” 的省略用法, “half” 可看作為名詞。

2. “Half” 又可作名詞用而成複數形。

To know one thing well is better than knowing many things by halves. (一事之全知勝於萬事之半知。)

3. 下面所舉的，稱為倍數副詞 (**Adverbial Multiplicative**)。

once or one time (一倍)

twice or two times (二倍)

thrice or three times (三倍)

four times (四倍)

此等倍數詞之用法及其構文如下。

{ They have twice as many ships as we have. (他們之船數為我們之二倍。)

{ They have twice the number of our ships. (同上。)

{ The earth is forty-nine times as large as the moon. (地球之大為月之四十九倍。)

{ The earth is forty-nine times the size of the moon. (同上。)

“Half as much (or many) again as” 為 ‘再多一半’ 之意。

The husband is half as old again as his wife is. (夫比妻之年紀長一半——如妻為二十歲，則夫為三十歲。)

“As much or many again as” 爲 “twice as much (or many) as” 之意。

He is as old again as she is. (男之年紀倍於女之年紀。)

Exercise XIX.

改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. China is twenty times larger than Japan. (中國比日本大二十倍。)
2. She has ten times more inhabitants than Japan. (中國之人口有日本之十倍。)
3. I have met him many hundreds times. (我遇見過他好幾百次。)
4. Three fourths of the earth's surface is water. (地球表面的四分之三爲水。)
5. For the first he did not believe me, but he was soon convinced. (起初他不相信我，但後來不久他就相信了。)

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 他還不到二十歲時，父親就死去了。
2. 他的年紀是四十七歲，但看起來好像還不到三十歲。
3. 倒數上去第三行第五個字是什麼意味？
4. 我在火車站等了一個半鐘頭。
5. 這房間比那房間大兩倍。
6. 我們搭午前二時四十分此地開的第一班車吧。
7. 一時爲一呎的十二分之一。
8. 他規定將所得的半數貯蓄起來。
9. 我在那裏與他第一次相見。
10. 我們校裏的學生比你們校裏多五倍。

3. 性質形容詞 (Qualifying Adjectives)

性質形容詞是表示事物的性質及狀態的形容詞，有以下四種。

(1) 記述形容詞 (Descriptive Adjective)——凡非由他語轉成

的本來的性質形容詞叫做記述形容詞。形容詞之大部分屬於此類。

An **industrious** student. (勤勉的學生)

A **beautiful** woman. (美麗的女子)

A **brave** boy. (勇敢的少年)

A **white** horse. (白色的馬)

(2) 物質形容詞 (**Material Adjective**)——即物質名詞作爲形容詞用的。

A **gold** ring. (金戒指)

A **silver** watch. (銀錶)

An **iron** bridge. (鐵橋)

A **straw** hat. (草帽)

Silk stockings. (絲襪)

A **stone** building. (石造的房子)

有少數的物質名詞，語尾加 **-en** 而成爲形容詞。

A **woollen** cloth. (毛織物)

An **earthen** vessel. (土製的容器)

A **wooden** ship. (木造的船)

A **hempen** rope. (麻繩)

[注意] 但 “wood-paper” (木製的紙), “wood-pavement” (木鋪的路) 等不用 “wooden”. 又, “Golden” 作 ‘金製的’ 之意味講者極少, 通例作 ‘譬如’ 用之。

The **golden** age. (黃金時代)

A **golden** opportunity. (難得的好機會)

Golden hair. (金髮)

(3) 固有形容詞 (**Proper Adjective**)——即由固有名詞轉成的形容詞。固有形容詞, 全須用大寫字母寫起。

Victorian order. (維多利亞勳章)

Platonic love. (清淨的戀愛)

Buddhist temple. (佛寺)

[注意] **Victorian** 由 Queen Victoria, **Platonic** 由希臘哲學家 Plato, **Buddhist** 由 Buddha (佛陀) 轉成。

都市名通例照原形作形容詞用。但 “Parisian” (Paris 的), “Welsh” (Wales 的), “Cornish” (Cornwall 的), “Oxonian” (Oxford 的) 等爲例外。

A **London** newspaper. (倫敦的報紙)

A **New York** dispatch. (紐約的電報)

Shanghai dialect. (上海的方言)

Nanking people. (南京人)

希臘羅馬的都市，古時皆成一國，故有特別形的形容詞。如 Sparta > Spartan, Athens > Athenian, Naples > Neapolitan, Florence > Florentine, Rome > Roman, Venice > Venitian 等。

固有形容詞大多數由國名轉成，今列表於下。

Proper Name	Adjective (Language)	People (Collective)	Individual (Singular) (Plural)
China (中國)	Chinese	the Chinese	a Chinese, Chinese
Japan (日本)	Japanese	the Japanese	a Japanese, Japanese
Portugal (葡萄牙)	Portuguese	the Portuguese	a Portuguese, Portuguese
Switzerland (瑞士)	Swiss*	the Swiss	a Swiss, Swiss
England (英吉利)	English	the English	an English- English- man, men
Scotland (蘇格蘭)	Scotch, Scottish	the Scots	a Scotchman, Scotchmen
Ireland (愛爾蘭)	Irish	the Irish	an Irishman, Irishmen
France (法蘭西)	French	the French	a Frenchman, Frenchmen
Holland (荷蘭)	Dutch	the Dutch	a Dutchman, Dutchmen
America (美利堅)	American*	the Americans	an American, Americans
Germany (德意志)	German	the Germans	a German, Germans
Corea (朝鮮)	Corean	the Coreans	a Corean, Coreans
Italy (意大利)	Italian	the Italians	an Italian, Italians
Russia (俄羅斯)	Russian	the Russians	a Russian, Russians
Rome (羅馬)	Roman*(Latin)	the Romans	a Roman, Romans
Norway (挪威)	Norwegian	the Norwegians	a Norwegian, Norwegians
Mexico (墨西哥)	Mexican*	the Mexicans	a Mexican, Mexicans
Greece (希臘)	Greek	the Greeks	a Greek, Greeks
Sweden (瑞典)	Swedish	the Swedes	a Swede, Swedes
Denmark (丹麥)	Danish	the Danes	a Dane, Danes
Spain (西班牙)	Spanish	the Spaniards	a Spaniard, Spaniards
Turkey (土耳其)	Turkish	the Turks	a Turk, Turks

*Swiss, American, Roman, Mexican 等不能作國語用。古羅馬之國語爲 Latin.

Greece 之形容詞有時用 Grecian.

[注意] (a) 國名形容詞作國語之名用時，毋須用冠詞，但下面若加“language”一詞時，必須附以定冠詞“the”。

English
The English language } (英語)

(b) 我們普通所稱的英國，指 Great Britain (含 England, Scotland, Wales) 與 Ireland 的 United Kingdom (聯合王國) 而言，故照理應說“the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland”。又，指英國全體時，必須用“British”這形容詞。

The British Ambassador. (英國大使)

The British Navy. (英國海軍)

(4) 名詞用作形容詞(Nouns Used as Adjectives)——名詞的所有格當然可作形容詞用，但名詞本身亦可以附於其他名詞，作形容詞用。

Entrance examination. (入學試驗)

Goods train. (貨車)

Savings bank. (儲蓄銀行)

Boy scout. (少年義勇軍)

Woman novelist (pl. woman novelists). (女流小說家)

Afternoon walk. (午後的散步)

Girl student. (女學生)

Lady doctor (pl. lady doctors). (女醫生)

Family name. (姓)

[注意] 其他又有將現在分詞，過去分詞，及副詞等作形容詞用的，今略舉數例於下；將來在動詞及副詞篇中再詳細敘述。

(a) 現在分詞 (Present Participles):

The rising sun (上昇的太陽); a running train (飛駛着的車子)。

(b) 過去分詞 (Past Participles):

The lost time (失去了的時間); a wounded soldier (傷兵)。

這兩種總括起來，叫做動詞的形容詞(Verbal Adjectives)。

(c) 副詞 (Adverbs):

The **then** king (當時的王); the house **here** (此地的家);
the **erstwhile** enemy (往時的敵); **an up** train (上行車)。

Exercise XX.

1. 將下列文句譯成中文:——

1. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
2. Many people think they are enjoying themselves, merely because they are doing nothing useful.
3. Then turn to the right, and you will see a brick building on the left. That's the station.
4. A man fertile in resources is seldom in low spirits.
5. I must make up for the lost time.

2. 將下列文句譯成英文:——

1. 河上架着鐵橋。
2. 他的妻子是英國人。
3. 聽他說德語,人總以為他是德國人。
4. 你是什麼地方的人?我是上海人。
5. 下行車在 A 站附近出了軌。
6. 他是法國人嗎?不,是西班牙人。
7. 中國人是非常儉樸而勞作的國民。
8. 英語比德語要難。

II. 形容詞的用法 (Uses of Adjectives)

形容詞的用法有二:

- (1) 附加的用法 (Attributive Use)
- (2) 敘述的用法 (Predicative Use)

(1) 附加的用法 (Attributive Use)

附加的用法，即為直接修飾名詞的用法。此種用法的形容詞，通常放在名詞的前面。兩個以上種類不同的形容詞修飾一名詞時，其順序大抵為 Pronominal + Quantitative + Qualifying + Noun.

Those three young men. (那三個青年人)

These big round tables. (這些大圓桌)

That tall naval officer. (那個身子高大的海軍士官)

若遇同種類的形容詞，其順序則依口調的順利與否而定。但各形容詞之間，須斷以 Comma 或用 “and” 連結。

An easy and interesting book. (平易而有趣味的書)

An easy, interesting, and instructive book. (平易有趣而多益的書)

固有形容詞及 “old”, “young”, “little” 等語與名詞結合時，可看作為一種的合成名詞，毋須用 “and” 或 Comma.

Easy and interesting English books. (平易而有趣味的英語書)

The lame and blind old man was led by a pretty little girl. (足跛眼瞎的老人被一個美麗的少女引着。)

以下列舉的情形中，形容詞皆放在名詞後面。

(1) 將其他文句附於形容詞，全體成為較長的形容文句時。

A loss too heavy to be borne. (一個重大得難以忍受的損失)

A circumstance most favourable to the enterprises. (一個最有利於這事業的情景)

(2) 形容詞修飾 “anything”, “something”, “nothing”, “everything” 時。

There is something peculiar about him. (他身上有點兒奇特的地方。)

Nothing great is easy. (偉大的事情都不是容易的。)

A home destitute of everything elegant. — Irving. (風雅品全無的家)

(3) 爲要表示區別將形容詞附於固有名詞時。

Alexander the Great. (亞歷山大大王)

Cato the Elder. (老加多)

Richard the Lion-hearted. (勇猛的理查特王)

George the Fifth. (喬治第五世)

Asia Minor. (小亞細亞)

Charles Senior. (老查理士)

(4) 形容詞附於名詞之後作爲一種的熟語時。但此種用法大多數爲法語的模倣。

The people present were all surprised. (在場的人都吃了一驚。)

Wordsworth was a poet laureate. (華浩華斯是一個桂冠詩人。)

Corps diplomatique. (外交團)

Body politic. (政治團體)

Governor-general. (總督)

From the time immemorial. (從無可記憶的往昔起)

(5) 形容詞用於限定最上級或“all”, “every”等的範圍時。

He is the greatest poet alive. (他是現世最偉大的詩人。)

They are on the best terms imaginable. (他們是極頂的要好。)

I have tried all (or every) means imaginable. (我盡了所有的一切手段。)

(6) “Old”, “long”, “wide”, “high”, “deep”等與數詞同用時。

A boy seven years old. (七歲的孩子)

A room twelve feet wide and fifteen feet long. (寬十二呎長十五呎的房間)

[注意] (5), (6)之例, 可看作爲“the greatest poet (that is) alive”及“a room (which is) 12 ft. wide”之省略形。下面第(9)例亦同。

(7) 月日之前面有“in”或“on”時。

Next Sunday—on Sunday next. (下星期日)

Last Monday—on Monday last. (前星期一)

Next June—in June next. (下個六月中)

(8) “Else” 及 “alone” 須用在名詞的後面，但 “enough” 前後都可以用。

Is there anything **else**? (另外還有什麼?)

Man alone has the gift of speech (只有人有言語的天稟。)

I have money **enough**.
I have **enough** money. } (我有充分的錢。)

(9) 許多形容詞重疊而用，特別當此等形容詞成爲對照用時。

People, **young and old**. (年青年老的人們)

All things, **visible and invisible, animate and inanimate**. (可見與不可見，有生與無生之一切東西)

(2) 敘述的用法 (Predicative Use)

形容詞不直接附於名詞，用在述部 (Predicate) 中作爲動詞的補足語 (Complement)，而修飾主語的名詞或代名詞時，其用法叫做敘述的用法。

Attributive

He is an **honest** man.

(他是個正直的人。)

She is a **happy** woman.

(她是個幸福的女人。)

Predicative

He is **honest**.

(他是正直的。)

She is **happy**.

(她是幸福的。)

(3) 形容詞作名詞用 (Adjectives Used as Nouns)

1. 國名形容詞可作國語名或國民名用，前面已經講過。
2. 形容詞前面(作形容詞用的現在分詞與過去分詞亦包括在內)冠以 “the” 時，可作名詞的代用。其用法有三種。

(a) 代用作複數普通名詞又羣集名詞(Noun of Multitude)的。

The rich (= *rich people*) often envy the happiness of **the poor** (= *poor people*). (富者常羨慕貧者之幸福。)

The learned are apt to despise the ignorant. (有學問的人易於輕視無學問的人。)

The plain was covered with the dead and the dying. (田野中滿着死了的人以及將要死去的人。)

None but the brave (=brave men) deserve the fair (=fair ladies). (非勇者不能得美人。)

【注意】此種用法兼亦有作單數普通名詞之代用的。

The deceased had made a will. (故人寫下了遺言書。)

The accused was acquitted of the charge. (被告免訴了。)

(b) 作抽象名詞之代用的。

There is but one step from the sublime (=sublimity) to the ridiculous (=ridiculousness). (莊嚴與滑稽相差只一步。)

The beautiful is higher than the good. (美比善高。)

(c) 用以表部分的。

The white of the eye. (眼白)

The yellow of an egg. (蛋黃)

The middle of a river. (河的中央)

The thick of the forest. (森林的深處)

The interior of a house. (屋的內部)

【注意】(1) 此種用法，實爲“the white part of . . .”，“the middle part of . . .”等之意，都可以用“part”一字補入。

(2) 形容詞兩個並列時，可省去冠詞“the”。

Rich and poor, young and old were gathered there. (貧富老幼皆集在那裏。)

He went from bad to worse. (他一步進一步地不好了。)

3. 形容詞中亦有成爲真正的名詞而有複數及所有格等之變化的。

A white (白人), a native (土人), a noble (貴族), a lunatic (瘋人), a criminal (罪人), etc.

由形容詞轉成的名詞，亦常有用複數形的。

the ancients (古人), the moderns (近代人), one's equals or betters (平輩或長者), valuables (貴重物品), particulars (詳情), etc.

III. 比較 (Comparison)

形容詞表性質的程度時，變更形狀，這叫做形容詞的 **Comparison** (比較)。Comparison 分爲三級：——

(1) 原級 (**Positive Degree**)——與他物並無比較，只表示性質與數量。

The lion is **strong**. (獅子是強壯的。)

This flower is **beautiful**. (這花是美的。)

(2) 比較級 (**Comparative Degree**)——表明兩者中的一個比其他一個有較大的程度。

The lion is **stronger** than the tiger. (獅子比虎強。)

This flower is **more beautiful** than that. (這花比那花更美。)

(3) 最上級 (**Superlative Degree**)——表三個以上的事物中有最大的程度的。

The lion is the **strongest** of all animals. (獅子是一切動物中最強的。)

This is the **most beautiful** flower I ever saw. (這是我所見過的花之中最美的。)

比較級與最上級的作法 (Formation of Comparative and Superlative)

1. 一音節及少數二音節的形容詞，作比較級與最上級時，附-er, -est.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
tall (高)	taller	tallest
great (大)	greater	greatest
narrow (狹)	narrower	narrowest
pleasant (快活)	pleasanter	pleasantest
profound (深遠)	profounder	profoundest

(a) 語尾若為無聲的“e”，可除去“e”附以 -er, -est.

large (大)	larger	largest
fine (佳)	finer	finest
wise (聰明)	wiser	wisest
noble (貴)	nobler	noblest

(b) 語尾最後一字為子音，前面為短母音 (Short Vowel) 時，須重添一子音再附 -er, -est.

big (大)	bigger	biggest
hot (熱)	hotter	hottest
thin (薄)	thinner	thinnest
fat (肥)	fatter	fattest

(c) 語尾為“y”，前面有子音時，須將“y”變“i”再加 -er, -est.

easy (容易)	easier	easiest
happy (幸福)	happier	happiest
merry (歡樂)	merrier	merriest
early (早)	earlier	earliest

2. 有-ful, -less, -able, -ous, -ive, -ing等語尾的二音節及三音節以上的形容詞，作比較級與最上級時，附以“more”與“most”.

skillful (熟練)	more skillful	most skillful
useless (無用)	more useless	most useless
affable (和愛)	more affable	most affable
famous (有名)	more famous	most famous
active (活潑)	more active	most active

interesting (有趣)	more interesting	most interesting
diligent (勤力)	more diligent	most diligent

3. 合形成容詞 (Compound Adjective) 的 (Comparison:—

well-known (有名)	better-known	best-known
fine-looking (美貌)	finer-looking	finest-looking
kind-hearted (親切)	more kind-hearted	most kind-hearted

不規則的比較形 (Irregular Forms of the Degree)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good (善)	better	best
well (安好)		
bad (惡)	worse	worst
ill (生病)		
many (多數)	more	most
much (多量)		
little (少)	less	least
old (老)	older	oldest
	elder	eldest
late (遲)	later	latest
	latter	last
far (遠)	farther	farthest
	further	furthest

(a) 作形容詞用的“well”，只於 Predicate Use 時有 Comparison; Attributive Use 時無 Comparison.

{ Is he in good health? (他康健嗎?)

{ He was never in better health. (他從來不曾這樣康健過——他是向來所未有的康健。)

{ Is he well? (他安好嗎?)

{ He has been ill since a few days ago. But he is a little better to-day. (他好幾日以來生了病。但今天少少好了一點。)

(b) “Elder”與“eldest”表家屬關係時，只用於 Attributive.

- { My elder brother is three years older than your younger sister. (我的哥哥比你的妹妹大三歲。)
 { His eldest son is the oldest student in our school. (他的長子是我們學校裏最年長的學生。)

(c) “Later”與“latest”表時候；“latter”與“last”表順序。

- { He arrived a day later. (他遲了一天到的。)
 { The latest Paris style. (最近的巴黎式)
 { One's latest work. (近作)
 { One's last work. (最後的作品)
 { The former and the latter. (前者與後者)
 { The first and the last. (最初與最後)
 { The latter part of the day. (午後)
 { The last day of the month. (月之末日)

(d) “Farther”與“farthest”用於表距離之遠；“further”爲‘更進一步的’，‘以上的’，‘其他的’之意。

Your school is farther than ours, theirs is the farthest. (你們的學校比我們的遠，他們的學校是最遠了。)

I have nothing further to say on the subject. (關於這問題，我沒有什麼另外再要說的話了。)

We need no further proofs. (我們毋須其他的證據了。)

I have a further (=another) reason. (我還有一個理由。)

(e) “Little—less—least”是關於量而用的，與“much—more—most”相對。與“big—bigger—biggest”相對的比較有“little—lesser—least”；但此種意味的“lesser”，“least”，今日已幾乎不用，通例代用“small—smaller—smallest”。惟與“greater”對照而用，及其他少數的情形中，“lesser”亦有用於作“smaller”或“minor”之意的。

The greater light=the sun. (日)

The lesser light=the moon. (月)

比較級的用法 (Uses of the Comparative)

1. 比較級原為表示兩者中之一方，在性質上勝於其他一方之意的，故通例作用“than”。

John is **taller than** James. (約翰比詹姆斯高大。)

“Than . . .”亦可代以“of the two”。但此時比較級須附定冠詞“the”。

Which is **the more useful** [metal], iron or gold? (鐵與金那一方有用?)
 Iron is **a more useful metal than** gold. (鐵是比金更有用的金屬。)
 Iron is **more useful than** gold. (鐵比金更有用。)
 Iron is **the more useful [metal] of the two**. (鐵是兩者中更為有用的。)

[注意] 以“which”開始的疑問文句中的比較級，亦有不用“the”的。

Which do you think **the better**, wealth or health? (富與健康你以為那一方好?)
 Which do you like **better**, wine or beer? (葡萄酒與啤酒你歡喜那一方。)

第一例中的“better”為形容詞，因下面有名詞略去，故須用“the”。第二例中的“better”為修飾“like”的副詞；此種“better”的用法，口語中往往用“best”。

2. “More”可用作“rather”之意。請比較：——

{ He is **cleverer** than his brother. (他比他的兄弟聰明。)
 { He is **more clever** than honest. (若說他正直，寧說他聰明。)

上例中的“cleverer”為普通的比較級，比較兄弟間“clever”之程度的。下句的“more”為“rather”之意，言比起“honest”的性質來，有着更多的“clever”的性質；意為“彼是聰明，卻非正直”。

He has **more** experience than knowledge. (說他有知識，寧說他有經驗)

He is **more** of a fool than a knave. (說他是個惡棍，寧說他是個傻子。)

3. 表優劣程度或相差的詞，可附加於比較級而用之。

This is **much** (or **far**) bigger than that. (這個比那個大得多。)

This is a **great deal** better than that. (這個比那個好得多。)

This is **by far** the better of the two. (兩者中這方好得多。)

He is a little taller than I. (他比我稍稍高一點。)

He is **three years** older than I. (他比我大三歲。)

He is older than I **by three years**. (同上。)

4. “**No more than**” = only; just. “**Not more than**” = only about.

He is **no more than** (=only) twenty years old. (他只有二十歲。)

He has **not more than** (=only about) 100 dollars. (他只有一百元光景。)

又，下降的比較級 “**no less than**” = as many (or much) as; just. “**Not less than**” = or more.

He studied English **no less than** (=as many as) ten years. (他英語學了十年之久。)

He studied English **not less than** ten years (=ten years or more). (他英語學了十年以上。)

5. “**No more than**” 與 “**not any more than**” 乃用於比較兩方之打消的。

I am **no more mad than** you are. (我之不發狂猶君之不發狂一樣。)

I am **not mad any more than** you are. (同上。)

上列兩文句之意味全與 “I am not mad just as you are not mad” 同，但語勢較此文句為強。此種慣用句中 “than” 以下的事件，必為不可能的事實；將此種不可能的事實引用出來，說明上項不可能的事實，為此種慣用句的本意。

A home without love is **no more** a home **than** a body without a soul is a man. (無愛之家庭不得謂之家庭，正如無靈魂之肉體不得稱為人間一樣——無愛之家庭若可以叫做家庭，那麼無靈魂之肉體也就可以叫做人間了。)

You can **not injure** such a man **any more than** you can throw a stone at the sun. (你之不能傷害這樣的人，猶你之不能對太陽投以石子一樣——你若能傷害這樣的人，你就可以把石子投到太陽上面去了。)

比較：——

- { He is **no more** diligent **than** you are. (你們兩人都一樣的不用功。)
 { He is **not more** diligent **than** you are. (他並不見得比你用功——你們兩人都用功的，但他的用功不如你。)

6. “The + Comparative” 表‘因了什麼卻 . . .’之意。但此種“the” 爲指示副詞，與“so” 之用法相似。

He is **all the better** for his failure. (他之失敗反成了好處。)

I like him **none the less** for his faults

= I do **not** like him **the less** because he has faults

= He has faults, **nevertheless** I like him. (我並不因了他的缺點減少對他的歡心。)

7. “The + Comparative . . . the + Comparative” 表‘愈是 . . . 愈是 . . .’之意。此種慣用句中第一個“the” 爲關係副詞，後面的一個“the” 爲指示副詞。

The more he gets, **the more** he wants. (所得愈多，所欲愈深。)

The higher the tree, **the stronger** the wind. (樹愈高，風愈強。)

最上級的用法 (Uses of the Superlative)

1. 最上級用於表許多事物中性質之最高的，必須用定冠詞“the”。

Iron is **the most useful** metal. (鐵是最有用的金屬。)

Iron is **the most useful** of all metals. (鐵是金屬中最有用的。)

Iron is one of **the most useful** metals. (鐵是最有用的金屬中之一種。)

2. 用比較級表示最上級之意的。

{ Platinum is **heavier than any other** metal. (白金比其他任何金屬要重。)

{ Platinum is **the heaviest of all** metals. (白金是一切金屬之中最重的。)

[注意] 上例第一句中必須用“other” 一字；若將此省去，而白金便不能包括在 metal 之中。

{ I never saw a greater man [than he]. (我不曾見過比他更偉大的人。)
 { He is the greatest man I ever saw. (我所見過的人裏面他是最偉大的了。)

3. 最上級之不用定冠詞“the”的。

(a) 表數的“most”, “fewest”, 可省去“the”。

Whose composition has (the) fewest mistakes. (誰的文章錯誤最少?)

You have made (the) most mistakes. (你錯誤最多。)

(b) “Most” 作‘大概’的意味解時, 不用“the”。

Most people think so. (大概的人這樣想。)

{ Most learned men = most scholars. (大概的學者)

{ The most learned men = the greatest scholar. (最博學的人們)

(c) “Most” 作“very” 或 “exceedingly” 的意味解時, 不用“the”, 這叫做絕對最上級 (Absolute Superlative). 請比較:——

{ He is a most proud man. (他是個非常驕傲的人。)

{ He is the proudest man I ever saw. (那樣驕傲的人我沒有看到過。)

{ These are most interesting novels. (這些是非常有趣的小說。)

{ These are the most interesting of his novels. (這些是他的小說中最有趣的。)

(d) “Last” 指前星期幾, 先週, 前月, 去年等與現在相隣接的過去時, 不用“the”。

{ I was there last Sunday. (前個禮拜日我在那邊。)

{ The ceremony was held on the last Sunday of March. (儀式在三月的最後一個禮拜日舉行了。)

{ I returned last week. (我前星期回來的。)

{ It happened in the last week of December. (這發生在十二月的最後一個星期。)

(e) “Next” 原來為“near” 之最上級。但表下星期幾, 來週, 來月, 來年等與現在隣接的未來時, 不用“the”。請比較下例。

- { Let us start **next** Monday. (下禮拜一動身吧。)
 { We started **the next** Monday. (我們於下一個星期一就出發了。)
 { He will return **next** year. (他來年回來。)
 { He died **the next** year. (翌年他就死了。)

【注意】來週或先週之星期幾有兩種說法。

I am going to start { on Thursday next. } (我想下星期四動身。)
 { next Thursday. }

(f) 含最上級的慣用句中，有用“the”的，亦有不用“the”的。

At first you will find it hard, but it will soon become easy. (最初你會覺得困難，但不久就會成爲容易的。)

Here we are at our journey's end **at last**. (我們終於到了目的地了。)

It will take **at least** one month. (這至少要費一個月工夫。)

It is worth no more than one dollar **at (the) best**. (這至多也不過只值一塊錢。)

He was **not in the least** injured. (他一點兒也沒有受傷。)

I shall be back by Wednesday **at the latest** or **at the furthest**. (我至遲到下星期三回來。)

The students are **for the most part** from the provinces. (大部分的學生是從鄉間來的。)

He **got the worst** of it. (他敗了。)

He **got the best** of it. (他勝了。)

4. 最上級的文句中，可附以表程度的副詞。

This is **by far** the best of all. (這是內中一等最好的。)

The **very** largest. (頭等最大的)

下向的比較 (Comparison in a Descending Scale)

下向的比較，用“less”與“least”表示之。

kind (和善)	{ kinder	{ kindest	(向上)
	{ less kind	{ least kind	(向下)

beautiful (美) . $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more beautiful} \\ \text{less beautiful} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{most beautiful (向上)} \\ \text{least beautiful (向下)} \end{array} \right.$

She is **more beautiful than** her sister, but her mother is the **most beautiful** of the three. (她比她的妹子美, 但她的母親是三人中最美的。)

She is **less beautiful than** her sister, but her mother is the **least beautiful** of the three. (她比她的妹子難看, 但她的母親是三人中最難看的。)

Chinese birds have **more brilliant plumage than** European, but their notes are **less sweet**. (中國鳥的羽毛比歐洲的齊整, 但聲調不及歐洲鳥之佳美。)

She is **more clever, but less beautiful, than** her sister. (她比她的妹子聰明, 但不及她妹子的美。)

[注意] 此例中之不用“cleverer”而用“more clever”者, 因與下面“less”成對照之故。

拉丁比較級 (Latin Comparatives)

“**Superior**”(優), “**inferior**”(劣), “**prior**”(前), “**anterior**”(前), “**posterior**”(後)等與“**to**”(作than之代用)連用時, 表示比較的意味。

The article is **superior to** (= *better than*) that. (這東西比那個好。)

This method is **inferior to** (= *worse than*) that. (這方法比那個壞。)

I intend to visit Hangchow **prior to** (= *before*) my departure. (在未出發以前我要去遊一次杭州。)

This event was **anterior to** (= *earlier than*) that. (這事件是在那事件之前。)

Hesiod was **posterior to** (= *later than*) Homer. (海西奧特是在荷馬之後。)

“**Senior**”與“**junior**”亦爲 Latin Comparative, 可作名詞用。

He is my **senior** (or **junior**) by three years (= He is three years **older** [or **younger**] than I). (他是比我長三歲的兄 [或比我小三歲的弟輩]。)

Exercise XXI.

I. 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. Is she your old sister? (她是你的姊妹嗎?)
2. Who live furthest from the school? (誰住得離學校最遠?)
3. He is taller, but not so strong as I. (他比我高大,但不及我的強壯。)
4. I am a little well than yesterday. (我比昨天少少好了一點。)
5. He got up lately this morning. (今晨他起來得遲了。)
6. In diligence he is inferior than none. (勤勉這點上他是不劣於任何人的。)
7. Gold is heavier and more valuable than any metal. (金比任何金屬都重而有用。)
8. Of London and New York, New York is larger. (倫敦與紐約,紐約大得多。)
9. China has a larger population than any country. (中國的人口比無論那一國要多。)
10. Health is more good than wealth. (康健勝於富。)

II. 將下列文句中的 Superlative 變 Comparative, 或 Comparative 變 Superlative: ——

1. I never saw a more handsome man. (我不曾見過比他漂亮的人。)
2. He speaks English better than anybody else. (他的英語比無論那個人說得好。)
3. She is the prettiest of the three sisters. (她是三姊妹之中最美的。)
4. He was braver than any other man in the whole army. (全軍中他比無論那一個人都要勇敢。)
5. Esperanto is the easiest of all languages. (世界語是一切語言中最容易的。)

III. 寫出以下各詞的比較級及最上級：——

angry (怒), hot (熱), clean (清潔), ill (病), bad (不好), heavy (重), many (多), polite (溫文), gay (高興), true (真)。

IV. 將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 學科中最難的是什麼？
2. 數學比無論那一種學科都難。
3. 你們裏面那個人年紀最大？
4. 他比他的無論那一個兄弟都要聰明。
5. 我的長兄現今在美國。
6. 四季之中我最喜歡秋季。
7. 紐約是世界的最大都會之一。
8. 此等物品大多是從歐洲輸入的。
9. 在學問上我勝於他的哥哥。
10. 沒有東西比在春天的晴日到海邊散步更爲有趣了。

第四章

冠詞 (ARTICLES)

“A”, “an”, “the” 三字本宜歸入 Demonstrative Adjective 之內; 今爲說明便利起見, 特立 Article (冠詞) 一項。“A” 與 “an” 爲 Indefinite Article (不定冠詞), “the” 叫做 Definite Article (定冠詞)。

I. 不定冠詞 (The Indefinite Article)

1. “A” 與 “an” 皆爲 “one” 之轉訛, 兩者的意味完全相同; “a” 放在子音前面, “an” 放在母音前面。

a boy

a dog

a lamp

an apple

an egg

an orange

2. 不定冠詞之所以有 “a” 與 “an” 之別者, 完全由於發音上的關係。因 “a apple”, “a egg”, “a orange” 等母音與母音相接, 發音感到困難, 故用子音 “n” 插入其間, 使音調成爲流利。所以, “a” 與 “an” 之運用, 並不依名詞之最先一字爲母音或子音而定, 須以 “a” 與 “an” 下面之音, 是否爲母音或子音而定之。

{ a man
 an old man

{ an ox
 a large ox

3. 初學者總以爲 “a”, “e”, “i”, “o”, “u” 是母音, 其餘皆爲子音, 這是很大的誤解。須知英語中有 ‘字之名’ 與 ‘字之音’ 的分別, 且一字亦不只限於一音; 如 “one” (wʌn), “useful” (yoo’sfool) 兩字便不是以母音, 而是以子音起首的, 故須附以冠詞 “a”。

a one-eyed man
such a one

a useful thing
a university

又，用“e”開始之詞中，亦有表子音的；如“ewe”(yōō), “European”(yoorəpē'-ən)等。此等詞的前面，亦須用冠詞“a”。

a ewe

a European

“h”普通爲子音，但“hour”(owr), “heir”(ār)等語中，“h”不發聲音，故須用“an”。

an hour

an heir

an honest man

雖以有聲的“h”開始的詞，若第一音節中無 accent (強音)時，因其發音較弱，亦可附以“an”。

{ a (or an) his-tor'ical essay.
{ a (or an) ho-tel'.

又如下例中之“M. P.”，因發音爲(ěm pē)，故亦須用“an”。

an M. P. = a Member of Parliament.

4. 不定冠詞因含有“one”的意味，爲一種單數的記號，故單數普通名詞及集合名詞指一個事物時，必須用不定冠詞。

Common—**a** cat, **an** orange.

Collective—**a** family, **an** army.

固有名詞，物質名詞，抽象名詞等因無單數複數，故無用不定冠詞之必要；但當作普通名詞用時，亦可用不定冠詞。

不定冠詞的用法 (Uses of the Indefinite Article)

1. **Generalizing “A”**——用以表示種類的全體。此種“a”與“any”意味相同，但較“any”爲弱。

A fox is a cunning animal. (狐是狡猾的動物。)

I like **an** honest man better than **a** rich man. (我歡喜正直的人比歡喜富人更甚。)

此等用法，結局與不定複數意味相同。

A dog is more faithful than a cat

= Dogs are more faithful than cats. (犬比貓忠實。)

2. Individualizing “A”——用以表示某一個事物。此種“a”因表示數目的一個，故與複數的“some”相對應。

{ Sing.—There is a man in the next room. (隣室有一個人。)

{ Pl.—There are some men in the next room. (隣室有幾個人。)

3. Predicative “A”——敘述主語之述部(Predicate)中，名詞前面須用“a”；但與此對應的複數前面不得用“some”。

{ Sing.—Is he a doctor?—No, he is a lawyer. (他是醫生嗎？——不，是辯護士。)

{ Pl.—Are they doctors?—No, they are lawyers. (他們是醫生嗎？——不，是辯護士。)

[注意] “Not a” 用在 Verb “to be” 的下面，“no” 用在 “have”, “want”, “give”, “there is” (pl. are) 等下面。

{ He is a student. (他是個學生。)

{ He is not a student. (他不是學生。)

{ I have a book. (我有本書。)

{ I have no book. (我沒有書。)

但使打消的意味增強時，亦有將“no”作“not a”之代用，“not a”或“not a single”作“no”之代用的。

{ He is not a scholar. (他不是學者。)[普通用法]

{ He is no scholar. (他並不是什麼學者。)[特殊用法]

{ There is no school in this great town. (這大都市裏沒有學校。)[普通]

{ There is not a (single) school in this great town. (這大都市裏一所學校都沒有。)[特殊]

Shanghai is no place for a young man. (上海決不是青年可居的地方。)

There is not a speck of cloud in the blue sky. (天空中一點雲影都沒有。)

4. 不定冠詞除以上三種用法之外，尚有其他許多須注意的慣用法，今列舉於下。

(a) “A” = one.

a dozen (一打)

half-a-dozen (半打)

an hour (一小時)

half-an-hour (半點鐘)

a hundred (一百)

a thousand (一千)

I shall finish it in a day or two. (我一兩天中把牠做好。)

The distance is only a mile or so. (距離只一哩左右。)

A stitch in time saves nine. (今日之一針，明日之十針。)

Do not attend to two things at a time. (一次間不要做兩件事情。)

In a word, he tried to be rich without working. (一言以蔽之，他不勞動而致富。)

The student went in a body to the principal. (學生結隊向校長那裏去。)

(b) “A” = the same.

We two are nearly of an age. (我們兩人差不多是同年齡的。)

Birds of a feather flock together. (物以類聚。)

Two of a trade seldom agree. (同行妬嫉。)

Not two men are of a mind. (十人十條心。)

of a size (同樣大小) of a sort (同一種類)

of a face (同一面孔)

(c) “A” = some.

He has a few (=some few) friends. (他稍稍有幾個朋友。)

He has a little (=some little) money. (他稍稍有幾個錢。)

[注意] “A” 與 “some” 的用法，有時亦有意義上的區別。

{ Oil paintings appear to advantage at a distance. (油畫宜於離開
 着看。)

{ He lives at some distance from the school. (他住在離學校稍遠的
 地方。)

{ For a time (一時)——[與‘永久’ (for ever) 相對]
 { For some time (暫時)——[與‘長久’ (for a long time) 相對]

(d) “A” = a certain.

He introduced me to a (= a certain) Mr. Wang, a lawyer. (他把我介紹給一位姓王的辯護士。)

A man (= a certain man) called on me this morning. (今天朝上有一個人來訪問過我。)

(e) “A” = per. (但“per”為商業上的用語。)

He gets two hundred dollars a month. (他每月得二百元。)

The train runs at the rate of 40 miles an hour. (火車以每小時四十哩的速力行駛。)

Once a week. (每星期一次)

Twice a day. (每天兩次)

Three times a year. (每年三次)

Six pence a dozen. (每打六辨士)

(f) “Of a” = -like.

He lives in a palace of a house (= a palace-like house). (他住在宮殿一般的房子之中。)

A saint of a man (= a saint-like man). (聖人似的人)

A mountain of a wave (= a mountain-like wave). (山一般高的水浪)

That fool of a John. (那個呆子神氣的約翰)

A pig of a fellow. (豕一般的傢伙)

II. 定冠詞 (The Definite Article)

定冠詞只有“the”一個，作用與“this”，“that”等相同，但意味較為微弱。其發音普通遇意味較強的用法時為 (dhē)，母音之前為 (dhī)，子音之前為 (dhə)。

定冠詞的用法 (Uses of the Definite Article)

1. Particularizing "The" (特定定冠詞):——我們說這本書那本書的時候,用 "this book", "that book" (複數為 "these books", "those books"). 但我們並不明確地用手指點出這個那個,而說者與聽者都明白所指的東西時,用 "the book" 或 "the books". 換言之, "the" 字用於表示心中所指的事物。此種意味的定冠詞,可附於無論那一種名詞,亦可附於單數及複數名詞,此項特定定冠詞的用法,可以分作三類。

第一類——同一名詞,前面已有出現時。

I have bought a watch and some pictures. **The watch** is for my brother, and **the pictures** are for my sister. (我買一隻錶和幾張畫;錶是給我的弟弟的,畫是給我的妹妹的。)

One day a hare met a tortoise. "Let us have a race", said **the tortoise to the hare**. (有一天兔遇見了龜。龜對兔說,“我們來競走吧”。)

上例中第一次出現的名詞,用 "a"; 重出的名詞因其所指為何物,已經明瞭,故用定冠詞 "the".

第二類——將形容詞短語或形容詞短句附於名詞,因而該名詞受特定的限制時。

Nanking is **the capital of China**. (南京是中國的首都。)

What is **the price of this chair**? (這椅子的價錢是多少?)

The ignorance of these men surprises me. (這些人們的無知識使我吃驚。)

This is **the house in which I was born**. (這是我誕生的房子。)

Which is **the book that you bought yesterday**? (你昨天所買的書是那一本?)

因之,附有最上級形容詞的名詞,須用定冠詞 "the".

Who is **the richest man** in this town? (這鎮上最有錢的人是誰?)

The highest mountain in the world is Mt. Everest. (世界上最高的山是愛符萊斯脫山。)

[注意] (a) 雖附有形容詞短語或形容詞短句，但名詞中亦有不受特定的限制的。

{ He is **the principal** of our school. (他是我們學校裏的校長。)
 { He is **a student** of our school. (他是我們學校裏的學生。)

同樣附以“of our school”這形容詞短語，第一句因我們學校裏的校長，只有一人，乃某人這固有名詞之代用，故用定冠詞“the”。第二句之我們學校裏的學生，因學生不止一人，未知指誰，故用不定冠詞“a”。又

{ Who is **the man** that wrote this book? (寫這本書的人是誰?)
 { He must be **a man** who is proficient in English. (他一定是個熟達於英語的人。)

上句中因寫這本書的人是限定某一個人的，故用定冠詞。下句中因熟達於英語的人世上不止一個，故須用不定冠詞“a”。

(b) 雖不附形容詞短語或形容詞短句，但由前後的關係，可知道該物乃指特定之事物的，則須用定冠詞“the”。

I have hired a house; **the rent** is very cheap. (我賃了一座房子，房金很便宜。)

The lamp has gone out; **the oil** must be out. (燈熄了，一定是油盡了。)

上例第一句中的“the rent”為“the rent of the house”之略，第二句的“the oil”為“the oil of the lamp”之略，故為特定的事物。

第三類——日常談話中，常有指特定事物的普通名詞。此種名詞，不論其為初次出現或並無形容詞的限制，而聽者卻能立即悟到所指的事物，故亦須附以定冠詞。

(1) 我們所住的世界，地球等自然物。

The earth (地球), **the sun** (太陽), **the moon** (月亮), **the world** (世界),
the sky (天空), **the ocean** (海洋), **the sea** (海), **the universe** (宇宙)。

[注意] 將形容詞附於以上等名詞時，往往有用不定冠詞的，而因之意味亦常有變更。

We live in **a busy world**. (我們住在多忙的世界中。)

A cloudy sky is not always a sign of rain. (陰天未必是雨的表示。)

There was a **high sea** running. (波浪非常高。)

There was a **full moon** last evening. (昨晚是滿月。)

(2) 與日常生活有聯絡或來往關係的名詞。

I went to the **barber's** yesterday. (我昨天到理髮店裏去。)

He has gone to the **post-office**. (他到郵政局裏去了。)

Some one is at the **door**. 有人在門口。)

the doctor (醫生), **the butcher** (屠夫), **the fishmonger** (魚商), **the park** (公園), **the station** (車站), **the wall** (牆壁), **the fire** (火爐), **the well** (井), **the street** (街), **the country** (鄉間), **the city** (城市)。

[注意] ‘鄉間’ (the country) 附 ‘the’, 但 ‘城市’ (town) 不附冠詞。

My father has gone into **the country**. (我的父親到鄉下去了。)

My uncle has come to **town**. (我的叔父上城來了。)

(3) 表方向的名詞。

The house looks toward **the south**. (該房子是朝南的。)

the east (東), **the north** (北), **the west** (西), **the left** (左), **the right** (右), **the horizon** (地平線)。

(4) 表唯一的人或主要人物的名詞。

The Mayor is ill. (市長生了病。)

the Emperor (皇帝), **the king** (王), **the governor** (縣長), **the principal** (校長)。

2. **Collective “The”** (集合定冠詞)：——將前項所述的 particularizing “the” 附於複數普通名詞時，即指該特定的事物全請比較：

{(a) They are **the teachers** of our school. (他們是我們校裏的先生。)

{(b) They are **teachers** of our school. (他們是我們校裏的幾個先生。)

(a) 之 “the teachers” 為校中教師全體，其意味為除彼等幾人外，更無其他教師。(b) 之 “teachers” 指校中教師的一部分，其

味爲除彼等幾人以外，尚有其他的教師。相差只一個定冠詞，句子的意義便截然不同。又

(a) **Cherry-trees** blossom in spring. (櫻桃樹是在春季開花的。)

(b) **The cherry-trees** in the garden are in full blossom. (園中的櫻桃樹滿開着花。)

(a)之“cherry-trees”指一般的櫻桃樹；而(b)之“the cherry-trees”只指園中的櫻桃樹全部。

[注意] 附於 Noun of Multitude 的 “the” 亦屬於此類。

{What will people say? (人們將怎樣說呢?)

{The people are against war. (人民是反對戰爭的。)

還有，附於複數固有名詞的 “the”，亦爲 Collective “the”，這已在固有名詞部中講過。

3. **Representative “The”** (代表定冠詞)：——此即代表單數的 “the”，在普通名詞部中已有詳述。

4. **Abstractive “The”** (抽象定冠詞)：——此即將 “the” 附於普通名詞，表抽象之觀念者，亦已於普通名詞部中說明之矣。

5. **Qualitative “The”** (形容定冠詞)：——

(a) 單數普通名詞接 Infinitive 時所附的 “the”，有‘如何如何樣子的’之意味。

He is not **the man** to tell a lie. (他不是說謊話樣子的人。)

[注意] 在語體中則爲 “He is not a man to tell a lie”。兩方的意味皆與 “He is not **such a man as** will tell a lie” 同。

(b) 如下的構文，抽象名詞前面須附定冠詞 “the”。

He had **the kindness** to lend me the money

= He was **so kind as** to lend me the money

= He **kindly** lent me the money. (他親切地借給我錢。)

今爲便於記憶起見，將以上所述的五種用法總括舉例於下。

1. Particularizing:—

The principal is against the project. (校長反對該計劃。)

2. Collective:—

The students are in favour of it. (學生皆贊成這個。)

3. Representative:—

The whale is a mammal. (鯨爲哺乳動物。)

4. Abstractive:—

The pen is mightier than the sword. (文勝於武。)

5. Qualitative:—

He is not the man to do such a thing. (他並不是做這種事情的人。)

定冠詞的特別用法 (Special Uses of the Definite Article)

1. "The" in Phrase (短語中的定冠詞):—

(a) 指一日中的時間。

Most beasts of prey sleep in the daytime. (大多數的食肉獸是在晝間睡眠的。)

He generally goes out in the morning and comes home in the evening. (他大概是早出晚歸的。)

Let us take a walk in the afternoon. (午後去散步吧。)

[例外] "Night" 不附 "the", 亦不用 "in" 而用 "at"。這因爲從前有 "at morn" (朝), "at eve" (晚), "at night" (夜) 的用法。今前者兩種, 只有在詩句中尙有人使用, 散文中則已廢除; 惟 "at night" 至今尙存。

(b) 表場所的短語。

The handkerchief is drying in the sun. (手帕曬在太陽中。)

We rested ourselves in the shade. (我們在蔭處休息。)

I have been walking in the wet (or in the rain). (我剛在雨中走着。)

Owls can see better in the dark than in the light. (鳥在暗處看物比在亮處清楚。)

I saw a light in the distance. (我看見遠處有一點燈火。)

I see a white sail in the offing. (我看見在洋面中有一隻白帆。)

(c) 表時間，數量等的標準。

Meat is sold by the pound (= at so much per pound). (肉論磅出售。)

I hired a motor-car by the hour. (你僱了一部論鐘點算錢的汽車。)

He is paid by the week. (他論星期領薪。)

This cloth is sold by the metre. (這布論一米突若干錢出售。)

2. 爲要表示區別而附於固有名詞的“the”，已在固有名詞部中有所說明。

3. 將“the”附於形容詞而作名詞之代用的，亦已於形容詞部中有所說明。

冠詞的位置 (Position of the Article)

冠詞如名之所示，是冠於名詞的；與名詞的關係，較形容詞密切。通常名詞之前有形容詞時，冠詞放在形容詞之前。但在以下的情形中，冠詞須放在形容詞之後。

1. Such a . . . 與 What a . . .

I never saw **such a** (fine) sight. (這樣的壯觀我還是初次看到。)

What a (fine) sight it must have been! (那一定是個非常的壯觀吧!)

2. So . . . a . . . 與 How . . . a . . .

We had **so good a** time. (我們過了一個非常有興趣的時候。)

You can't think **how good a** time we had! (你們想也想不到我們過了一個多麼有趣的時間!)

3. As . . . a . . . 與 Too . . . a . . .

He is **as honest a** man as ever breathed. (他是個不劣於世上任何人的正直者。)

This is **too good an** opportunity to miss. (這是個不宜錯過的非常好的機會。)

4. All the . . . , Both the . . . 與 Many a . . .

All the air a solemn stillness holds.— Gray. (嚴肅的沈靜罩住了全部的天空。)

I know both (the) brothers. (兄弟兩人我都知道。)

I warned him many a time. (我警告過他好幾次。)

冠詞的等價語 (Equivalents for the Article)

我們已經說過，單數普通名詞必須附有定冠詞或不定冠詞；但附有如下的冠詞等價語時，可不用冠詞。

1. The Equivalents for “The” (定冠詞等價語)：——

(a) Pronominal Adjectives (代名形容詞)：

{ This—I was born in this village. (我生在這村子裏。)

{ That—I was born in that house (我生在那房子裏。)

{ What—What book do you want? (他要什麼書?)

{ Which—Which book will you take? (你要那一本書?)

{ Whose—Whose book is this? (這是誰的書?)

{ My, etc.—It is my (your, his, her) book. (這是我的書。)

[注意] 作感嘆用之“what”，不得作冠詞之代用。請比較：——

{ Interrogative:—What book is this? (這是什麼書?)

{ Exclamative:—What a book this is! (這是一本怎樣的書呀!)

(b) Nouns in the Possessive Case (所有格名詞)：

This is John's house. (這是約翰的房子。)

What is the man's name? (那人叫什麼名字?)

[注意] 所有格不表所有而表目的時，不得作冠詞之代用，這事已在所有格一項中有所說明。

2. The Equivalents for “A” (不定冠詞等價語)：——

(a) Singular adjective (單數形容詞)：

{ One—He has only one brother. (他只有一個兄弟。)

{ No—He has no brother. (他沒有兄弟。)

[注意] “A” 雖有等於 “one” 的用法，但在明白指出一個事物時，須用 “one”。請比較：——

{ I want a book. (我要本書。)
 { One book will do. (一本書就行了。)

(b) **Indefinite Demonstrative** (不定指示形容詞)：——

{ Some — I want some book to read. (我要讀讀的書。)
 { Any — Any book will do. (無論什麼書都可以。)
 { No — No book can teach pronunciation. (沒有一本書能教發音。)

(c) **Distributive Adjective** (個別形容詞)：——

{ Each — Each country has its own customs. (各國有各國的習慣。)
 { Every — Every man has some peculiarity. (每人都有特性。)
 { Either — Will either book do? (那一本書對的?)
 { Neither — Neither book will do. (兩本書都不對。)

[注意] “What kind of” 可當做 “what” 之變體看待；“a kind of”，“a sort of”，“a species of” 等可當做 “a” 之變體看待，故下面無須用冠詞。

What kind of tree is a cryptomeria? (Cryptomeria 是何種樹木?)

It is a kind of cedar. (是杉樹的一種。)

This is a rare species of lily. (這是一種不大有的百合。)

但表‘怎樣神氣’的意味時，用 “what sort of a . . .”。

What sort of a man is the new teacher? (新來的先生是怎樣神氣的人?)

He is a good sort of a young man. (他是一個上等神氣的青年。)

冠詞的省略 (Omission of the Article)

1. 呼人的詞即 Nominative of Address, 可省去冠詞。

Waiter, bring my bill, please. (堂倌, 請開了帳來。)

Come, boys. Let us play foot-ball. (噲, 諸君, 蹴足球來吧。)

2. 語體中, 凡父母, 兄弟, 姊妹, 叔伯, 及婢僕等一家人的名詞, 其用法因與固有名詞相似, 故可省去冠詞或所有格代名詞。

Mother is ill. **Nurse** has gone away. (母親生了病。保姆走了。)

Uncle has sent me these picture cards from America. (叔父從美國送來了這些畫片給我。)

Father came home late last night, and **mother** sat up for him. (父親昨晚回家很遲，母親坐着等待他。)

3. 表官職，身分，稱號的詞，遇以下三種情形可省去冠詞。

(a) 附於固有名詞之前時。

King Edward (愛特華特王)

Queen Victoria (維多利亞女王)

President Wilson (威爾遜大總統)

Secretary of State Colby (國務卿考而倍)

General Ma (馬將軍)

Dr. Chao (趙博士)

Professor Chang (張教授)

Uncle George (喬治叔父)

Aunt Mary (瑪利叔母)

Farmer Brown (農夫勃朗)

[例外] 表君主的詞之中，“Emperor”，“Empress”及英國以外的君主名，概附以冠詞。

The Emperor Meiji (明治皇帝)

The Czar Nicholas (尼古拉斯皇帝)

(b) 與固有名詞同格用時。

George V., **king of England**. (英王喬治五世)

Dr. Hu, **professor of the Peking University**. (北京大學的教授胡博士)

Wilson, **President of the United States of America**. (美國的總統威爾遜)

Charles Dickens, **author of the “Christmas Carol”**. (‘聖誕節頌歌’的作者查理士·迭更斯)

[注意] 但遇此項情形，英國人中竟亦有附以冠詞的，讀者不可不注意。

(c) 作為不完全動詞的補足語用時。

He *is* professor of mathematics in the university. (他是大學裏的數學教授。)

He *was* nephew to the king. (他是王的姪子。)

Washington *was* twice *elected* president. (華盛頓兩次被選為大總統。)

He *was* *appointed* principal of the Higher Normal School. (他被任為高等師範的校長。)

He *was* *created* count for his services to the state. (他因為有功於國家被封為伯爵。)

[注意] 表官職及親族關係的名詞，除以上三種情形之外，必須用冠詞。

4. 兩個名詞，以接續詞或前置詞互相接合成為一起，表共同，一對，連續，對照等意時，可省去冠詞。

They are **man and wife**. (他們是夫妻。)

Mother and child are doing well. (母子都健全。)

This game is popular with **rich and poor, young and old alike**. (這遊戲貧富老幼都一樣地通行。)

You must write with **pen and ink**. (你必須用鋼筆與墨水寫字。)

Europeans eat with **knife and fork**. (歐洲人用刀與叉吃食。)

We laboured **night and day**. (我們晝夜工作。)

He was bound **hand and foot**, and thrown overboard. (他被縛住了手脚投出船外。)

The officer sprang on board, **sword in hand**. (軍官提着劍躍入船中。)

He was standing, **pipe in mouth**. (他含着烟管立着。)

Husband and wife are seen walking **arm in arm**. (看見夫妻手挽手地走着。)

Friend and foe lay down **side by side**. (同伴與敵人並枕倒於地上。)

They saw each other **face to face**. (他們互相面對面看着。)

He went begging **from door to door**. (他挨戶求乞。)

He eyed me **from head 'o foot**. (他從頭到腳看着我。)

The ship rolled **from side to side**. (船左右擺動。)

5. 名詞與前置詞結合成爲 Phrase, 不表該名詞的具體物而言抽象的觀念時, 可省去冠詞。

{ He is at home. (他在家。)

{ He is away from home. (他不在家。)

{ The students are now at school. (學生正在學習中。)

{ The boy has gone to school. (孩子上學去了。)

{ Some people sleep at church. (有人在聽牧師講道時睡眠。)

{ He goes to church every Sunday. (他每星期日去做禮拜。)

{ Foreigners like to talk at table. (外國人歡喜在吃飯的時候談天。)

{ I found them at breakfast. (我走去時他們正在吃朝飯。)

{ We sell and buy in market. (我們在市上做買賣。)

{ My mother has gone to market. (我的母親買東西去了。)

{ Reading in bed is a bad habit. (睡着看書是一種惡習。)

{ It is time to go to bed. (到了睡眠的時候了。)

{ Are you going on foot? (你徒步去嗎?)

{ I am going on horseback. (我騎馬去。)

{ Is the captain on board? (艦長在艦上嗎?)

{ No, he is on shore. (他在岸上。)

{ Are you going by train (by railway)? (你乘火車去嗎?)

{ I am going by water (by sea), not by land. (我由水路去, 不由陸路去。)

{ Let me know by letter. (請寫信通知我。)

{ Send the book by post (by mail). (請將書由郵政寄來。)

[注意] 以上諸例中的名詞可以說是表抽象觀念的。如例中的“school”與“church”等, 決不是指學校或教會的建築物, 乃是用於作求學與禮拜之意味解的。此等前置詞與名詞結成的 Phrase, 其名詞實際上亦係抽象名詞居多。

(a) 指具體的事物, 如諸例中的“school”, “church”等建築物時, 須用冠詞。

He lives near the school. (他住在學校附近。)

Do you pass the church on your way to school? (上學去你走過教堂嗎?)

(b) 諸君須注意，此種慣用句中的名詞不用冠詞，同時亦決不用複數。

My brothers are still in bed. (兄弟們都還睡着。)

The children go to school every morning. (孩子們每天朝晨上學去。)

上例中兄弟們雖每人都睡在自己的牀上，孩子們每人都往自己的學校裏去，但卻不能作“in beds”及“go to schools”。假使強要成複數時，則亦非作“in their beds”及“to their respective schools”不可。

6. 動詞與其目的語的名詞互相連接起來，表一個動詞的觀念時，不用冠詞。

Exercise does one good. (運動有益於人。)

Too much wine will do you harm. (飲酒過度是有害的。)

Please take care of yourself. (請你自己當心。)

My sister keeps house for me. (我的妹子為我管理家政。)

His long absence gave rise to various rumours. (他的長久不歸引起了各種謠傳。)

Make room for an old man. (請讓席給老人。)

Make haste, and you will be in time. (急速一點，你就可以趕得上。)

I have taken cold. (我患傷風。)

[注意] 上例中的“take”改用“have”時，須用“a cold”；如有形容詞時，則兩方皆須用“a cold”。

I have taken cold = I have a cold.

I have taken a bad cold = I have a bad cold.

7. 名詞用在表讓步的 Clause 之最前面時，不用冠詞。

Fool as he is (=though he is a fool), he will not do such a thing. (他雖然是個傻子，卻不會做出這種事情。)

Warrior though he was (=though he was a warrior), he could not bear the pain. (他雖然是一個勇士，卻也忍不住苦痛了。)

冠詞的反復 (Repetition of the Article)

1. 並列兩個以上的名詞，用以指同一事物時，只在最先的名詞前面附一冠詞。

Scott was a novelist and poet. (司考德是小說家兼詩人。)

The editor and publisher of this magazine is a very able man. (這雜誌的編輯兼發行者是個非常能幹的人。)

He is a secretary and treasurer. (他是秘書兼會計。)

[例外] 爲要增強意味，亦有忽視此項規則，故意將冠詞反復而用的。

He became a husband and a father before he was out of his teens. (他還不出二十歲時就做了丈夫及父親。)

2. 兩個以上的名詞，指各別的事物時，每個名詞前須附以冠詞。

The minister and the secretary were present. (大臣與祕書官兩人出席。)

It is hard to distinguish between a participle and a gerund. (分詞與動名詞是很不容易辨別的。)

The editor and publisher of this magazine is a very able man. (這雜誌的編輯兼發行者是一個非常能幹的人。)[一人]

The editor and the publisher of this magazine are very able men. (這雜誌的編輯與發行者都是非常能幹的人。)[二人]

[例外] 1. 無混亂之虞時，亦有忽視此項規則，只在最初的名詞前面附以冠詞的。

I met a lady and [a] gentleman. The lady and [the] gentleman were walking arm in arm. (我遇見了一個婦人與一個紳士。那婦人與紳士兩人手挽着手走着。)

2. 一個事物附於其他事物成爲一個物體時，冠詞只用一個。

A watch and chain. (附有索鍊的錶)

The bread and butter. (附有牛油的面包)

A rod and line. (附有釣絲的釣竿)

Tell 'em to send a horse and carriage to me. — Hardy. (叫他們送一部連馬在一起的馬車來。)(Tell 'em = tell them)

[注意] 省去名詞，只並列着形容詞時，須要特別留意。

- The carriage is drawn by a black and white horse. (馬車被一匹黑白相間的斑馬拉著。)
- The black and white horse is Arabian breed. (這匹黑白色相間的斑馬是阿拉伯種。)
- The carriage is drawn by a black [horse] and a white horse. (馬車被一匹黑馬與一匹白馬拉著。)
- The black and the white horse }
The black and white horses } are both Arabian breed. (黑馬與白馬兩匹都是阿拉伯種。)

Exercise XXII.

I. 改正下列文句中的錯誤：——

1. Will you have kindness to tell me a way to a station? (你肯指示給我到車站去的路嗎?)
2. He was the President of the French Republic. (他是法蘭西共和國的總統。)
3. A graduation ceremony will be held at an end of next month. (下月月底將舉行卒業式。)
4. I saw him walking, a stick in the hand. (我看到他手中提着杖走着。)
5. He is the student of our school. (他是我們校裏的學生。)
6. What kind of an animal is a tiger? (虎是何種動物?)
7. Our teacher of English lives near school. (我們的英語教師住在學附近。)
8. I told him to leave room. (我叫他走出房間去。)
9. A girl will make a better linguist than boy. (女孩子比男孩子容易成為語言學者。)
10. Goldsmith travelled from a place to a place, a flute in a hand. (哥爾特史密斯手中執着一笛到處旅行。)

II. 將冠詞放入下列文句中必要之處：——

1. I saw tall and thin man walking together with short and stout lady.
2. I saw tall and short man walking together.

3. Early in morning I had visit from intimate friend.
4. Lawyer would make better statesman than soldier.
5. London is largest city in world

III. 將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 他不幸年幼時失了雙親。
2. 他並不是會拋棄患難中之友的人。
3. 牛肉多少錢一磅？一塊錢一磅。
4. 下課後打網球來吧。
5. 我找尋着能說英語的人。
6. 我打算住一兩天。
7. 他染了惡傷風，頭痛得很。
8. 請把窗子關了。
9. 他是北平大學的數學教授。
10. 早餐時除麵包與咖啡以外我不吃什麼東西。

第五 章

動 詞 (VERBS)

I. 動 詞 的 種 類 (Classes of Verbs)

動詞爲述部(Predicato)中不可缺少的要素,用以表動作(action)及狀態(state)者。依其目的語(object)之有無,可大別爲他動詞與自動詞兩種,又依其有無補足語,每種更可分爲完全與不完全二類;再加上需要二個目的語的授與動詞,共計五種。

Transitive	{	Complete Transitive Verb (完全他動詞)
		Incomplete Transitive Verb (不完全他動詞)
		Dative Verb (授與動詞)
Intransitive	{	Complete Intransitive Verb (完全自動詞)
		Incomplete Intransitive Verb (不完全自動詞)

1. 完全他動詞 (Complete Transitive Verb)

一切需要目的語的動詞,都叫做他動詞(Transitive Verb)。他動詞中不要補足語,只要有目的語而意義已完全者,叫做完全他動詞(Complete Transitive Verb)。

I love him. (我愛他。)

The teacher praises her. (先生稱讚她。)

He speaks English. (他說英語。)

上例中之“love”,“praises”,“speaks”皆爲完全他動詞。完全他動詞所表的動作,必及於其他的人或物。如第一例,若無被愛的對象“him”,則意味便不完全;第二例若無被稱讚的對象“her”,則意

味亦不完全。此種受到他動詞所表的動作者，即爲目的語(Object)。可做他動詞的目的語的，有以下六種：——

* * O B J E C T (目的語) * *	
名詞 (Noun)	He killed a snake. (他殺了一條蛇。)
代名詞 (Pronoun)	He helped me. (他幫助了我。)
不定詞 (Infinitive)	He intends to leave Shanghai to-morrow. (他想明天離去上海。)
動名詞 (Gerund)	He disliked sleeping in the daytime. (他討厭白天中睡眠。)
短語 (Phrase)	I don't know how to swim. (我不知道游泳法。)
短句 (Clause)	I don't know who has come. (我不知道誰來過了。)

[注意] 目的語通例放在他動詞後面，但疑問詞或關係代名詞作目的語時，放在動詞前面；又，如欲加強目的語的意味時，目的語亦往往放在他動詞的前面。

{ What shall I study? [疑問詞]

{ (什麼東西我學呢?)

{ I do what I think right. [關係代名詞]

{ (我幹我所認爲對的事情。)

{ Silver and gold I have none; but what I have I give unto thee. [強勢]

{ (予無金與銀，惟予願將予所有者給汝。)

再歸的構文 (Reflexive Construction)

1. 他動詞的動作，若及於行爲者自身時，則以 Reflexive Pronoun 作目的語。凡他動詞，皆可用此種構文。

How did he destroy himself? Did he drown himself or hang himself? (他是怎樣自殺的：投河死的呢，還是自己吊死的?)

Respect yourself, or no one else will respect you. (自尊吧,否則便無人尊敬你了。)

To know oneself is difficult. (知己不易。)

Don't praise yourself so much. (勿自讚若是。)

How do you amuse yourselves on board ship? (你們在船中怎樣取樂。)

I threw myself on the grass to rest myself. (我躺在草地上休息。)

Warm yourself at the fire. (請你自己取暖。)

2. 動詞中亦有專用於 Reflexive 的構文者。此種動詞,叫做 Reflexive Verb (再歸動詞)。

Bestir yourself, or you will get beaten. (奮起吧,否則你就要敗了。)

I bethought myself (=thought) of a good plan. (我想出了一個好計。)

He betook himself (=took) to entreaties. (他訴之於懇求。)

He prides himself on (=is proud of) his knowledge of English. (他誇耀自己的英語知識。)

Do not plume yourself on your personal appearance. (勿以己之外表自誇。)

I am afraid I have overslept myself. (我恐怕睡眠過度了。)

Those students are apt to overwork themselves. (那幾個學生老是用功過度。)

If you overeat yourself, you will make yourself ill. (若你吃食過度,那就要害病了。)

I am obliged to absent myself from school. (我不得已缺席。)

[注意] “To absent” 只用於 Reflexive, 但 “to present” 亦有其他用法。

We presented a watch to him. } (我們送他一隻錶。)
We presented him with a watch. }

Many people presented themselves at the funeral. (許多人出席於葬儀。)

3. Reflexive Construction 中亦有用補足語的。

She cried herself blind. (她哭得眼瞎了。)

He talked himself hoarse. (他談得聲啞了。)

He worked himself ill. (他勞作得生病了。)

The child cried itself to sleep. (小孩子哭得睡去了。)

He ran himself out of breath. (他跑得轉不過氣來了。)

He worked himself into consumption. (他用功得生了肺病。)

Exercise XXIII.

用再歸動詞將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 他上吊自殺了。
2. 他正在着衣服。
3. 我不能承受你的好意，抱歉得很。
4. 你用不到擔心。
5. 我不得已因生病缺了席。
6. 請你自己隨便吃點糕餅。
7. 自助者天助之。
8. 你自己辯解了也是無益的。

2. 不完全他動詞 (Incomplete Transitive Verb)

目的語之外更需要補足語 (Complement) 的動詞，叫做不完全他動詞 (Incomplete Transitive Verb)。此種動詞，因係表‘將何物作如何’之意，故又名作為動詞 (Factitive Verb)。

He **made** her his wife. (他娶她為妻。)

He **made** her happy. (他使她幸福。)

They **think** him honest. (他們以為他是正直的。)

上例中的“made”及“think”，皆為作為動詞，除目的語“her”及“him”之外，必須有“wife”，“happy”與“honest”等補足語，以完成其意味。“Wife”為 Noun Complement (名詞補足語)，“happy”與“honest”為 Adjective Complement (形容詞補足語)，三者皆為目的語“her”與“him”的說明語，故此種補足語叫做 Objective

Complement (目的格補足語)。成爲目的格補足語者，大概有以下數種：——

* OBJECTIVE COMPLEMENT (目的格補足語)	
名詞	They made him king . (他們奉他爲王。)
形容詞	The judge set the prisoner free . (裁判官釋放了囚人。)
分詞	They found her still weeping . (他們看到她還在哭泣。)
不定詞	I heard him say it. (我聽他說這話。)
副詞	The coachman drove him home . (馭者送他回家。)
短語	This plot filled us with terror . (這謀對使我們愕然。)
短句	We have made him what he is . (我們使他有今日。)

同一動詞，既可作完全他動詞用，亦可作 Factitive Verb 用。

Complete

Factitive

Make a hole in the board.

(板上做一個孔。)

Have you **named** the dog?

(你已給狗取了名字嗎?)

Keep the money.

(把錢保存起來。)

He **left** town yesterday.

(他昨日離開都市。)

I **found** the book easily.

(我容易地找見了書。)

Make it large enough to admit a hand. (做成可以伸進手去的那麼大。)

I **have** **named** him Teddy.

(我給他取名爲退代。)

Keep your sword bright.

(不要把你的劍銹了。)

Don't leave the door **open**.

(不要讓門打開着。)

I **found** the book **easy**.

(我覺得這書並不難。)

[注意] “I found the book easily” 的 “easily” 爲修飾 “found” 的副詞；

“I found the book easy” 的 “easy” 爲形容詞補足語，修飾 “the book”。

Exercise XXIV.

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 府上都安好嗎?
2. 把瑪利 (Mary) 做了你的新婦吧。

3. 把眼睛閉起來!
4. 你可以稱他爲偉人,但不能稱他爲善人。
5. 醫生走去一看,他已經死了。
6. 你使我有今日。

3. 授與動詞 (Dative Verb)

他動詞中,亦有須要兩個目的語者。此種動詞,謂之 Dative Verb (授與動詞),含有‘對何人作何事’之意。表人者爲 **Indirect Object** (間接目的語),表事物者爲 **Direct Object** (直接目的語)。

授與動詞的間接目的語,通例放在直接目的語之前。間接目的語若放在直接目的語之後,則前面須附以前置詞“to”或“for”而成爲副詞句。

I gave **the boy** a book = I gave a book **to the boy**. (我給了孩子一本書。)

I bought **the girl** a doll = I bought a doll **for the girl**. (我給女孩子買了一個洋囡囡。)

上例中“the boy”與“the girl”爲間接目的語,“book”與“doll”爲直接目的語。間接目的語放在後面時用前置詞“for”者,爲“buy”,“get”,“make”等幾個動詞;其他大抵用“to”。又,直接目的語若爲“it”時,則必須將間接目的語放在最後;如遇間接目的語爲代名詞時,亦可將前置詞“to”或“for”略去。

{ He lent **it to the boy**.
 { He lent **it to him**.
 { He lent **it him**.

{ He gave it to the boy.
He gave it to me.
He gave it me.

茲將主要的授與動詞舉例於下：——

I gave him a watch. (我給了他一隻錶。)

Will you lend me your knife? (你肯借給我小刀嗎?)

Bring me that book. (把那本書拿來。)

Go and fetch me my hat. (去把我的帽子拿來。)

I will take him some flowers. (我將拿幾朵花給他。)

He sent me a nice present. (他送給我一件美妙的禮品。)

He left them all his wealth. (他把全部財產讓給了他們。)

He wrote me a letter. (他寫了一封信給我。)

I will tell you an interesting story. (我講一個有趣的故事給你聽吧。)

I will show you the way. (我領導你吧。)

He taught me how to swim. (他教了我游泳的方法。)

She made her doll a pretty dress. (她給洋囡囡做了一件美麗的衣裳。)

I will buy you a bicycle. (我買一部腳踏車給你吧。)

He asked me a question. (他質問了我一個問題。)

[注意] (a) “To ask” 表訊問事物時，間接目的語須放在“ask”的後面，表向人乞恩惠時，間接目的語普通留在末尾而間以前置詞“of”。

{ I want to ask you a question. (我要問你一個問題。)
I want to ask a favour of you. (我要懇求你一件事情。)

(b) “To ask” 用於表‘給與什麼’之意味時，用“for”。

He asked me for some money. (他向我要錢。)

(c) “To inquire” 無 Dative Construction 的用法，常須附以“of”。

{ I asked him about the matter. } (我問他該事件怎樣了。)
I inquired of him about the matter.

(d) 動詞中亦有無直接目的語而用 Dative Case 的。

Such conduct does not **become** a gentleman. (此種行為不相配於紳士。)

A misfortune **befell** him. (不幸降在他的身上了。)

This coat **lasted** me five years. (這上衣已著了五年。)

Exercise XXV.

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 在你的誕生日，我買一個美麗的洋囀囀給你吧。
2. 我買了一隻新錶，把舊的那隻賣給張君了。
3. 你的哥哥給我畫了一張美麗的畫。
4. 我還欠你許多錢。
5. 他寫了一封長長的信給我。
6. 我讀一篇有趣的故事給你們聽吧。

他動詞轉用作自動詞 (Transitive as Intransitive)

他動詞遇以下四種情形，成自動詞。

(1) **In a General Sense**——他動詞之作用，並不限於一特殊的目的而言一般的情形時，則省去目的語而成爲自動詞。

Transitive

He can **speak** English.

(他能說英語。)

The cat **saw** a mouse.

(貓見了鼠。)

I **ate** some beef at supper.

(晚餐時我吃了若干牛肉。)

He is **reading** a book; she is **writing** a letter. (他在讀書，她在寫信。)

Intransitive

Man can **speak**.

(人能言語。)

The cat can **see** in the dark.

(貓能暗中見物。)

We **eat** in order to live.

(吾人爲求生而食。)

He can neither **read** nor **write**.

(他也不能讀也不能寫。)

(2) **In a Reflexive Sense**——他動詞取反身的構文而省去 Reflexive Object 時，成自動詞。

Transitive

- The rock **hid** the lion.
 (岩石隱蔽了獅子。)
- The troops **dispersed** the mob.
 (軍隊驅散了暴民。)
- A tree **spreads** its branches.
 (樹伸張其枝。)

Intransitive

- The lion **hid** [himself] behind the rock.
 (獅子匿在岩石後面。)
- The mob **dispersed** [themselves].
 (暴民四散。)
- The branches **spread** [themselves].
 (樹枝伸張。)

(3) **In a Passive Sense**——他動詞用於表受動之意味時，成自動詞。

Transitive

- Please **sell** it to me.
 (請把這貨給我。)
- Have you **tasted** the fruit?
 (這水果你嘗過味道嗎?)
- Just **weigh** it.
 (請秤一下。)
- They are **building** a house.
 (他們正在造房子。)

Intransitive

- It **sells** very well.
 (這東西銷行很好。)
- Yes, it **tastes** sweet.
 (嘗過了味道甘美。)
- It **weighs** just two pounds.
 (秤起來恰好兩磅。)
- The house **is building**.
 (房子正在建築中。)

[注意] 上例中右欄的自動詞，皆含有受動的意味。如“*It tastes sweet*”，即為“*It is sweet when it is tasted*”之意；“*The house is building*”，即為“*The house is being built*”之意。

(4) **With Preposition**——他動詞與前置詞結合時，可成爲自動詞。

He **made off** (=ran away) with the money. (他拿了錢逃去了。)

He **set out** (=started) at 4 p.m. (他午後四時出發。)

He **turned out** (=became) a prosperous merchant. (他成了得意的商人。)

He got off (= *escaped*) unharmed. (他平安地逃脫了。)

He pulled on (= *hurried forward*) as fast as he could. (他盡力量快地前進。)

Cholera has broken out (= *suddenly appeared*). (虎列拉發生了。)

He gave in (= *yielded*) after a short struggle. (暫時抗爭之後他屈服了。)

Exercise XXVI.

英譯：——

- (1) 新生出的貓是不會看東西的。
- (2) 不知蝸牛是怎樣的味道的？
- (3) 這些蘋果能保持到春天嗎？
- (4) 香檳酒是怎樣的一種味道？
- (5) 這是同上等葡萄酒的味道一樣的。
- (6) 這路是通到火車站去的。
- (7) 吸墨紙摸起來粗糙得很。
- (8) 這房子三千塊錢賣去了。

4. 完全自動詞 (Complete Intransitive Verbs)

大部分的自動詞不用補足語，自身能表出完全的意味，這叫做完全自動詞 (Complete Intransitive Verb)。

Birds fly. (鳥飛。)

Fish swim. (魚游。)

5. 不完全自動詞 (Incomplete Intransitive Verb)

無名詞或形容詞作補足語時，自身不能表出完全意味的自動詞，叫做不完全自動詞 (Incomplete Intransitive Verb)。此種不完全自動詞因其既非純粹的自動詞，亦非他動詞，故又叫做 **Neuter Verb** (中間動詞)。

凡自動詞的補足語，皆用於修飾主語，故叫做主語補足語 (Subjective Complement)。成爲此種補足語者，大概有以下九種。

* SUBJECTIVE COMPLEMENTS (主語補足語) *	
Noun (名詞)	Gold is a metal. (黃金是金屬) That beggar turned out a thief. (那乞丐原來是一個賊。)
Pronoun (代名詞)	It was he. (是他。)
Adjective (形容詞)	He fell sick. (他生病了。) The dog went mad. (犬發瘋了。)
Participle (分詞)	He appears pleased. (他好像滿意的樣子。) Prices go on rising. (物價只管騰貴。)
Infinitive (不定詞)	The flower seems to be fading. (花好像是凋謝了。)
Gerund (動名詞)	Seeing is believing. (百聞不如一見。)
Adverb (副詞)	He returned home. 他回家來了。)
Phrase (短語)	He is in tears. (他流着淚。)
Cl. use (短句)	The results are what we expected. (結果正如我們所料。)

茲將不完全自動詞的主要者略舉於下。

(a) “Be” 及其類似的動詞：——

He is a merchant. (他是商人。)

I feel hungry. (我覺得肚飢。)

He looks pale (他面色蒼白。)

He remained a bachelor all his life. (他終身未娶。)

She **kept** silent all the time. (她始終不發一言。)

b) “**Become**” 及其類似的動詞：——

He **becomes** a merchant. (他成了商人。)

He has **grown** old. (他年老了。)

I hope I shall soon **get** well. (我希望立刻就好起來。)

She has **fallen** sick. (她生了病。)

He **turned** pale at the alarm. (他聽了警報面色發青。)

The report **proved** false. (這消息證實了原來是不確的。)

He **went** mad with vexation. (他懊惱得發狂了。)

同一自動詞有用補足語的，亦有不用補足語的。

Complete

Incomplete

He **turned** toward the door.

(他轉向門口。)

He has not **appeared** yet.

(他還沒有出來。)

He **turned** pale.

(他面色發青。)

He **appeared** satisfied.

(他現出了滿足的神氣。)

不完全自動詞與不完全他動詞，多有意味相等而互相對立的用法。

不完全自動詞

不完全他動詞

You **are** always at your books.

(你無論什麼時候總看着書。)

Her name **is** Mary.

(她名叫瑪利。)

He **became** rich by diligence.

(他因勤勉而致富。)

I always **find** you at your books.

(不論何時我總看到你正在看書。)

We **call** her Mary.

(我們叫她瑪利。)

Diligence **made** him rich.

(勤勉使他有錢。)

[注意] 表感覺的動詞的補足語，必須用形容詞，切勿誤用副詞。

{ Honey tastes **sweetly**. (誤)

{ Honey tastes **sweet**. (正)

{ Velvet feels **smoothly**. (誤)

{ Velvet feels **smooth**. (正)

Exercise XXVII.

I. 英譯：——

- (1) 他好像是很快活的樣子。
- (2) 病人一天一天地好起來了。
- (3) 到了秋天樹葉發紅。
- (4) 我的豫言成爲實事了。
- (5) 夢有時也會成真的
- (6) 我擔心着他聽到了落第的消息之後會不會發狂。

II. 將下列文句改爲他動詞的構文：——

- (1) When I went to her room, she **was** in tears.
- (2) Why **is** it **impossib'le** to resist Japan?
- (3) If you drink too much, you will **become** sick.
- (4) Take a good night's rest, and you will **be** all right.
- (5) He nearly **went mad** with vexation.

自動詞轉用作他動詞 (Intransitive as Transitive)

(1) **With Cognate Object**——自動詞以意味與自己相同或類似之名詞作爲目的語時，成爲他動詞。此種動詞，謂之 **Cognate Verb**(同意動詞)，其目的語亦謂之 **Cognate Object**(同意目的語)。

(a) 目的語與動詞全出於同一語源者。

He **lived** (= *led*) a happy life. (他過了幸福的一生。)

I **dreamed** (= *had*) a strange dream. (我做了一個奇怪的夢。)

She **smiled** a sad smile. (她現出了苦笑。)

He **died** a glorious death. (他得了光榮的死。)

He **laughed** a hearty laugh. (他真心的笑了。)

She **sighed** (= *heaved*) a deep sigh. (她深深地吐了一個嘆息。)

I **slept** a sound sleep. (我熟睡了。)

He **prayed** an earnest prayer. (他熱心地祈禱了。)

[注意] 此等目的語前面，大抵附有形容詞，表相等於副詞的意義。

To live a busy life = to live busily.

To laugh a hearty laugh = to laugh heartily.

(b) 目的語與動詞語源雖異，卻有相同或類似的意味者。

Let us run a race. (我們來賽一次跑如何。)

He fought his country's battles. (他為國家而戰。)

It was blowing a gale. (狂風吹着。)

He went a long way. (他到遠處去了。)

(c) Cognate Object 被省略時。

He looked the thanks (= look of thanks) that he could not express.
(他現出了說不出來的感謝的樣子。)

She smiled a welcome (= smile of welcome). (她笑意奉迎。)

They shouted applause (a shout of applause). (彼等歡呼喝采。)

(d) 最上級形容詞之後，有 Cognate Object 略去時。

He breathed his last (breath). (他斷氣了。)

Let us run our fastest (running). (我們以全速力來跑吧。)

They shouted their loudest (shouts). (他們盡力呼喊。)

Behave your best (behaviour). (爾其善持爾躬。)

She sang her sweetest (song). (她非常甘美地唱了。)

(2) In Causative Sense——自動詞表‘使之如何’的意味時，
成爲他動詞。

Intransitive

The kite flew into the sky.

(風箏在空中飛揚。)

Water boils.

(水沸。)

Wheat grows in the field.

(小麥生長在田裏。)

The boy stands in a corner.

(孩兒立在角裏。)

The boat floats.

(舟浮着。)

Transitive

He flew the kite.

(他放風箏。)

He boils the water.

(他燒水——使水沸騰。)

He grows wheat in the field.

(他把小麥種在田裏。)

The teacher stands the boy in a corner. 教師叫孩兒立在角裏。)

He floated the boat.

(他泛舟。)

(3) 自動詞成爲他動詞時，亦有變更母音的。

Intransitive

The sun rises at six.

(太陽六點鐘出來。)

I sit in a chair.

(我坐在椅子上。)

He lies on the grass.

(他躺在草上。)

A tree falls.

(樹倒了。)

I rise with the sun.

(我與太陽同時起身。)

Transitive

I cannot raise this boy.

(我舉不起這孩子。)

I set a book on the shelf.

(我把書放在書架上。)

He lays the book on the table.

(他把書放在桌上。)

He fells a tree with an axe.

(他用斧把樹砍倒了。)

The sun rouses me.

(太陽催我起來。)

[注意] 將上面右欄的他動詞改爲 Reflexive (反身) 或 Passive (受動) 的構文時，則成爲原來自動詞的意味。

{ He raised himself (=rose) by his own exertions. (他以自己的努力出人頭地。)

{ He was raised (=rose) to a high position. (他昇到了高高的地位。)

{ He seated himself (=sat down) on the bank. (他坐在岸上。)

{ He was seated (=was sitting) by the fire. (他坐在爐邊。)

(4) **With Preposition**——自動詞中有與前置詞結合而成爲一種 **Compound Transitive Verb** (合成他動詞) 者。此種動詞又名爲 **Prepositional Verb** (前置詞動詞)。自動詞本無受動形，但此種前置詞動詞因其含有他動詞的作用，故可用受動形。

Active

People will laugh at you.

(人將譏笑你呢。)

Everybody looked at me.

(大眾看我。)

We sent for the doctor.

(我們差了人去請醫生。)

Passive

You will be laughed at.

(你將被人譏笑呢。)

I was looked at by everybody.

(我被大眾看。)

The doctor was sent for.

(醫生被人請去了。)

Exercise XXVIII.**I. 英譯：——**

- (1) 敵人擊沈了我們的運輸船。
- (2) 渤海之戰是在什麼時候。
- (3) 聽衆喝了采。
- (4) 他過了忙碌的一生。
- (5) 他享了天命死去。

II. 用前置詞動詞將下列文句譯成英文：——

- (1) 人皆求幸福。
- (2) 那人年紀還青，請照顧他一下。
- (3) 敵軍向我們發敵。
- (4) 他們要我演說。
- (5) 這次請聽一聽我的說話。

III. 將 sit, seat, lie, lay, rise, raise 中適當之動詞填入下列文句中的空處：——

- (1) Please . . . down. (Pray be . . .)
- (2) They were . . . around the fire.
- (3) Tired with toil, I . . . down on the grass.
- (4) She . . . the child in the bed, and . . . down beside it.
- (5) The book has . . . here since yesterday.
- (6) You had better . . . down and rest yourself.
- (7) The rails are not yet
- (8) He . . . himself up in his bed.
- (9) The sun has
- (10) He . . . down beside me.

今將上述動詞的種類及用法列表於下：——

Kinds of Verbs

Transitive

1. Complete (+*Object*).
2. Incomplete (+*Object*+*Objective Complement*).
3. Dative (+*Indirect Object*+*Direct Object*).

Intransitive

4. Complete
5. Incomplete (+*Subjective Complement*).

Uses of Verbs

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| Transitive as Intransitive | } | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) in <i>Universal Sense</i>. (b) in <i>Passive Sense</i>. (c) in <i>Reflexive Sense</i>. (d) with <i>Preposition</i>. |
| Intransitive as Transitive | } | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) with <i>Cognate Object</i>. (b) in <i>Causative Sense</i>. (c) by <i>Vowel Change</i>. (d) with <i>Preposition</i>. |

Exercise XXIX.

試述下列文句中各動詞的種類，並指出目的語或補足語：——

- (1) Foreign clothes **become** you very well.
- (2) The dog **ran** mad and bit its master.
- (3) They **ran** the train off the track.
- (4) I **threw** a stone at the dog.
- (5) How did he **become** so rich?
- (6) He **slept** the sleep that knows no waking.

- (7) I have **overslept** myself.
- (8) This overcoat will **keep** you warm.
- (9) Does this knife **cut** well?
- (10) Please **return** me the book I lent you the other day.
- (11) They have **painted** the boat. They painted it green.
- (12) You must not get angry at trifles.
- (13) Can you **sing**? Please **sing** us a song.
- (14) Some constables **appeared** on the scene.
- (15) Even the constables **appeared** terrified.
- (16) **Get** me a glass of water.
- (17) That medicine **tastes** bitter.
- (18) We **looked** for the man but in vain.
- (19) I will **write** to you soon.
- (20) I will **write** you a letter on this matter.

動詞的其他分類法 (Other Classifications of Verbs)

動詞因觀察的方面不同，除上述的分類以外，又可分類如下。

(1) 本動詞與助動詞 (Principal and Auxiliary)

與其他動詞結合，加以特殊意味的動詞，叫做 **Auxiliary Verb** (助動詞)。與助動詞相對成爲主要的動詞者，叫做 **Principal Verb** (本動詞)。

主要的助動詞有以下八個：

Do 用於作疑問及否定。

Shall } 用於表未來之意。

Will }

Can }
 May } ... 表 { 1. 能力・許可・必要 } 之意。
 Must }

Have 用於作完了形。

Be 用於作受動形及進行形。

[注意] 關於此等助動詞之詳細用法，將在 Mood 及 Tense 部中說明。

(2) 有限動詞與動狀詞 (Finite Verbs and Verbids)

作 **Predicate Verb** (述動詞) 用的動詞，因其形須依照主語的人稱及數等關係而定，其用法有所限制，故叫做 **Finite Verb** (有限動詞)。

含有動詞的性質而作名詞或形容詞用的動詞，叫做 **Verbids** (動狀詞)；動狀詞與有限動詞不同，不受限制，故亦不妨叫做 **Infinite Verb** (無限動詞)。

動狀詞有以下三種。

(a) **Infinitive** (不定詞)——加“to”於動詞原形而用作名詞等者。

To live is not to breathe. (生活並不就是呼吸。)

(b) **Participle** (分詞)——1. **Present Participle** (現在分詞) 由動詞的原形加“-ing”而成；2. **Past Participle** (過去分詞) 通常有“-en”，“-d”，“-t”等語尾。兩者皆有形容詞的作用。

Who is the man speaking to your father? (和你父親談天的是誰?)

What is the language spoken in Mexico? (墨西哥所講的是什麼言語?)

(c) **Gerund** (動名詞)——由動詞的原形加“-ing”而成，作名詞用。

Riding is a good exercise. (乘馬是一種好的運動。)

II. 動詞的變化 (Inflections of Verbs)

1. 活用 (Conjugation)

動詞有下列的三段活用，也就是動詞的三要素 (Three Principal Parts of the Verb).

(1) **Root** (原形)——爲動詞根本的形式。其用法如下：——

(a) 用於表現在 (Present Tense). 但 “be” 爲例外。

I go to school. (我往學校裏去。)

(b) 用於作命令法。

Be quick. (快一點。)

(c) 用於助動詞 “do”, “will”, “shall”, “may”, “can”, “must” 等之後。但 “ought” 用不定詞，即 “ought + to + 原形”。

I shall start to-morrow. (我明天出發。)

It can not be true. (這是不會真的。)

You ought to know it. (你應該是知道的。)

(d) 用在 “to” 的後面作不定詞 (Infinitive).

He is sure to succeed. (他必定是成功的。)

He seems to be rich. (他好像是有錢的樣子。)

(e) “Let”, “make”, “see”, “hear”, “feel”, “find”, “bid” 等動詞後面，略去 Infinitive 的 “to” 而用 Root.

I have never heard him sing. (我從來沒有聽見他唱過。)

I saw him go home. (我看見他回家去的。)

(f) 將 “-ing” 加於語尾作成現在分詞。

I am writing a letter. (我正在寫信。)

(2) **Past** (過去形)——用於表過去 (Past Tense).

I went to school. (我往學校裏去了。)

(3) **Past Participle** (過去分詞)——過去分詞的用法如下:——

(a) 與助動詞“have”結合,作完了形 (Perfect Tense).

I **have seen** him before. (我以前看到過他。)

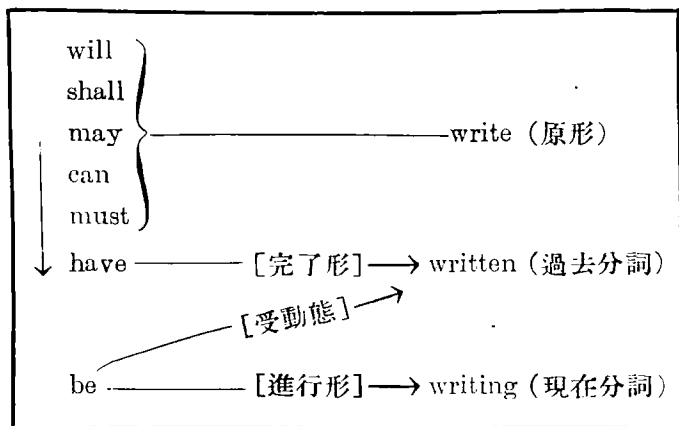
I **have never been** there. (那邊我從來不曾去過。)

(b) 與助動詞“be”結合,作受動態 (Passive Voice).

This book **was written** by him. (這本書是他寫的。)

今爲便於了解起見,將助動詞與本動詞的连接法列表於下:——

do	}	+ Root	ought to	}	+ Root		
will			need not				
shall			dare not				
may			}	+ Root	be +	{	Present Participle
can					Past Participle		
must					have +	Past Participle	



動詞依其活用之點,可分類如下。

(1) **Regular Verbs**——將“-ed”加於原形作過去及過去分詞者,叫做 Regular Verbs (規則動詞)。

(2) Irregular Verbs——作過去與過去分詞時，不依上項的規則者，叫做 Irregular Verbs (不規則動詞)。

(1) Regular Verbs (規則動詞)

1. 一般的形式: Root + "ed" = Past, Past Participle.

Root	Past	Past Participle
return (回)	returned	returned
paint (描)	painted	painted

2. 動詞的語尾最終一字為“e”時，只加一“d”字。

live (生)	lived	lived
like (歡喜)	liked	liked
love (愛)	loved	loved

3. 單音節的動詞，其語尾之前為短母音時，須將語尾重復，然後加“ed”。

stop (止)	stopped	stopped
beg (乞)	begged	begged
dip (浸)	dipped	dipped
pat (撫)	patted	patted

4. 雖為多音節的動詞，若 Accent 在第二音節而其語尾為子音時，亦須依照 3. 的規則。

admit' (允許)	admitted	admitted
occur' (發生)	occurred	occurred
prefer' (選)	preferred	preferred
transfer' (移)	transferred	transferred

但 Accent 在第一音節時，只加“ed”。

lim'it (限制)	limited	limited
con'quer (征服)	conquered	conquered

offer (提供)

offered

offered

5. 語尾爲“y”而其前面爲子音時，須將“y”變“i”再加“ed”。
但“y”之前若爲母音時只加“ed”。

cry (叫)

cried

cried

study (學)

studied

studied

try (試)

tried

tried

但：play (遊戲)

played

played

stay (留)

stayed

stayed

(2) Irregular Verbs (不規則動詞)

關於不規則動詞的變化，初學英語時只好呆記。幸而此種動詞，其不規則中尚有規則之點，得使初學者較易於記憶。今列舉於下：

(1) 過去及過去分詞之語尾爲t的。

(A)

原形	過去形	過去分詞
keep (保持)	kept	kept
sleep (眠)	slept	slept
creep (爬)	crept	crept
weep (泣)	wept	wept
sweep (掃)	swept	swept
meet (逢)	met	met
feel (感到)	felt	felt
kneel (跪)	knelt	knelt
deal (處理)	dealt (dɛlt)	dealt (dɛlt)
leap (跳)	leapt (ləpt) (or leaped)	leapt (ləpt) (or leaped)
leave (離去)	left	left
cleave (分裂)	cleft (or clove)	cleft (or cloven)
shoot (射)	shot	shot

lose (lōoz) (失)	lost	lost
mean (想, 存心)	meant (mēnt)	meant (mēnt)

以上原形的長母音 (ē, ō) 在過去及過去分詞中皆變為短母音 (ĕ, ɔ).

(B)

lend (貸)	lent	lent
rend (裂)	rent	rent
send (送)	sent	sent
spend (費)	spent	spent
bend (曲)	bent	bent
build (建)	built	built
gild (鍍金)	gilt	gilt

以上原形的語尾 d 在過去及過去分詞中皆變為 t.

(C)

catch (捕)	caught	caught
teach (教)	taught	taught
buy (買)	bought	bought
bring (拿)	brought	brought
think (想)	thought	thought
seek (尋)	sought	sought
beseech (懇求)	besought	besought
fight (戰)	fought	fought

以上的過去及過去分詞, 其結尾皆為 -aught, -ought.

(D)

get (得)	got	got
sit (坐)	sat	sat
spit (吐)	spat	spat

此三字由於母音的變化變成過去及過去分詞。

(2) 過去及過去分詞之語尾爲 **d** 者。

(E)

feed (飼)	fed	fed
lead (引導)	led	led
bleed (出血)	bled	bled
breed (養育)	bred	bred
read (讀)	read (rēd)	read (rēd)

此羣與 **A** 羣相同。原形之長音在過去及過去分詞中皆變爲短音。

(F)

have (有)	had	had
make (做)	made	made
flee (逃)	fled	fled
hear (hēr) (聞)	heard (hērd)	heard (hērd)
sell (賣)	sold	sold
tell (語)	told	told
hold (支持)	held	held
behold (見)	beheld	beheld
stand (立)	stood	stood

(G)

{ find (找見)	found	found
{ [found (建立)	founded	founded]
bind (縛)	bound	bound
{ wind (捲)	wound	wound
{ [wound (傷)	wounded	wounded]
grind (磨)	ground	ground

此羣中原形之 **i** 在過去及過去分詞中皆變爲 **ow**。

(3) 以母音變化爲主者。

(H)

spin (紡)	spun	spun
sting (刺)	stung	stung
swing (搖)	swung	swung
cling (纏)	clung	clung
wring (絞)	wrung	wrung
slink (偷逃)	slunk	slunk
{hang (掛)	hung	hung
{[hang (處絞刑)	hanged	hanged]
stick (附着)	stuck	stuck
strike (打)	struck	struck
dig (掘)	dug	dug

此羣中原形之 *i* (strike 爲 *i*) 在過去及過去分詞中皆變爲 *ü*. 但“hang”之原形爲例外。

(I)

begin (開始)	began	begun
sing (唱)	sang	sung
ring (鳴)	rang	rung
spring (跳)	sprang	sprung
drink (飲)	drank	drunk (or <i>drunken</i>)
sink (沈)	sank	sunk (or <i>sunken</i>)
swim (游泳)	swam	swum

此羣爲 *i* > *a* > *ü* 之變化。須注意不要與 H 羣相混。

[注意] “Drunken” 與 “sunken” 爲形容詞，例：——

A drunken fellow. (醉漢)

A sunken bell. (沈鐘)

(4) 過去分詞之語尾爲 n 或 en 者。

(J)

tear (扯)	tore	torn
{ bear (生)	bore	born
{ be·r (攜)	bore	borne
wear (着)	wore	worn
swear (誓)	swore	sworn

此羣爲 $\bar{a}r > \bar{o}r > \hat{o}rn$ 之變化。

(K)

speak (言)	spoke	spoken
steal (偷)	stole	stolen
weave (織)	wove	woven
{ cleave (分裂)	clove (or <i>cleft</i>)	cloven (or <i>cleft</i>)
{ [cleave (粘着)]	cleaved (or <i>clave</i>)	cleaved]
freeze (凍結)	froze	frozen
break (brāk) (破)	broke	broken
tread (tréd) (踏)	trod	trodden (or <i>trod</i>)
get (得)	got	got (gotten)
forget (忘記)	forgot	forgotten
swell (膨脹)	swelled	swollen (or <i>swelled</i>)
choose (選)	chose	chosen
awake (醒)	awoke	awaked
show (表示)	showed	shown
sow (播種)	sowed	sown
shine (發光)	shone	shone

[注意] “Get 之過去分詞爲 “got”, “gotten” 用於作 “ill-gotten” 等之形容詞。

此羣雖較爲雜亂，但過去與過去分詞有相同之母音這點，卻是一致的。

(L)

write (寫)	wrote	written
rise (起)	rose	risen
ride (乘)	rode	ridden
stride (踱)	strode	stridden (or <i>strid</i>)
drive (逐)	drove	driven (<i>driv'n</i>)
strive (努力)	strove	striven (<i>striv'n</i>)

此羣之母音變化爲 $i > \bar{o} > \bar{i}$.

(M)

bite (嚙)	bit	bitten (or <i>bit</i>)
hide (隱匿)	hid	hidden (or <i>hid</i>)
slide (滑走)	slid	slidden (or <i>slid</i>)

此羣之母音變化爲 $i > \bar{i} > \bar{i}$.

(N)

know (知道)	knew	known
blow (吹)	blew	blown
grow (生長)	grew	grown
throw (投)	threw	thrown
fly (飛)	flew	flown
draw (拉)	drew	drawn

此羣爲 $\bar{o} > \bar{o}\bar{o} > \bar{o}\bar{n}$ 之變化。

(O)

see (見)	saw	seen
eat (食)	ate (<i>ět</i>)	eaten
give (給)	gave	given
bid (囑咐)	bade (<i>bād</i>)	bidden
{ fall (倒下)	fell	fallen
{ [fell (倒)]	felled	felled]

take (取)	tōók	taken
forsake (捨棄)	forsook (fəsōók')	forsaken
shake (搖動)	shōók	shaken

此羣中之過去與原形，其母音有所不同；但過去分詞爲原形加 n 或 en.

(P)

win (勝)	won	won
slay (殺)	slew	slain
lie (躺)	lay	lain
	[lay (放)]	[laid]
be (是)	was, were	been
do (爲)	did	done
go (去)	went	gone
come (來)	came	come

以上爲最不規則之一羣。

(5) 原形，過去，過去分詞皆同形者。

(Q)

let (借出, 讓)	let	let
set (放置)	set	set
bet (賭)	bet	bet
shed (流)	shed	shed
spread (spréd) (擴張)	spread	spread
sweat (swěť) (流汗)	sweat	sweat
beat (bet) (打)	beat	beat
hit (打中)	hit	hit
knit (編)	knit	knit
split (裂)	split	split
cast (投)	cast	cast
cost (值)	cost	cost

cut (küt) (割)	cut	cut
put (pōót) (置)	put	put
hurt (傷)	hurt	hurt
burst (破裂)	burst	burst
thrust (推)	thrust	thrust

[注意] 有 Prefix (接頭語) 之動詞須以語根之變化為標準。

2. 人稱與數 (Person and Number)

Predicate Verb (述動詞) 卽 Finite Verb (有限動詞) 的人稱與數, 必須與主語一致, 這叫做 **Rule of Concord** (一致的法則)。

人稱有第一, 第二, 第三三種, 數有單數複數兩種; 與此相應, 照理動詞的變化似應有六種, 但實際上只有二種: (1) 第二人稱單數之主語 “thou” 在現在及過去時, 其動詞之語尾須附加 “(e)st”。(2) 第三人稱單數之主語 (he, she, it 及名詞) 在現在時, 其動詞之語尾須附加 “(e)s”。

但 “be” 為例外。其變化 Present Tense 時有四種, Past Tense 時有三種。今將 “see” 與 “be” 的變化列表於下:——

	Present	Past		Present	Past
I	see	saw	I	am	was
thou	seest	sawest	thou	art	wast
he	} sees	saw	he	} is	was
she					
it					
we	} see	saw	we	} are	were
you					
they					

[注意] (a) “Thou” 在現今的英語中已不用, 故通常英語中動詞有人稱與數的變化者, 只限於 ‘第三人稱單數現在’。

Our happiness and misery is due to our own actions (我們的幸不幸須看我們自己的行為如何。)

A needle and thread was found on the floor. (附有線的針在地板上找到了。)

Whose is this watch and chain? (這隻附有索鏈的錶是誰的?)

"Romeo and Juliet" was a play written by Shakespeare. (羅蜜歐與朱麗葉是莎士比亞著的一本戲劇。)

Time and tide waits for no man. (歲月不待人。)

The power and value of English Literature was thereby impaired.—
M. Arnold. (英文學之力量價值因此減損。)

My hope and heart is thine.—*Tennyson.* (我的全心是屬於你的。)

比較 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{The novelist and poet is dead.} \text{ (那個小說家而兼詩人的人死了。)[一人]} \\ \textit{The novelist and the poet are dead.} \text{ (那小說家和那詩人都死了。)[二人]} \end{array} \right.$

(3) 複數的主語表一個觀念時，動詞用單數形。

Fifty dollars a month is a large sum in our eyes, but it is nothing to him. (一個月五十元，在我們看起來是個大大的數目，但他卻不算怎麼一回事。)

Six months is too short a time to learn a language. (學一種國語，六個月是不夠的。)

A hundred miles is not a short distance. (一百哩並不是一個短短的距離。)

Three fourths of the earth's surface is water. (地球表面的四分之三是水。)

"Gulliver's Travels" was written by Swift. (格里佛遊記是史活夫特著的。)

[注意] “Fifty dollars” 為 “The sum of fifty dollars” 之意，乃用於表數量者；同樣，“Six months” 表示六個月的期間，“A hundred miles” 表百哩的距離，“Three fourths” 表四分之三的面積。

(4) 兩個以上的主語，雖以 “and” 連結，若每個名詞之前有 “each”，“every”，或 “no” 時，動詞須用單數形。

Each book and each paper was in its proper place. (一書一紙皆不混亂。)

Every hour and every minute is important. (一時一分皆屬重要。)

No sound and no voice was heard. (聲響全無。)

(5) 兩個以上的主語用“or”或“nor”連結起來時，動詞的數須依“or”或“nor”下面的主語而定。

Either you [are to go] or I am to go. (你或者我，非去一個不可。)

Either he [has to do it] or we have to do it. (或者他或者我們，這事非做不可。)

Neither you [are wrong] nor he is wrong. (你也不錯，他也不錯。)

He or his servants are to blame. (應該責備的是他或者他的僕人。)

Is either your father or your mother at home? (令尊或令堂在家嗎?)

Neither my father nor my mother is at home. (我的父母都不在家。)

[注意] 如欲避去此種構文，可將前面留着，後面略去。

Either he or I am to go = Either he is to go, or I am.

Neither you nor he is wrong = Neither you are wrong, nor is he.

(6) 兩個主語用“as well as”結合時，其動詞的人稱與數，與前面的主語一致。

You as well as he are wrong. (同他一樣，你也是錯的。)

He as well as we is guilty. (同我們一樣，他也是有罪的。)

The teacher, as well as the students, wishes for a holiday. (同學生一樣，先生也是希望放假的。)

(7) 兩個主語用(“not only . . . but also”)結合時，其動詞的人稱與數須與後面的主語一致。

Not only the students, but also the teacher wishes for a holiday. (不但學生，先生也是希望放假的。)

Not only his brother, but also his father is a fool. (不僅是他的兄弟，連他的父親也是一個傻子。)

[注意] 上項“A as well as B,”因以A為着眼點，B為點綴物，故動詞當然須與A一致。此項“not only A but also B,”適與之相反，其着眼點在於B，故動詞須與B一致。因此，若要把“as well as”的構文換為“not only . . . but also”的構文時，非將主語的順序顛倒不可。

{ His parents as well as he are very kind to me.
 { Not only he, but also his parents are very kind to me.

文法家中亦有將“not only . . . but also”看作爲與“and”相同而用複數形的動詞的。但 A as well as B = A and B 這見解，實屬錯誤。

Not only the house but also the garden are very fine. — *Brinkley*.
 (不但房屋，庭園也非常講究。)

(8) 主語爲羣集名詞(Noun of Multitude)時，動詞須用複數形。

比較 { My family is large. [集合名詞] (我的家族是大的。)
 { My family are all well. [羣集名詞] (我的家族裏面的人都安好。)
 { The number of the students has increased. [單數] (學生的數目如
 多了。)
 { A great number of (=many) students were present. [複數] (許多
 學生出席了。)

(9) “half”, “part”, “rest” 等字，依其表數或量的關係，動詞用複數或單數形。

Nearly one half of the inhabitants are Chinese. (居民的一半光景是中國人。)

Half of a circle is a semicircle. (圓之一半爲半圓。)

Part of the men were drowned. (其中一部分的人溺死了。)

Part of the money was stolen. (一部分的錢被偷去了。)

The rest of the water was thrown away. (其餘的水被傾去了。)

Frank and Mary were playing on the ice. The rest of us were at work within doors. (富蘭克與瑪利在冰上遊戲，其餘的人在家裏工作。)

Exercise XXX.

將適當的 to be 或 to have 填入下列文句中之空處(但須用現在形):—

1. A thousand dollars () a large sum.
2. A part of the class () absent.

3. A number of boys () come to the game
4. Each of them () present.
5. Already a train or two () arrived.
6. Either you or your brothers () expected.
7. Neither the master nor his pupils () idle.
8. A white and a gray rabbit () run across the field.
9. Not only the stars, but the moon () shining bright.
10. Bread and butter () a good kind of food.
11. Many a year () passed since then.
12. The black and white kitten () asleep.
13. I as well as they () tired of this work.
14. The man with his children () come.
15. Every tree and every bush () in bud.

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 亞美利加合衆國是共和國。
2. 母子兩人皆健全無恙。
3. 校長與教師皆不贊成此舉。
4. 潮水的漲退由於月之吸力。
5. 三天是不够夠的。
6. 動植物皆有寄生蟲。
7. 我的家族後面就來了。
8. 'Pickwick Papers' 是 Dickens 的處女作。

3. 態 (Voice)

1. 主語的動作及於其他事物時，其動詞爲 **Active Voice** (能動態)；反之，主語受其他事物的動作時，其動詞爲 **Passive Voice** (受動態)。

(1) A dog **bit** the boy. (犬咬孩兒。) [Active Voice]

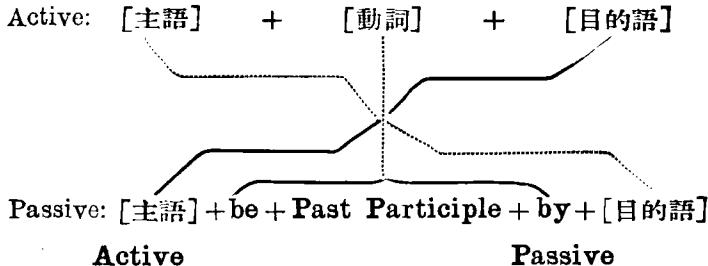
(2) The boy **was bitten** by a dog. (孩兒被犬所咬。) [Passive Voice]

上例中 (1) 的主語 “a dog”，因其動作（“咬”）及於孩兒身上，故爲 Active Voice；(2) 的主語 “the boy”，因其受犬咬的動作，故爲 Passive Voice。

2. Passive Voice 由 “be + Past Participle” 作成。

Active	Passive
love (愛)	be loved (被愛)
kill (殺)	be killed (被殺)
teach (教)	be taught (被教)

3. 由 Active Voice 變爲 Passive Voice 時，須 (1) 將 Active Voice 的目的語作爲主語，(2) 加前置詞 “by” 於 Active 的主語之前，將原有的主語作目的語，(3) 動詞用 be + Past Participle 的形式。



All love him. (人皆愛他。)

He wrote this book. (他寫了這本書。)

He will punish me. (他將責罰我。)

He has caught a thief. (他捉了一個賊。)

He is loved by all. (他被一切人所愛。)

This book was written by him. (這本書是他所寫的。)

I shall be punished by him. (我將被他責罰。)

A thief has been caught by him. (賊被他捉住了。)

[注意] 1. 古時亦有用 “of” 代 “by” 者。現今 “be beloved” 之次尙用 “of” (請注意此動詞只用於 Passive)。

He is loved by all.
 He is beloved of (or by) all. } (他被一切人所愛。)

2. 英語中多有以無生物作行爲者 (Agent) 而成爲他動詞的主語的。

{ Active:—A falling tile killed the child.
 { Passive:—The child was killed by a falling tile.

4. 作 Passive 時, 應注意之點甚多, 今列舉於下。

(a) Active Voice 之主語若爲 “people”, “they”, “you”, “we” 等意味漠然或無關重要的詞時, Passive 文中, 主語通常可以略去。

{ People say that he is rich. (人說他有錢。) [A.]

{ It is said (by them) that he is rich. [P.]

{ They export a great deal of silk every year. [A.]

{ (每年有多量的絲輸出。)

{ A great deal of silk is exported every year. [P.]

{ You must speak English in class. (教室中須講英語。) [A.]

{ English must be spoken in class. [P.]

{ We named the dog “Pochi”. (我們給犬取名 “Pochi”.) [A.]

{ The dog was named “Pochi”. [P.]

{ Some one blew out the candle. (有人把燭吹熄了。) [A.]

{ The candle was blown out. [P.]

(b) 作爲動詞 (Factitive Verb) 變受動態時, 其原來的 Objective Complement 卽成爲 Subjective Complement.

{ They elected him chairman. (他們選他爲議長。) [A.]

{ He was elected chairman. [P.]

{ He made her happy. (他使她幸福。) [A.]

{ She was made happy. [P.]

(c) 授與動詞 (Dative Verb) 因有兩個目的語, 故受動態亦有兩種。可將直接目的語作爲主語, 亦可將間接目的語作爲主語。

{ He gave me this book. (他送了我這本書。)[A.]
 { I was given this book (by him). } [P.]
 { This book was given me (by him). }

{ The king granted him a pension for life. (王賜了他終身的恩給金。)[A.]
 { A pension for life was granted him. } [P.]
 { He was granted a pension for life. }

[注意] 將 Dative Verb 變爲 Passive 時,其殘留的 Object 叫做 Retained Object (保留目的)。

(d) 自動詞在性質上並無 Passive, 但自動詞與前置詞結合而成爲一種合成他動詞時,可變爲 Passive. 諸君須注意,此種動詞變 Passive 時,前置詞不宜省去。

{ They laughed at me. (他們譏笑了我。)[A.]
 { I was laughed at. [P.]

{ You can not rely upon him. (他這人是靠不住的。)[A.]
 { He can not be relied upon. [P.]

{ The motor-car run over a girl. (汽車軋死了一個女孩子。)[A.]
 { A girl was run over by the motor-car. [P.]

(e) 由他動詞 + 目的語 + 前置詞, 或動詞 + 副詞 + 前置詞而成的合成他動詞(即 Phrase Verb 成句動詞)變 Passive 時,須將前置詞的目的語作爲主語;但前置詞必須保留。

{ They take care of us. (他們照顧我們。)[A.]
 { We were taken care of (by them). [P.]

{ Let us do away with all ceremony. (讓我們廢去一切禮節吧。)[A.]
 { Let all ceremony be done away with. [P.]

(f) 自動詞有 Cognate Object 而轉用作他動詞時,亦可變 Passive.

{ They run a race. (他們賽了一次跑。)[A.]
 { A race was run by them. [P.]

{ They fought a good fight. (他們好好地戰了一場。)[A.]
 { A good fight was fought by them. [P.]

(g) 將動詞的 Root (原形) 作為目的補足語的文句改為 Passive Voice 時, Root 前面須加以 “to” 而成為普通的不定詞 (Infinitive).

{ We heard her sing. (我們聽了她唱歌。)[A.]
 { She was heard to sing. [P.]

{ They saw him dance. (他們看見他跳舞。)[A.]
 { He was seen to dance. [P.]

{ We made him confess it. (我們叫他自白。)[A.]
 { He was made to confess it. [P.]

(h) 將命令法變 Passive 時, 須用 “let”.

{ Do it at once. (立刻就做。)[A.]
 { Let it be done at once. [P.]

{ Learn this poem by heart. (把這詩暗記起來。)[A.]
 { Let this poem be learnt by heart. [P.]

(i) “To know” 的 Passive 為 “to be known”; 但表行為者 (Agent) 的前置詞不用 “by” 而用 “to”. “To be known by” 為 “因了... 而被知道” 之意。

{ Everybody knows him. (人都知道他。)[A.]
 { He is known to everybody. [P.]

{ I know him very well. (我很知道他。)[A.]
 { He is very well known to me. [P.]

A man is known by the company he keeps. (人之如何, 依其所交之朋友可以明白。)

(j) Active 的動詞中附有助動詞者, 變 Passive Voice 時, 將 “be” 或 “been” 放在本動詞之過去分詞前面即可。助動詞大抵可照原形使用; 但 “will” 與 “shall” 須依人稱的不同而有變更, “have” 與 “has” 亦須依照人稱及數而定。

- { You need not do it. (你不必做牠。)[A.]
 { It must not be done by y u. [P.]
 { He must have done it. (他一定做了這個。)[A.]
 { It must have been done by him. [P.]
 { We shall soon know it. (我們不久就可以明白牠。)[A.]
 { It will soon be known. [P.]
 { I will do it. (我要做這個。)[A.]
 { It shall be done. [P.]
 { They have opened the gate. (他們把門開了。)[A.]
 { The gate has been opened. [P.]

(k) 變 Passive Voice 時，表動詞的行爲者 (Agent) 用 “by”，表器具用 “with”；但動詞中亦有在有生物之前用 “by”，無生物之前用 “with” 者。

He was killed { by his enemy. (行爲者)
 { with a sword. (器具)

He was killed by the robber with a sword. (他被強盜用刀殺死了。)

- { be seized by some people. [有生物]
 { be seized with an illness, a panic, &c. [無生物]
 { be attended by one's servants. [有生物]
 { be attended with danger, pain, &c. [無生物]
 { be attacked by the enemy. [有生物]
 { be attacked with some disease. [無生物]
 { be struck by a person. [有生物]
 { be struck with terror or wonder. [無生物]

Exercise XXXI.

變換下列各文句的 Voice:—

1. Many books have been written by him.
2. what do you call it?

3. Sugar is sold at that store.
4. The Emperor speaks of him in high terms.
5. You must attend to this business at once.
6. He will forgive your faults.
7. You must take good care of the book.
8. He told us many stories.
9. The boys laughed at me.
10. The milk was drunk up by the cat.
11. The wind blew away the flags.
12. His father gave him a dollar.
13. English is taught in that school.
14. They think him a great scholar.
15. Everybody knows him.

III. 時 制 (Tense)

動詞表狀態或動作的時間時，其形有種種不同，這叫做 **Tense** (時制)。Tense 有以下十二種。

(a) **Primary Tenses** (基本時制):——

- (1) **Present** (現在)
- (2) **Past** (過去)
- (3) **Future** (未來)

(b) **Perfect Tenses** (完了時制):——

- (4) **Present Perfect** (現在完了)
- (5) **Past Perfect** (過去完了)
- (6) **Future Perfect** (未來完了)

(c) **Progressive Tenses** (進行時制):——

- (7) **Progressive Present** (進行形現在)
- (8) **Progressive Past** (進行形過去)
- (9) **Progressive Future** (進行形未來)

(10) *Progressive Present Perfect* (進行形現在完了)

(11) *Progressive Past Perfect* (進行形過去完了)

(12) *Progressive Future Perfect* (進行形未來完了)

時制的作法 (Formation of the Tenses)

Present Tense 用活用 (Conjugation) 部所述的原形。但在第三人稱單數時，原形的語尾後加“(e)s”。

Past Tense 用活用部所述的過去形。

Future Tense 由原形前加以助動詞“shall”或“will”而成。

三種 *Perfect Tenses* 由助動詞“have”的現在，過去，未來加過去分詞而成。

六種 *Progressive Tenses* 由助動詞“be”的現在，過去，未來，及三種完了形加現在分詞而成。

今以“to teach”一他動詞為例，舉其時制於下：——

	Primary	Progressive
Present	I teach	I am teaching
Past	I taught	I was teaching
Future	I shall teach	I shall be teaching
	Perfect	Progressive
Pres. Perfect	I have taught	I have been teaching
Past Perfect	I had taught	I had been teaching
Fut. Perfect	I shall have taught	I shall have been teaching

又以受動態“*To be taught*”為例，舉其時制如下：

	Primary	Progressive
Present	I am taught	I am being taught
Past	I was taught	I was being taught
Future	I shall be taught	—
	Perfect	Progressive
Pres. Perfect	I have been taught	—
Past Perfect	I had been taught	—
Fut. Perfect	I shall have been taught	—

“To be” 爲自動詞，無受動態與進行形，故 Tense 只有六個；但因人稱的關係，其變化較爲複雜。

	Primary Tense	Perfect Tense
Present	I am We are	I have been We have been
	You are You are	You have been You have been
	He is They are	He has been They have been
Past	I was We were	I had been We had been
	You were You were	You had been You had been
	He was They were	He had been They had been
Future	I shall be We shall be	I shall have been We shall have been
	You will be You will be	You will have been You will have been
	He will be They will be	He will have been They will have been

“To have” 的本動詞與助動詞 “have” 結合時，初學者須注意不要混淆。

	Primary	Progressive
Present	I have	I am having
Past	I had	I was having
Future	I shall have	I shall be having
	Perfect	Progressive
Pres. Perfect	I have had	I have been having
Past Perfect	I had had	I had been having
Fut. Perfect	I shall have had	I shall have been having

1. 現在 (Present)

Present Tense 的用法如下。

(1) 用於表一般的真理 (general truth).

The sun **shines** by day, and the moon by night. (太陽日裏發光, 月亮夜裏發光。)

Two and two **make** four. (二加二成四。)

Honesty **is** the best policy. (正直爲最上之策。)

(2) 用於表常習的動作 (habitual actions). 要而言之, 即爲人的習慣, 性格, 才能, 職業等。因此四種皆屬於人類日常的行動。

He **rises** early (=he is an early riser). (他早起。)[習慣]

He **drinks** much (=he is a great drinker). (他很會飲酒。)[習慣]

He **keeps** his word (=he is a man of his word). (他守約。)[性格]

He **tells** a lie (=he is a liar). (他說謊。)[性格]

He **swims** well (=he is a good swimmer). (他善游泳。)[才能]

He **writes** a good style (=he is a good writer). (他文章寫得好。)[才能]

He **teaches** English (=he is a teacher of English). (他教英語。)[職業]

He **deals** in rice (=he is a dealer in rice). (他做米生意。)[職業]

(3) 表現在的狀態及動作。但大多數的動詞表現在的動作 (present action) 時, 用進行形, 請參照下節。

He is ill. (他病着。)

He knows English. (他知道英語。)

I see a ship in the distance. (我看到遠處有一隻船。)

I hear a noise. What can it be? (我聽到一種聲音。不知是什麼?)

(4) 作未來的代用——表‘來去’, ‘出發’, ‘到着’的動詞與表未來的副詞同用時, Present Tense 可代用作 Future Tense.

When do you leave? (你什麼時候動身走?)

I am off to-morrow; my brother goes too. (我明天走, 我的兄弟也同去。)

The ship sails on Saturday. (船星期六開。)

He returns next week. (他下星期回來。)

School recommences on January 8th. (一月八日開學。)

(5) “If”, “when”, “while”, “before”, “after”, “till” 等接續詞所引導的表條件或時間的副詞短句 (Adverb Clause) 中, Present Tense 代用作 Future Tense.

We shall not go to Ningpo if it rains to-morrow. (明天若下雨, 我們不到寧波去。)

I will buy a book when I have money. (有錢的時候我們要買一本書。)

We must wait till he comes. (我們必須要等到他來為止。)

You must finish it before you go out. (在你出去以前你必須把牠做好。)

I will take care of your children while you are away. (你不在家的時候我願意照顧你的孩子們。)

I will let you know as soon as I hear from him. (一等到他有信息我就通知你)

The earlier he comes, the better. (他來得愈早愈好。)

【注意】此種 Adverbial Clause 中, 必用 Present Tense 代 Future Tense; 但在 Noun Clause 中表未來的意味時, 卻仍須用 Future Tense.

I will let you know when I arrive there. (副詞短句)

(我到了那邊就通知你吧。)

I will let you know when I shall arrive there. (名詞短句)

(什麼時候我到那邊去，我來通知你吧。)

I shall tell him if he comes. (副詞短句)

(他如果來，我告訴他。)

I shall ask if he will come to-morrow. (名詞短句)

(我去問問他明天來不來。)

但此種 Adverb Clause 中若表意志時，須用 “will”。

I shall be happy if you will come. (若你肯來，我是歡喜的。)

I shall be glad if you will do so. (若你願意這樣做，我是高興的。)

(6) 作過去的代用——敘述過去的事件，欲將該事件活現在讀者的眼前時，用 Present Tense。這叫做 **Historical Present** (歷史的現在)。

Caesar leaves Gaul, crosses the Rubicon, and enters Italy with 5,000 men. (該撒離了高爾，渡過盧皮孔河，率了五千兵士進入意大利。)

A step is heard; the rescued man stands by his own fireside. With a cry of wild joy the mother rushes forward and falls into his arms. (足步的聲音聽到了；被救的男子立在他自家的爐邊。母親發出狂喜的喊聲衝上前去，投身在他的臂中。)

(7) 作現在完了的代用。但此種用法，只限於 hear, read, say, tell, see, write, prophesy 等動詞。

I hear (=people say) he is going to resign his post. (聽說他要辭職了。)

I am told (=they tell me) that he is a good scholar. (人說他是個學者。)

He says he is coming this evening. (他說今天晚上來的。)

I read (or see) in the papers that you have been promoted. (我報上看到了你高昇的事情。)

Father writes to say that he can not come. (父親寫信來說不能回來了。)

Franklin says, “Diligence is the mother of good luck”. (富蘭克林說“勤勉爲幸運之母”。)

2. 進行形現在 (Progressive Present)

進行形現在由 “to be” 的現在形加現在分詞而成。

現在分詞 (Present Participle) 爲動詞的 Root 加上 -ing 之形，但

(a) 語尾最終爲 “e” 時，須將 “e” 略去。

hope (希望)——hoping come (來)——coming
take (取)——taking admire (讚嘆)——admiring

(b) 單母音動詞的語尾前面爲短母音時，須將語尾重複。

dip (浸)——dipping stop (停止)——stopping
drop (落)——dropping swim (游泳)——swimming

(c) 二音節的動詞，若語尾有 accent 而語尾前爲短母音時，亦須將語尾重複。

begin' (開始)——beginning
occur' (發生)——occurring
比較：lim'it——limiting; suf'fer——suffering

(d) 語尾的 -ie 變 y 及 -c 變 ck 者。

lie (橫)——lying die (死)——dying
picnic (遊山)——picnicking
traffic (買賣)——trafficking

1. 進行形現在用於表現在進行中的動作。

What are you doing? (你在做什麼?)

I am writing a letter to my father. (我正在寫一封給我父親的信。)

[注意] 所謂現在進行中的動作者，不僅指‘此瞬間’，‘此刻’，即‘目前’，‘現今’等的意味亦含在裏邊。

He is writing a novel. (目前他正在寫小說。)

今爲便於區別起見，將單純現在與進行形現在對照舉例於下。

Present

He writes well. (他文章寫得好)
Mr. A teaches English in this school. (A 先生在這校教英語)

Progressive Present

He is writing a letter. (他正在寫信。)
But Mr. B is teaching in his place now. (但 B 先生如今正在替他代教着。)

2. “Open”, “start”, “die” 等動詞，因表瞬間的行動而無繼續的觀念，故其進行形現在只表動作的開始，即‘將如何如何’之意。

The invalid is dying. (病人快要死了。)

The train is starting. (火車快要開了。)

The flowers are opening. (花正要開了。)

3. “Come”, “go”, “start”, “leave” 等表‘往來’‘出發’‘到着的’動詞，其進行形現在表示未來 (Future) 之意；但常常和表未來的副詞連用。

When are you going to America? (你幾時到美國去?)

Are you coming to-morrow? (你明天來嗎?)

When are you leaving? (你幾時動身?)

I am leaving the day after to-morrow. (我後天動身。)

比較(1) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I go to school every day. (我每天往學校裏去。)[習慣的行動]} \\ \text{I am going to school now. (我現在正往學校裏去。)[動作進行中]} \\ \text{I am going to Shanghai to-morrow. (我明天往上海去。)[未來之動作]} \end{array} \right.$

比較(2) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He leaves Shanghai to-morrow morning. (他明朝離上海。)} \\ \text{I am going to the theatre to-night. (我今晚到戲館裏去。)} \end{array} \right. \text{[未來]}$

比較(3) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Where are you going? (你往那裏去?)[現在]} \\ \text{When are you going? (你幾時去?)[未來]} \end{array} \right.$

4. **To be + going + Infinitive** 爲‘正想如何如何做’之意，用於表眼前的未來，故叫做 **Immediate Future**。

I am going to send him a telegram. (我就想打一個電報給他。)

What are you going to do? (你想做什麼?)

I am going to write a letter. (我正要寫一封信。)

比較 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He writes well. (他文章寫得好。)[現在]} \\ \text{He is writing a letter. (他正在寫信。)[進行形現在]} \\ \text{He is going to write a letter. (他正要想寫一封信。)[未來]} \end{array} \right.$

5. 進行形現在亦有與“always”, “constantly”等副詞用在一起而表示常習者。

He *is always* grumbling and complaining. (他老是喃喃不平。)

I *am constantly* forgetting people's names. (我儘管要忘記人的名字。)

[注意] “To forget”除以上之用例以外，通常不用進行形。

無進行形的動詞 (Verbs without the Progressive Form)

動詞中的缺少進行形者。

(1) **Verbs of Continuous State** (繼續狀態的動詞)——動詞中表‘存在’，‘所有’及其他本來含有繼續的性質者，無進行形。請比較：

{ He *is sitting* by the fire. (他在火爐邊坐着。)
He *resembles* his father. (他像他的父親。)

上例中第一句可用進行形現在，第二句只能用單純現在。原來“to sit”為‘動作’的動詞，可依人的意志而行；如此刻正坐着，過片刻之後，或立或臥皆可隨意，故述一時候“to sit”動作的進行中時，可用進行形。但“to resemble”與“to sit”不同，仍是‘狀態’的動詞，本來含有繼續的性質，不能隨人的意志而行。如說‘他像他的父親’，則他必須永遠像他的父親；若說不像他的父親，則亦必須永遠不像他的父親，斷無現在相像過一回兒就不像的道理，故不能用進行形。

今略舉此類的動詞於下。

He *is* a teacher of English. (他是個英語教師。)

He *lives* somewhere about Nanking Road. (他住在南京路一帶的地方。)

The school *stands* on the hill. (學校在山上。)

He **has** a good physique. (他有好的體格——他的體格好。)

He **possesses** great wealth. (他擁有巨財。)

The two flowers **resemble** in shape. (兩朵花的形狀相似。)

[注意] (a) 'to live' 作 '生存' 的意味時，可用 'living,' 與形容詞 'alive' 同意

比較 { Is he still **living**? (他還活着嗎?)
Where does he **live**? (他住在那裏?)

(b) "To stand" 作 "to be" (在) 的意味解時，不能用進行形，但表 '存續' 之意時，可用進行形。

比較 { Is the house still **standing**? (房子還在嗎?)
Where does it **stand**? (在什麼地方?)

(c) 房子造成之後，就永久照此存在，故無用 "standing" 之必要；但對於能立能坐之物，可用進行形。

比較 { The house **stands** on the hill. (房子在山上。)
The man **is standing** on the rock. (那人立在岩石上面。)

又 { The field **lies** across the river. (田野橫在河對岸。)
The cow **is lying** on the grass. (牛躺在草上。)

(d) "To have" 作 "to take", "to eat" 等的意味解時，可用進行形。

He **is having** (= *is eating*) his supper. (他正在吃夜飯。)

He **is having** (= *is taking*) his bath. (他正在洗澡。)

(2) 不隨意動詞 (Verbs of Involuntary Actions):—

(a) Perception (知覺)——即 '見', '聞' 等映於吾人感官的自然現象。此種現象皆出於必然，決非吾人的意志所能左右。譬如各種聲音，不論人喜聽與否，當發出時，必傳入人耳，故 '聞' 為不隨意動作。此種動詞，實際上可以看做存在動詞 "be" 的變體，所以也不用進行形。如

I **see** a book on the table. (我看見一本書在桌上。)

這一句，其意味與

There **is** a book on the table. (桌上有一本書。)

相等，故決無 “I am seeing...” 的用法。

今舉此類動詞的主要者於下。

I **see** some birds on the tree. (我看見樹上有好幾隻鳥。)

I **hear** them singing. (我聽到他們歌唱着。)

I **smell** something nice. (我嗅到某種氣味美好的東西。)

I do not **notice** any difference between the two. (兩者中我看不出有什麼差異。)

(b) Emotion (感情)——感情的動詞如‘愛’，‘憎’等，亦為自然的現象，非人的意志所能左右，故此種動詞亦無進行形。

He **loves** her. (他愛她。)

I **hate** band-music. (我討厭樂隊的音樂。)

The students **fear** that teacher. (學生怕那個先生。)

I **like** apples. (我歡喜蘋果。)

(c) Knowledge (知識)——知識的動詞如‘知道’，‘記得’等，亦不能為意志所左右，我們決不能將已知道的事情，強迫使之忘去，故此種動詞亦不能用進行形。

He **knows** English. (他知道英語。)

I **remember** him very well. (我很記得他。)

[注意] (a) “To see”, “to hear” 實為“看到”，“聽到”之意，乃無意志的動作；但“to look at”, “to listen to”為“看”，“聽”之意，乃含有意志的動作，故可用進行形。

比較 { What do you see? (你看見什麼?)
What are you looking at? (你在看什麼東西?)

比較 { What do you hear? (你聽到什麼?)
Are you listening to me? (你聽着我的說話嗎?)

但“see”, “hear”作其他特殊的意味用時，可用進行形。

The authorities **are seeing** into the matter. (當局者正在事件調查中。)

The judge **is hearing** the case. (裁判官正在事件審問中。)

(b) “To know” 因其為狀態動詞，故無進行形；但 “to learn” 則為動作動詞，故有進行形。

比較 { Do you know English? (你知道英語嗎?)
 { Are you learning English? (你正在學英語嗎?)

Exercise XXXII.

將下列文句譯成英文：——

- (1) 那個孩子棒球打得很好。
- (2) 聽說校長要辭職了。
- (3) 他做什麼生意的?
- (4) 明天如果天氣好，我同你一塊兒去吧。
- (5) 你幾時出洋?
- (6) 一等到哥哥歸國之後就走。
- (7) 哥哥今年年底將從美國回來。
- (8) 他的兒子是做官的。

3. 過去 (Past)

Past Tense 用於敘述過去的狀態或動作，與現在的情形無關。

He died last year. (他去年死了。)

He entered this school four years ago. (四年前他進了這學校。)

He was born in 1880. (他生於 1880 年。)

Present Tense 可用以表平常的習慣，但 Past Tense 不能表過去的習慣。表過去時候的習慣時須用 “used to”, “would”, “was accustomed to” 等。

He would come every day. (他常是每天來的。)

He used to drink when young. (青年時他常常飲酒。)

He was in the habit of doing so. (他老是這樣做的。)

[注意] “Would” 用於表過去的習慣時，大抵與 “often”, “sometimes” 等副詞同用。

4. 進行形過去 (Progressive Past)

表某個過去時候進行中的動作時，用進行形過去。

I was reading a nove when you came. (當你來的時候我正在讀小說。)

He was writing a novel at that time. (那時候他正在寫一篇小說。)

5. 未來 (Future)

Future Tense 用於表未來之事情。

I am afraid it will rain to-morrow. (明天怕要下雨呢。)

We shall learn geometry next year. (來年我們將要學幾何。)

表未來的主要助動詞爲“will”與“shall”。關於此兩詞的用法，我們將另設一項詳述之。但除此二詞以外，Future Tense 尙有其他之表示法，今略舉於下。

(1) Present Tense (請參照該項)

The steamer leaves here to-morrow. (輪船明天由此地開。)

(2) Progressive Present (請參照該項)

When are you going to Shanghai? (你幾時到上海去?)

(3) Be going + Infinitive. (請參照進行形現在項)

I am going to write a letter. (我正要寫一封信。)

(4) Be about + Infinitive.

He is about to start on a journey. (他正要出發旅行。)

(5) To be + Infinitive. (意爲‘就得’，‘應該’)

We are to have an examination on Wednesday. (禮拜三我們就要考試。)

6. 進行形未來 (Progressive Future)

表未來某時候進行中的動作時，用進行形未來。

I shall be waiting for you at the station to-morrow morning. (明天早晨我將在火車站裏等待着你。)

He will be teaching if you go now. (如果你現在去，他將正在教書。)

“Shall” and “Will”

“Shall” 與 “will” 雖皆用於表示未來，但卻有兩種區別。

1. Non-Volitional Futurity (無意志未來)——即不能為人的意志所左右的單純未來 (Simple Futurity)。

2. Volitional Futurity (意志未來)——即含有 Speaker (發言者) 或 Subject (主語) 的意志的未來。

“Shall” 原來為 “to owe” (負) 之意，含有 Obligation (義務) 或 Necessity (必要) 等觀念。

I shall 第一人稱的 “shall,” 即依照原來的意義而用，如說 “I shall go,” 便是 “I owe (or ought) to go” 或 “I am obliged to go” 之意；換言之

$$I \text{ shall go} = \begin{cases} \text{it is my duty to go.} \\ \text{it is necessary for me to go.} \end{cases}$$

意為 “go” 的行為非出於自己的意志，乃由於‘義務’，‘必要’等外來的力而行的。

“Will” 原來為 “to wish” (願) 之意，含有 Volition (意志) 的觀念。

I will 第一人稱之 “will,” 即含有意志的觀念，用以表 Determination (決心) 或 Intention (意向) 等自己的意志。

I will go { I am determined to go.
 { I intend to go.

You shall **He shall** 第二人稱與第三人稱的“shall,”亦含有義務或必要之意。如“*You shall go*,”“*He shall go*”的“*go*,”其行動非出於“*you*”或“*he*”的意志,乃表示“*go*”的行為由於義務或必要等外來的力,故與“*I shall*”同,Subject 本身並無意志。但有一點卻須注意,即“*you shall*,”“*he shall*”之所謂外來的力者,不外乎就是 **Speaker's Volition** (發言者的意志)。如:

You shall go=*I will let (or make) you go.*

He shall go=*I will let (or make) him go.*

You will **He will** “*You will*”與“*he will*”有兩種用法:

1. **Non-Volitional Futurity** (無意志未來)——第二人稱,第三人稱表無意志的未來時,用“*will*”.此種用法一見似與“*will*”原來之意義相反,但實際因為說他人(即第二,第三人稱)的事,似宜客氣一點,故雖非意志之力所可左右的未來,亦看作是出於人的意志一般,而用“*will*”.其實,“*you will*,”“*he will*”與“*I shall*”無異,為純粹之無意志未來。如:

You will succeed. (你將成功。)

He will succeed. (他將成功。)

2. **Subject's Volition** (主語的意志)——但“*you will*,”“*he will*”亦有照“*will*”原來的意義而用作表示主語即“*you*”或“*he*”的意志的。此種“*you will*,”“*he will*,”概用於表請求,好意,約束等。

I hope you will do your duty. (我希望你肯盡你的職務。)

You will please not do so again. (下次請你不要再這樣子做。)

I beg he will stay. (我懇求他留在此地。)

If you will grant my request, I shall be much obliged to you. (如果你肯答應我的要求,我是非常感激你的。)

Tell your master that **he will** please come up to the telephone. (對你主人說一聲,請他來聽電話。)

[注意] 以上“you will...”等的“will”,實可看作爲疑問形“will you...”的變體。

今總括以上所說,列表於下。

	Non-Volition	Speaker's Volition	Subject's Volition
1st Person	I shall	I will	I will
2nd Person	You will	You shall	You will
3rd Person	He will	He shall	He will

(1) 無意志未來 (Non-Volitional Futurity)

“I shall”, “You will”, “He will”

無意志未來形與無意志動詞 (Non-Volitional Verb) 結合時,用以表示與自己的意志全無關係,即由於外來的力所決定的未來(成功,失敗等非自己的意志所可左右的動詞,叫做無意志動詞)。

(a) **Necessity** (必要):—

- { I shall need some fifty dollars on the last day of the month. (本月底我
日我需要五十元光景的錢。)
- { You will need more money if you are not more careful. (如果你不更
留心一點你就會需要更多的錢呢。)
- { If he fails this time, he will have to give up school. (如果他這次落第,
他就非停學不可了。)

(b) **Ability** (能力):—

- { If all goes well, I shall be able to pay you at the end of the month.
(如果一切順利地進行,那麼本月底就能把錢付還給你了。)
- { If you work hard, you will soon be able to read any book you like
(如果你起勁用功,那麼不久你就能讀無論那一本你所歡喜的書了。)

(c) **Emotion** (感情):——

{ I shall be very glad to see you. (看到你我將非常歡喜。)
 { Your parents will be delighted to hear of your success. (你的父母聽到了你的成功將感到心裏高興。)

(d) **Expectation** (期待):——

{ I hope I shall succeed this time. (我希望這次我會成功。)
 { I am afraid you will fail again. (我恐怕你還是要失敗的。)

“I shall” 亦有與意志動詞 (Volitional Verb) 連用者。但此種用法，全無意志的觀念含在裏面，只表義務，豫定，自然的結果等單純的未來。

(a) **Duty** (義務):——

I can not go with you, for I shall go to school to-morrow. (我不能和你同去，因我明天是要到學校裏去的。)

(b) **Pre-arrangement** (豫定):——

I shall go to Ningpo on Saturday. (星期六我要到寧波去。)

比較 { I will go. (我決心要去。)
 { I shall go. (我是要去的。)
 { I must go. (我非去不可。)

(c) **Natural Result** (自然的結果):——

{ If I work too hard, I shall kill myself (=I shall die). (倘使我勤勞過度，我就會死去。)
 { If you work too hard, you will kill yourself (=you will die). (倘使你勤勞過度，你就會死去。)

比較 { I will kill myself = I will commit suicide. (我要自殺了。)[意志的行動]
 { I shall kill myself. (因..., 我將弄死了我自己。)[自然的結果]

(d) **Passive (受動)**.——

{If I am late, I shall be punished. (倘使我遲了,我就要受責罰。)

{If you do your duty, you will be rewarded. (倘使你盡職,你就會得報。)

(2) **意志未來 (Volitional Futurity)**

“I will”, “You shall”, “He shall”

1. 第一人稱的 “will” 與意志動詞 (Volitional Verb) 結合起來, 有以下種種用法 (如 “try”, “give”, “tell”, “lend” 等能以自己的意志左右的動詞叫做意志動詞)。

(a) **Choice (選擇)**:——

If you will take that one, I will take this one. (如果你取那個, 那麼我取這個。)

(b) **Resolution (決心)**:——

I will accomplish my purpose at any cost. (無論如何我要達到我的目的。)

(c) **Threat (威嚇)**:——

I will kill you. (我要殺死你。)

(d) **Consent (承諾)**:——

Will you do this for me?—Of course, I will. (你肯給我做這個嗎?——當然可以。)

(e) **Promise (約束)**:——

I will pay you at the end of the month. (我月底付你。)

(f) **Offer (提供)**:——

I will lend you any sum you may need. (不論你要多少錢我可以借你。)

2. 第二人稱第三人稱的 “shall”, 表 Speaker 的意志支配主語的行爲, 其裏面必含有 “I will”。

You shall = I will let (or make) you.

He shall = I will let (or make) him.

(a) **Permission** (許可) or **Promise** (約束):—

You shall (=I will let you) do so if you wish to. (如果你想這樣做,就讓你這樣做吧。)

He shall (=I will let him) live. (讓他活吧。——救了他的命吧。)

They shall not (=I will not let them) want as long as I live. (我活着的時候,總使他們一切如意。)

(b) **Compulsion** (強制) or **Threat** (威嚇):—

You shall (=I will make you) do so whether you will or not. (不論你情願與否,總要叫你這樣做。)

You shall (=I will make you) smart for those words. (你說這種話,我要給你嘗點鹹淡的味道。)

He shall (=I will make him) die. (要他死。)

(c) **Prohibition** (禁止):—

You shall not (=I will not allow you to) set foot in this house again. (不許你再跨進這房子裏來。)

No man shall leave the room without my permission. (不得我的允許,誰也不許離去這房間。)

3 “**You shall**”, “**he shall**” 與 **Passive Verb** 結合時, **Speaker** 不但支配主語的行爲,且有參與該行爲的作用。

You shall be rewarded=I will reward you. (我要報答你。)

He shall be punished=I will punish him. (我要罰他。)

4. 動詞不但在形式上,即由本來的性質上看起來,亦有一種含 **Passive Meaning** (受動的意味)的動詞,此種動詞的意義,與含有 **Causative Meaning** (使役的意味)的動詞的 **Passive** (受動)相等。

例如 “**see**”即爲含有 **Passive Meaning** 的動詞,有“**be shown**”的意味,而“**be shown**”即爲有 **Causative Meaning** 的動詞“**show**”(=let see) 的 **Passive** (受動形):—

Causative Meaning

make (做)	(=let be)
give (給)	(=let have)
show (示)	(=let see)
tell (講)	(=let hear)
inform (通知)	(=let know)
spare (饒命)	(=let live)
kill (殺)	(=let die)
send (遣)	(=let go)
bring (帶了來)	(=let come)

Passive Meaning

(be made=)	be (成爲)
(be given=)	have (得, 有)
(be shown=)	see (見)
(be told=)	hear (聽)
(be informed=)	know (知道)
(be spared=)	live (活)
(be killed=)	die (死)
(be sent=)	go (去)
(be brought=)	come (來)

“You shall”, “he shall” 與此種 Passive Meaning 的動詞連用時, 即等於 “I will” 加 Causative Meaning 的動詞。

You shall have = I will let you have.

You shall be given = I will give you.

You shall be (= I will make you) my companion of my travels. (我要使你作爲我旅途中的伴侶。)

You shall have (= I will give you) my answer in a few days. (過幾天我給你回信。)

You shall see (= I will show you) how it ought to be done. (這東西應該怎樣做, 我打個樣子給你看看吧。)

You shall hear (= I will tell you) everything about it. (關於這事情的一切情形, 我都講給你聽吧。)

He shall know (= I will inform him of) the result. (我要把結果告訴他。)

He shall live (= I will spare him). (我要放他的活路。)

He shall die (= I will kill him). (我要把他殺死。)

The boy shall go (= I will send the boy) to school next spring. (明年春季我就要把孩子送到學校裏去。)

He shall come (= I will bring him) with me the next time I come here. (下次到這裏來時, 我要把他帶了同來。)

Exercise XXXIII.

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 我永遠不會忘記你的好心。
2. 我不要再借債了。
3. 我竭力地用功過了，這次我想是會及第的。
4. 若你不肯將錢還我，我就要起訴了。
5. 若你不將錢還我，我不得已只好起訴了。
6. 這次不讓他逃走了。
7. 讓孩子們到你的庭園中來吧，他們是決不會摘花的。
8. 我要帶了我的弟弟看博覽會去。
9. 從他那邊不久就可以得到消息吧。
10. 下次不許再讓這樣的人進門。

疑問文中的“Shall”與“Will”

(“Shall” and “Will” in Questions)

疑問文中 Speaker 不能表示自己的意志。意志的有無只在於所問的人，故關於未來的疑問亦有兩種：(1) 不含任何人的意志即表單純的未來者，(2) 詢問對方的意志者。

(1) Non-Volitional Forms (無意志形)

“Shall you?” “Shall I?” “Will he?”

此形正與前面所述無意志的“I shall”, “you will”, “he will”相對照，與無意志動詞同用。初學者對於“Shall you?”須特別注意，切勿與表第一人稱意志的“you shall”混同。

Shall you be at home this evening?—Yes, I shall be at home. (你今晚將在家嗎?——是的，我將在家。)

When shall you finish the school?—I shall finish it next June. (你幾時卒業?——我明年六月裏卒業。)

Shall I be in time if I go now?—Yes, you will be in time. (我現在去可以趕得進嗎?——是的,你可以趕得進。)

Will he come back to-morrow? — Yes, he will. (他明天將回來嗎?——是的,他明天將回來。)

How much money shall you (shall I, will he) need in school? (校裏的費用要多少?) [必要]

When shall I be able to read such books? (什麼時候我能讀這種書呢?) [能力]

Will he be angry, if I disobey him? (若我不聽他的話,他會發怒嗎?) [感情]

Shall you meet Mr. Wang to-morrow? (你明天會遇見王君嗎?) [期待]

Shall you go to school to-morrow? (你明天上學去嗎?) [義務]

Where shall you be during the holidays? (假期中你將到那裏去?) [豫定]

Shall I die, if I swallow this poison? (如果吃了毒藥,我要死嗎?) [自然的結果]

(2) Volitional Forms (有意志形)

“Will you?” “Shall I?” “Shall he?”

1. “Will you” 用於詢問對方的意志,與 “I will” 相應。

(a) Request (請求):—

Will you please lend me your dictionary? (你肯將你的辭典借給我嗎?)

(b) Invitation (邀請):—

Won't you come out for a walk? (你出來散散步如何?)

(c) Promise (約束):—

Will you be more careful in future? (你願意將來更小心一點嗎?)

(d) Choice (選擇):—

Which will you take? (你要那一個?)

[注意] 表請求有以下種種說法,意味皆同。

}	Will you	}	lend me your dictionary?
	Will you please		
	Will you kindly		
	Will you be so kind as to		
	Will you be good enough to		
	Will you have the goodness to		

用“Would you”代“Will you”時，語氣比較客氣。

2. “Shall I”, “Shall he” 與 Active Meaning (能動的意味) 的動詞 (do, tell, give 之類) 同用時爲：

{ Shall I...? = do you wish me to...?
 { Shall he...? = do you wish him to...?

即關於“I”或“he”應做的事情用以詢問對方的 Desire (願望) 或請求對方的 Command (命令) 者。對於“Shall I...?” 的回答爲普通的命令式，對於“Shall he...?” 的回答用“Let him...” 的間接命令式。

What shall I (= do you wish me to) do? — Do this. (我做什麼東西呢? — 做這個。)

What shall he (= do you wish him to) do? — Let him do that. (叫他做什麼呢? — 叫他做那個。)

When shall I (= do you wish me to) call on you? — Call to-morrow. (我幾時來訪你呢? — 明天來。)

When shall he (= do you wish him to) come? — Let him come this evening. (叫他幾時來呢? — 叫他今晚來。)

[注意] (a) “Shall I...?” 的回答，亦有用“You may...”者。

What shall I do? — You may clean the garden. (我做點什麼呢? — 你打掃庭園吧。)

(b) “Shall we...?” 的回答爲“Let us (= we will)...”。

Where shall we go? — Let us (= we will) go to the park. (我們往那裏去呢? — 到公園裏去吧。)

3. “Shall I”, “Shall he” 與 Passive Meaning(受動的意味)的動詞 (have, see, know 之類) 同用時爲:

{ “Shall I . . . ? ” = will you let me . . . ?
 { “Shall he . . . ? ” = will you let him . . . ?

即關於對方應做的事情，以此詢問對方的意向者。對於 “Shall I . . . ? ” 的回答用 “You shall . . . ”，對於 “Shall he . . . ? ” 的回答用 “He shall . . . ”。

When shall I (=will you let me) have your answer?—You shall have it to-morrow. (我幾時可以得到你的回信呢?—明天給你回信。)

Shall he (=will you let him) know the truth?—Yes, he shall know it. (要給他知道真正的事實嗎?—給他知道吧。)

今將以上兩種用法列表於下。

- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| (1) | { | What shall I do?—(Imperative) |
| | | What shall he do?—Let him |
| (2) | { | What shall I have?—You shall have |
| | | What shall he have?—He shall have |

“Who will?” and “Who shall?”

(a) “Who will?” 因其爲第三人稱的 “will”，故與 “Will he” 同樣，表示 Simple Futurity。

So the governor has resigned. Who will be appointed in his place?
 (那麼縣長是辭職了。不知後任者是那一個?)

(b) “Who shall?” 因其爲第三人稱的 “shall”，故與 “Shall he?” 同樣，用以表詢問對方的意志者。但通常作 “Who can?” = “no one can” 的意而用。

Who shall (=who can) perform such a task? (誰能成就這樣的一件工作呢?)

今將以上所述關於“shall”, “will”的用法全部列表於下。

無 意 志 未 來	
Shall you?	I shall
Shall I?	You will
Will he?	He will

詢問 第二人稱的意向	第一人稱的意志
Will you?	I will
Shall I?	You shall
Shall he?	He shall

求 對 方 的 命 令	
Shall I?	(Imperative)
Shall he?	Let him

主 語 的 意 志
I will
You will
He will

Exercise XXXIV.

將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 叫弟弟什麼時候來訪你呢?
2. 叫他今晚來。
3. 給我多少薪水呢?
4. 你要多少就給你多少。

5. 叫車夫把行李拿到什麼地方去呢?
6. 叫他拿到火車站裏去。
7. 請從速給我一個回信。
8. 過幾天給你一個確實的回信吧。
9. 明天你上學去嗎?
10. 下次你什麼時候遇見張君?

間接敘法中的“Shall”與“Will” (“Shall” and “Will” in Indirect Speech)

將 Direct Narration (直接敘法) 改作 Indirect Narration (間接敘法) 時, 引用號中的名詞或代名詞的人稱, 依情形如何而有變更, 但 “shall” 與 “will”, 仍照原形留用, 故一見似與 “shall”, “will” 的通常用法不同。

(1) 無意志的 “I shall”, “you” will, “he will”.

1. I say,
 2. You say,
 3. He says,
- } “I shall succeed this time” 的間接敘法爲

1. I say I shall succeed this time.
2. You say you shall succeed this time.
3. He says he shall succeed this time.

又, 1. I say (to you),
 2. You say (to me),
 3. He says (to me),

} “You will succeed this time” 的間接敘法爲

1. I say you will succeed this time.
2. You say I will succeed this time.
3. He says I will succeed this time.

【注意】上兩句依照文法似應爲 “You say I will ...”, “He says I will ...”, 但實際上普通皆用 “I shall”, 如:

{ He says to me, "If you fall overboard, you will drown".
 { He tells me that if I fall overboard I shall drown.

又, 1. I say,
 2. You say, } "She will succeed this time" 的間接敘法爲
 3. He says, }

{ 1. I say she will succeed this time.
 { 2. You say she will succeed this time.
 { 3. He says she will succeed this time.

(2) 表 Speaker's Volition 的 "I will", "you shall", "he shall".

1. I say,
 2. You say, } "I will do my best" 的間接敘法爲
 3. He says, }

{ 1. I say I will do my best.
 { 2. You say you will do your best.
 { 3. He says he will do his best.

又, 1. I say (to you),
 2. You say (to me), } "You shall have it" 的間接敘法爲
 3. He says (to me), }

{ 1. I say you shall have it.
 { 2. You say I shall have it.
 { 3. He says I shall have it.

又, 1. I say,
 2. You say, } "She shall have it" 的間接敘法爲
 3. He says, }

{ 1. I say she shall have it.
 { 2. You say she shall have it.
 { 3. He says she shall have it.

由以上諸例歸納起來, 可得以下的規則。

1. Principal Clause 的主語與 Dependent Clause 的主語相同時，“shall”爲無意志，“will”爲有意志。

2. Principal Clause 的主語與 Dependent Clause 的主語不相同時，“shall”爲有意志，“will”爲無意志。

[注意] 以上諸例中若 Principal Clause 的動詞爲過去時，則間接敘法中的“shall”，“will”，亦須變成爲過去形的“should”，“would”。

{ He said, "I will do my best." }
 { He said he would do his best. } (他說他要盡全力來做。)

“Will” 的特別用法 (Special Uses of “Will”)

“Will”有如下列舉的特別用法，但其根本的意義，亦不外乎表示意志的觀念。

(1) “Will” of Insistence (主張)——此用法可看作“*One says one will*”的省略形。

{ [He says] He will have everything his own way }
 { =He says, "I will have everything my own way" }
 { =He insists on having everything his own way. }
 (他不論什麼事情，總要照自己的意思做去。)

Boys will be boys. (孩子到底是孩子。)

Women will be curious. (婦人總是富於好奇心的。)

此用法亦常用於擬人化的無生物。

Accidents will happen. (不測事件是難免的。)

Nature will be obeyed. (自然是難以違背的。)

此兩例中的“Accidents”與“Nature”，似與人間一樣，有所主張；第一句的“Accidents”好像說“I Will happen”（你們無論怎樣防備，我是要發生的），第二句的“Nature”也好像說“I insist on being obeyed”（我是無論如何要人服從的）。

(2) “Will not” of Refusal (拒絕)——這就是 Insistence 的否定方面，乃“I will not”（我無論如何不願意）的轉成爲第三人稱者。

{ This wood will not burn
 = This wood says, “I will not burn”
 = This wood refuses to burn.
 (這木頭不肯燒起來。)

This cork will not come out. (這瓶塞子不肯出來——拔不出來。)

(3) “Will” of Habit (習慣)——此種“will”由意爲‘樂於如何如何’的“will”轉成，表‘常常如何如何’‘老是如何如何’的習慣；通常與“always”，“often”，“sometimes”等副詞同用。

He will often come on a Sunday, and stay all day. (他禮拜日常常來的，而且他常常整天留在這裏。)

She will sometimes sit up all night, poring over a novel. (她常常整夜坐着耽讀小說。)

Whenever he meets any one, he will boast of his son. (不論什麼時候，他一遇見人，就誇耀他的兒子。)

Unless driven by hunger, a lion will not attack man. (要是不爲飢餓所迫，獅子是不會襲擊人的。)

(4) “Will do” = will answer the purpose.

If you have no pen, a pencil will do as well. (如果你沒有鋼筆，鉛筆也可以用的。)

Any book will do as long as it is interesting. (只要有趣, 不論什麼書都可以。)

(5) “Will” in Concessive Clause (讓步)——“Will” 在表示讓步的 Clause 中可作 “may” 的代用。

Whatever the matter may be, do your best.

Let the matter be what it may (or will), do your best.

Be the matter what it will, do your best.

(不論什麼事情, 你總須盡全力去做。)

“Shall” 的特別用法

(Special Uses of “Shall”)

(1) “Shall” of Legislation (法制)——此種 “shall” 原用於握有絕對權力者對人下命令的文句中, 如 “Thou shalt not steal” (爾不得行竊) 等。

Art. 1. The association shall be called the English Speaking Society.

(第一條, 本會定名為英語講習會。)

Art. 2. The association shall have for its aim.....(第二條, 本會以.....

為宗旨。)

(2) “Shall” of Prophecy (豫言)——古時表無意志的純粹未來時, 不拘人稱如何, 皆用 “shall”。

Seek and ye (=you) shall find. --- *Bible*. (找尋吧, 那你就可以得到。)

詩歌及格言中, 表 “如何如何者將如何如何” 的作豫言用的 “shall”, 皆為此用法的遺跡。

He who touches pitch shall be defiled therewith. --- *Proverb*. (近墨者

黑。)

(3) **Subjunctive "Shall"** (假設)——古時表無意志未來之假設時，不拘人稱如何，皆用 "shall"。關係代名詞 "who", "which", "that" 及接續詞 "when", "while", "before", "after", "as soon as", "as long as" 等所導的 Clause 中，即現在亦往往用 "shall"，此實為古時用法的遺跡，不拘人稱如何，用於表無意志的未來。

A man who shall do such a thing, will be called a mad man. (做這種事情的人，將被稱為狂人。)

His name will be remembered as long as the world shall endure. (他的名字，只要世界存在，將永遠不會被人忘記。)

[注意] "Who shall" 含有 "if he shall do=if he does" 的意味。現今此種用法的 "shall" 通常省略，只用直接法現在形。今將此種 "shall" 用法的沿革，舉例於下。

(a) We must wait till he shall come. (古時)

(b) We must wait till he will come. (以後)

(c) We must wait till he comes. (現今)

Exercise XXXV.

將 "shall" 或 "will" 填入下列文句中的空處：——

1. How old—I be next year? You—be seventeen.
2. I think I—write to him at once.
3. I think I—hear from him very soon.
4. When—I hear from you? You—hear from me as soon as possible.
5. I—be somebody in the world.
6. If I fail, I—be a beggar.
7. I fear he—not recover.
8. He fears he—die.
9. She says she—drown herself.
10. If you work too hard, you—make yourself ill.
11. He says he—never set foot in this house again.
12. He says I—never set foot in his house again.

13. If he does not give up drinking, he—die.
14. —you meet Mr. Chang to-day? I think I—.
15. —you see him now or afterwards? I—see him at once.
16. I have offered him some money, but he—not take it.
17. —you have some wine?
18. He—sit for hours doing nothing.
19. One who—not work—not eat.
20. He tells me that he—be eighteen next year.

7. 現在完了 (Present Perfect)

現在完了由“have”加上 Past Participle 而成。中國語中往往將此 Tense 譯作與 Past 同樣，因之有人誤以爲是 Past 的一種，此實爲莫大的錯誤。須知現在完了，如其名之所示，實際上乃 Present Tense 的一種，其用法在於表示現在的情形。但雖用於表示現在用處上卻與 Present 大有差別。例如“他有一隻箱子”，則爲

He has a box.

只用 Present 就好。但若要說明該箱子如何得到，即該箱子依何種動作的結果而存在時，則必須用 Present Perfect。如

He has bought a box. (他買了一隻箱子。)

He has stolen a box. (他偷了一隻箱子。)

He has made a box. (他做了一隻箱子。)

His uncle has given him a box. (他的叔父給了他一隻箱子。)

以上四句中所表示的意味，結局與“*He has a box*”同。不過 present Perfect，於該箱子如何達到現在的狀態，在動作上有所說明已。同樣

School has begun. 爲[現在在上課]，

Somebody has broken the window. 爲[窗子破碎着]，

He has gone to England. 爲[他在英國]

之意，所表示者，仍爲現在狀態；至於何時學校開課，何年到英國去等與現在並無關係，而以過去的動作爲主的敘述，則爲 Past Tense 的職務，不屬於現在完了的權力以內。讀者須牢記，Present Perfect 決不是 Past Tense，實爲 Present Tense 的一種，其所表的動作狀態，必與現在有何等關係。

現在完了的用法 (Uses of the Present Perfect)

1. 表剛纔完了的動作 (Completion of an Action):

I have just written this letter. (我剛剛寫好了一封信。)

Are you still doing the task?—I have done it already. (你還在做工作嗎?—我已經做好了。)

I have now got the meaning. (我現在意味懂了。)

Has the bell rung yet?—It has not rung yet. (鐘已打過了嗎?—還沒有打過。)

I think he has reached Shanghai by this time. (我想這時候他已經到了上海吧。)

[注意] (a) “(Only) just” 及 “now”，可與 Present Perfect 同用；但 “just now” 兩字併合時，必須用 Past Tense.

{ He has just arrived.
{ He arrived just now.

(b) “鐘已打過了嗎?” 這疑問文句中的 “已” 字，不得用 “already,” 非用 “yet” 不可。但表驚訝時，如 “鐘已打過了不成?” 的文句，則爲 “Has the bell rung already?”

2. 由動作完了的觀念一轉而表動作完了的結果，即現在的狀態 (Present State of Thing):

He has bought a piece of land at Kiangwan (=He has a piece of land at Kiangwan). (他在江灣買了一片地——他現在有一片地在江灣。)

Is your father at home?—No, he has gone to Hangchow (=No, he is in Hangchow). (你的父親在家嗎?——沒有在家，他到杭州去了；即他在杭州。)

Do you know English? — Yes, I have learned it (=Yes, I know
 (你懂英語嗎?——我學過的;即我是知道的。))

[注意] Past Tense 專只敘述過去的動作狀態為主,與現在毫無關係;但現在完
 常以敘述現在的狀態為主,用以敘述過去的動作而說明現在的狀態者也。

- { 1. He bought a gold watch.
 2. He has bought a gold watch.

上例中的 (1) 只述過去的動作‘買了一隻金錶’,該錶或是尚存,
 是被人盜去,或是賣與他人,其關於現在的狀態皆不得而知;然(2)
 的意味,則與上文截然不同,我們可由“has bought”兩字中,看
 該錶買來以後,至今尚存在手中。

3. 表過去的經驗 (Experience):

I have seen him before. (我曾經看到過他。)

I have never seen an aeroplane. (我不曾見過飛機。)

Have you ever met him? (你曾經遇見過他嗎?)

I have met him very often. (我常常遇見他的。)

[注意] (a) 表過去的經驗者,並不只限於 Present Perfect, Past Tense 亦有
 經驗的用法,但意味上稍有差別。前者着眼於動作生成的結果,與現在有密切關係,
 者只着眼於動作,與現在的狀態無關。如

- { Have you seen a lion? (你有看到過獅子的經驗嗎?)
 Did you ever see a lion? (你看到過獅子嗎?)

(b) 疑問文中的“ever”及打消文中的“never”,正與“yet?”及“not yet?”
 用法相同,‘曾經做過什麼事情’等用 Present Perfect 的肯定文中,不得用“ever”

(c) 漠然表‘以前’,‘歷來’等意味的“before”,可與 Present Perfect 同用;
 表過去一定時間的“ago”,必須用 Past Tense.

- { I have met him before. (以前我遇見過他。)
 I met him three years ago. (三年前我遇見過他。)

(d) 見過或未曾見過等述經驗的有無時,通例用“have seen”,“have
 seen”等 Perfect; 但附有“ever”,“never”時,可代用 Past.

- Have you ever seen a giraffe? } (你見到過麒麟嗎?)
 = Did you ever see a giraffe? }

I have never seen a live giraffe } (我從未見過活的麒麟。)
 = I never saw a live giraffe.

4. 表狀態到現在為止的繼續 (Continuance):

How long have you been ill? (你病了多少時候了?)

I have been ill for a week. (我已病了一星期。)

I have lived here these ten years. (我在此地已住了十年。)

I have loved you all my life. (我是一向愛你的。)

I have ever held this view. (我一向有這個意見。)

[注意] (a) 表狀態的動詞，因本來性質上有一種表繼續的觀念，故無進行形，此事前已說及，既為表繼續的動詞，則當然無完了之理，因之此種動詞的 Present Perfect，只能表示狀態的繼續。

(b) 表繼續的“ever,”其意味較“always”更強，諸君切勿與表經驗的“ever”混同。

(c) 狀態動詞的 Present Perfect，除表上述的繼續以外，又有表經驗的用法。兩者的區別，大體可以從副詞中看出。

Have you ever been ill? (你生過病嗎?)

I have never been ill in my life. (我生來不曾生過病。)

I have lived both in England and France. (在英國法國我都住過。)

I have loved you once. (我曾經愛你過。)

關於現在完了的注意事項

(Remarks on Present Perfect)

1. 現在完了所示，因與現在有關係，故現在完了決不能與表過去的副詞同用。用過去的副詞時，同時必須用過去的動詞。

He has gone to Europe last year. (誤) } (他去年到歐洲去了。)
 He went to Europe last year. (正)

My uncle has arrived yesterday. (誤) } (我的叔父昨天到了。)
 My uncle arrived yesterday. (正)

2. 現在完了不得與“when?”或“just now”同用。

When have you bought it? (誤) } (這東西你什麼時候買的?)

When did you buy it? (正)

He has gone home just now. (誤)

He went home just now. (正) } (他剛剛回家去了。)

He has just gone home. (正)

3. “Now”, “just”, “to-day”, “this day”, “this week”, “this month”, “this year”, “lately”, “recently”, “of late” 等表現在副詞, 可與 Present Perfect 同用, 說明經過的事情。

There has been no issue of newspaper to-day. (今天報紙停刊。)

We have removed to the address this day. (我們本日遷到上記的地方了。)

There have been frequent fires this week. (這星期火災不少。)

I have been to Nanking this summer. (這夏季我到南京去過了。)

The foreign trade has been very favourable this year. (今年外國貿易順利。)

We have recently (or lately) had much rain. (近來雨水多。)

Sports have grown much popular of late years. (近年來運動盛行了。)

Now the internal strifes in China have been settled. (現在中國的內爭平定了。)

I have seen him this morning. (我今天早上看到過他的。)

[注意] 但上例中若指出早上明確的時間時, 則須用 Past Tense.

{ *I have seen him at eight o'clock this morning.* (誤)

{ *I saw him at eight o'clock this morning.* (正)

比較 { *We have much rain in June.* (六月多雨。)

{ *We have had much rain this month.* (本月雨水多。)

{ *We had much rain last month.* (前個月雨下了不少。)

4. 表動作的完了時, 大抵用“yet”, “not yet”, “already”, “by this time”, “just”, “now”等副詞。

I have already written it. (我已經寫好了。)

I have now arrived at the close of my story. (我現在已到達了小說的結尾。)

The performance has (only) just commenced. (剛剛開演。)

The bell has not rung yet. (鐘還沒有打。)

5. 表過去的經驗時，大抵用 “ever”, “never”, “before”, “once”, “twice”, “(very) often”, “sometimes”, “seldom”, “in one’s time” 等副詞。

I have *once* met him. (我遇見過他一次。)

I have *never* visited Peiping. (我從未到過北平。)

Have you *ever* heard of him? (你曾經聽到過他嗎?)

I have *seen* many great men *in my time*. (我歷來見過許多偉人。)

比較 { I have *just* read the book through. (這本書我剛剛讀完。)[完了]
 { I have read the book *once*. (這本書我曾經讀過一次。)[經驗]

比較 { Have you *not* seen it *yet*? (你還沒有看到過這個嗎?)[完了]
 { Have you *ever* seen it? (你曾經看到過這個嗎?)[經驗]

[注意] “In one’s time” 意為‘歷來’或‘向來’，用於肯定文；“in one’s life” 意為‘生來一次也…’，用於否定文。請比較：

I have seen many great men *in my time*, but I *never* saw a greater man *in my life*. (我歷來看見過許多偉人，但這樣的偉人我生來不曾看到過一次——即還是第一次看到。)

6. 動詞中有只能表完了的意味者。例如 “have gone”, “have come”, 只用於表完了的意味，不能用於表示經驗。

He has gone to America = He is now in America. (他到美國去了——即他在美國。)

He has come here = He is now here. (他到這裏來了——即他在這裏。)

上兩例中的 “has gone” 與 “has come”, 皆用於表示 Whereabouts (所在), 只表完了的意味。若欲用此種動詞表示經驗, 則須用 “have been”。

Experience

Have you ever been abroad?

(你曾經出過洋嗎?)

Has the doctor been here to-day?

(今天醫生來過了嗎?)

Whereabouts

He has gone abroad.

(他出洋去了。)

Has the doctor come?

(醫生來了沒有?)

[注意] (a) 因上述理由, “have gone”, “have come” 不得與表經驗的副詞同用。

I have gone there often. (誤) } (我常常在那裏的。)
I have been there often. (正) }

Have you ever come here? (誤) } (你曾到過此地嗎?)
Have you ever been here? (正) }

(b) “Have gone” 不能用於第一人稱及第二人稱。

Have you gone to America? (誤)

Have you been in America? (正)

但在 Indirect Narration (間接敘法) 中, 或 “go” 作特殊的意味用時, 不在此例。

If anybody asks for you, where shall I say you have gone? — Say that

I have gone to my office. (若有人來找你, 我將說你到那裏去了呢? ——說我到事務所裏去了。)

I have gone too far to retreat. (深入得無法可退了。)

(c) “Have been” 因其下面前置詞的不同, 有意味上的區別。

{ Have you ever been at (or in) Tsingtao? (你曾到過青島嗎?)

{ No, I have never been there. (我沒有到過。)

{ Have you been to Ningpo? (你寧波去過了嗎?)

{ I have not been there yet. (我還沒有去過。)

上例中的 “have been at” (or in) 含 “曾經到過” 之意, 表經驗的有無; “have been to” 含 “去了來了”, “去過了” 之意, 表動作的完了。

(d) “Have been” 後面接 Infinitive 時, 意為 “因做什麼去了來了”。

I have been to see the cherry blossoms. (我看了櫻花來了。)

I have been to the station to see a friend. (因送朋友我到車站裏去過了
——即我到車站裏去送了朋友來了。)

7. 表狀態繼續的 Present Perfect, 大抵用 “since”, “always”, “from”, “for”, “these”, “how long?” 等副詞。

He has not yet been heard from since. (此後還沒有聽到過他的消息。)

He has always been steady. (他是常常堅定的。)

He has been ill for a week. (他生病已有一星期。)

He has been dead these four years (= he died four years ago). (他死了已有四年。)

How long have you been here? (—When did you come here?) (你此地已住：多少時候?)

8. 進行形現在完了(Progressive Present Perfect)

進行形現在完了用於表動作到現在為止的繼續。請比較：——

(a) I **have been studying** English these five years. (我五年以來學習着英語。)

(b) I **have studied** English for five years. (我學過了五年英語。)

上例中(a)的“**have been studying**”表“**study**”的動作自五年以來繼續而到現在；(b)的“**have studied**”只表研究過五年英語的經驗，並不言及何時開始何時告終。

表繼續狀態的動詞的 Present Perfect, 用於說明狀態到現在為止的繼續，此事前已講過。今將兩者比較舉例於下：——

(a) Where **have you been** all this while?—I **have been** in my room.
(你這些時候在什麼地方?—我在房間裏。)

(b) What **have you been doing** all this while?—I **have been reading** the book you have kindly lent me. (你這些時候在做什麼事情?—我在讀你所借給我的書。)

上例中(a)的“**have been**”表‘狀態’到現在為止的繼續，(b)的“**have been doing**”與“**have been reading**”表‘動作’到現在為止的繼續。

【注意】(a)無 Progressive Present 形的動詞，如“**be**”，“**know**”，“**love**”，“**like**”等，當然亦無 Progressive Present Perfect 形。

{ I **am knowing** him well.—I **have been knowing** him for ten years. (誤)
I **know** him well.—I **have known** him for ten years. (正)

{ He **is living** at Kiangwan.—He **has been living** there for five years.
(誤)
He **lives** at Kiangwan.—He **has lived** there for five years. (正)
(他住在江灣——他五年以來住在那地方。)

(b) 同一動詞有時用於表狀態，有時用於表動作。

The castle stands on the hill. It has stood there for a century. (城在山上。百年間以來矗立在那個地方。) [狀態]
 He is standing at the door. He has been standing there for an hour. (他立在門口。一個鐘頭以來他立在那裏。) [動作]

Exercise XXXVI.

(A) 將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 我覺得我以前在什麼地方碰見過你的。
2. 令郎近來進步了不少。
3. 他走出學校，進了實業界。
4. 他畢業後就立刻進了實業界。
5. 他自畢業以後一向在實業界裏做事。
6. 他的父親三年前死去了。三年以來他住在叔父家裏。
7. 他們結婚了已有三年。
8. 你今天到什麼地方去了？
9. 我到車站裏去送了我朋友的行。
10. 從他那裏已經半年沒有聽到消息了。
11. 我前幾天給你的錢你做什麼用了？
12. 我用那筆錢買了一本書。
13. 對不起要你等了，你已等了好久嗎？
14. 雨真是下得長久呀！到現在已下了一個星期了。
15. 我十年前學過法文，但現在都已忘記了。
16. 他是我幼年時代以來的朋友。
17. 這報紙你看過了以後，請給我看一看。
18. 自從這次戰爭發生以來，物價非常漲貴了。
19. 這隻鐘向來不曾停過。
20. 近來忙得很，連訪朋友的工夫都沒有。

(B) 矯正下列文句中之錯誤：——

1. Has the cherry-trees blossomed already?
2. It seems somebody has come into my room in my absence.

3. I just received a letter from my brother.
4. How long have you been living in China?
5. I have studied German these four years.
6. I have bought a bicycle, but sold it the next day.
7. He has often come here last month.
8. I have heard of him, but do not see him yet.
9. I have read this book when a child.
10. I am unwell since I have seen you.

9. 過 去 完 了 (Past Perfect)

Past Perfect 與 Present Perfect 同樣，用於表完了，經驗，及繼續。但有一點須要注意，即 Past Perfect 必以過去之一定時間為標準而表該時間以前之完了，經驗，及繼續；與 Present Perfect 之以現在為標準者不同。

(1) Completion (完了):—

By that time I had finished writing a letter. (那時候我已經寫好了信。)

I asked if the bell *had rung yet*. (我問鐘已經打了嗎。)

He said that the bell *had not rung yet*. (他說鐘還沒有打過。)

I got to the station to find that the train *had only just left*. (我到了車站火車剛剛開出。)

(2) Experience (經驗):—

I wondered if I *had ever met* him. (我疑心我好像遇見過他。)

I concluded I *had never met* him. (我斷定我不曾遇見過他。)

I know him, for I *had met* him *before*. (我知道他，因我以 遇見過他。)

I know the neighbourhood very well, for I *had often been* there. (我 很知道該處地理，因我常常到那邊去的。)

But I *had seldom spoken* to him. (不過我是不大同他講話的。)

(3) Continuance (繼續):—

I *had long wanted* to know him. (我早已要想認識他了。)

I had known him since we were boys together. (從孩兒時代起，我就認識他了。)

He had been here only a week, when he was taken ill. (他到這裏來還只一個禮拜，就生病了。)

Up to that time all had gone well. (到那個時候為止，萬事都很順利。)

(4) **Double Past** (二重過去)——Past Perfect 除以上三種用法外，又有二重過去之用法。如

(a) He said that his father had returned (=He said, "My father has returned"). (他說他的父親已經回來了。)

(b) He said that his father had returned the day before (=He said, "My father returned yesterday"). (他說他的父親昨日回來了。)

上例中 (a) 之 "had returned"，由直接敘法表完了之 Present Perfect "has returned" 變成，但 (b) 之 "had returned" 則為 Past "returned" 之轉變，即所謂 **Double Past** 是也。

(c) He said that he had met her before (=He said, "I have met her before"). (他說他從前遇見過她。)

(d) He said that he had met her three years before (=He said, "I met her three years ago"). (他說他三年前遇見過她。)

上例中 (c) 之 "had met"，由表示經驗之 Present Perfect "have met" 轉成，但 (d) 之 "had met" 則為由 Past "met" 變成之二重過去。

(5) **Priority** (先位過去)——Past Perfect 用於表示某一過去之動作，先出於另一過去之動作。若敘述連續而起之過去動作而依其自然之順序時，則用 Past 足矣；但 Complex Sentence 中常有先述後起之動作者，此時先起之動作，必須用 Past Perfect 表出之。

(a) He borrowed the book and returned it. (他借了書把書還了。)

(b) He returned the book that he had borrowed. (他把借來書的還了。)

上例中之(a),其動詞“borrowed”與“returned”全依過去動作所起之順序而列,故只用 Past 可矣。全體爲兩個 Independent Clause 所成之 Compound Sentence, (b)例爲順序顛倒之 Complex Sentence, 故須用 Past Perfect 以明示動作之先後。

{ I lost the watch and found it. 我失去了錶,卻又找着了。)

{ I found the watch that I had lost. 我找着了我所失去的錶。)

{ The maid broke a plate and concealed it. (婢女打破了碟子,還把牠藏了。)

{ The maid concealed the plate which she had broken. (婢女藏過了她所打破的碟子。)

10. 進行形過去完了(Progressive Past Perfect)

進行形過去完了乃用於表某一動作之繼續到過去之某一時期者。

I had been waiting about an hour when he came. (當他來時,我已等了一個鐘頭光景了。)

Up to that time, I had been studying without any definite object. (到那時候爲止,我只是茫然地用功罷了)

Exercise XXXVII.

將下列文句譯成英文:——

1. 我們遷到杭州以後,過了三年祖父就死去了。
2. 消防隊到的時候,房子已經燒塌了。
3. 火車走了一小時光景就突然停止了。
4. 昨夜我讀完了你借給我的那本書。
5. 我拾起了石子向狗擲去。

11. 未來完了(Future Perfect)

以未來之一時期作爲標準而表狀態之繼續,完了,及經驗時,用未來完了(Future Perfect)。

(1) **Completion (完了):**——

We shall have arrived there before the rain comes on. (下雨之前我們將到那邊了。)

"Before this time to-morrow I shall have gained a peerage or Westminster Abbey."——*Nelson*. (明天還未到這個時候，我就將成爲一個貴族，或被吊於廟堂了。)

(2) **Continuance (繼續):**——

I shall have lived in Shanghai for five years by the end of this year. (到本年年底，我住在上海將滿五年了。)

(3) **Experience (經驗):**——

I shall have seen much of life by that time. (到了那時候，我將看到很多的世故。)

[注意] 表時間及條件之 Adverb Clause 中，須以現在完了代未來完了。

12. 進行形未來完了 (Progressive Future Perfect)

進行形未來完了，用於表未來某一時候爲止的動作之繼續。

It will have been raining a whole week if it does not stop raining to-morrow. (若明天雨不停止，將下得有一個禮拜了。)

I shall have been studying English for five years by April next. (到四月爲止，我學英語將有五年了。)

Exercise XXXVIII.

(A) 將下列文句譯成英文：——

1. 你還在寫文章嗎？——等你回來的時候，我可以寫好了。
2. 雨真是下得長呢，到明天爲止，就下得有一個禮拜了。
3. 過了一小時月亮就要沉下去了。
4. 若你乘這班車去，明天這個時候你就可以到南京了。
5. 到明年這個時候，這房子就可以造成了。

(B) 把括弧中的動詞改作適當的 Tense:—

1. I (write) for the last two hours.
2. Our fleet not (go) far when the enemy appeared.
3. The ship (run) only a short distance when she was overtaken by the enemy.
4. I not yet (finish) the book you lent me.
5. He (leave) here a moment ago.

(C) 矯正下列文句中之錯誤:—

1. I was ill all this week.
2. I shall never do such a thing.
3. He is dead twenty years ago.
4. I don't see him since Monday last.
5. I have received a letter from him the last Sunday.
6. Shall you do me a favour?
7. He told them what he saw and heard in his dream.
8. I have heard of him, but do not see him yet.
9. She was ill for two days, when the doctor was sent for.
10. He is yet staying at London, but we expect he will have come back till 10th inst.

IV. 法 (Moods)

動詞述動作或狀態時之方式，謂之 Mood。Mood 有以下四種。

1. **Indicative Mood** (直說法)——不論過去現在未來，凡陳述事實或表疑問之方式，皆為直說法。前面所述之十二種時制，全部屬於此類

Is he diligent?—No, he **is** idle. (他勤力嗎?—不，他是懶惰的。)

2. **Subjunctive Mood** (假設法)——表假設條件或願望等之方式，謂之假設法。與假設法對應者，謂之 **Conditional Mood** (結題法)。

If he **were** not idle, I **would** employ him. (若是他不懶惰，那我就雇用他了。)

3. **Imperative Mood** (命令法)——此為表命令、依賴、或嘆願之法。

Be diligent. (用功呀。)

Lend me some money, if you please. (請借我幾個錢。)

4. **Potential Mood** (可能法)——用助動詞 “can”, “may”, “must” 作成之動詞之形，謂之可能法。

[注意] (a) **Subjunctive Mood** 在語義上似應譯作‘附屬法’，因其不能單獨存在，常附屬於 **Principal Clause** 故也。

(b) **Potential Mood** 一項，普通文法書中亦常有省去者，本書為便于說明起見，特存之。

1. 假設法 (Subjunctive Mood)

假設法之 Tense 與直說法同，共有十二種。但須注意者有以下兩點。

(a) 第三人稱單數現在語尾上，無 “s” 之變化。

(b) **Future Tense** 不拘人稱如何，無意志時用 “should”，有意志時用 “would”。

惟 “to be” 之假設法，與直說法大有不同，今舉其變化如下：

The Verb "To Be."

Subjunctive Present	Subjunctive Present Perfect
If I be If thou be If he be, etc.	If I have been If thou have been If he have been, etc.
Subjunctive Past	Subjunctive Past Perfect
If I were If thou wert If he were, etc.	If I had been If thou hadst been If he had been, etc.
Subjunctive Future	Subjunctive Future Perfect
If I should be If thou shouldst be If he should be, etc.	If I should have been If thou shouldst have been If he should have been, etc.

以下爲 "to write" 之假設法時刻。

The Verb "To Write."

	PRIMARY	PROGRESSIVE
Subj. Present	If he write	If he be writing
Subj. Past	If he wrote	If he were writing
Subj. Future	If he should write	If he should be writing
Subj. Pres. Perf.	If he have written	If he have been writing
Subj. Past Perf.	If he had written	If he had been writing
Subj. Fut. Perf.	If he should have written	If he should have been writing

Passive Verb “to be written” 之假設法時制如下。

The Verb “To be Written.”

	PRIMARY	PERFECT
Sub. Present	If it be witten	If it have been written
Sub. Past	If it were witten	If it had been written
Sub. Future	If it should be written	If it should have been written

[注意] 古時之用法，不拘人稱如何，無意志未來用 “shall”，意志未來用 “will”。

NON-VOLITIONAL

If I shall fail,.....

If you shall fail,.....

If he shall fail,.....

VOLITIONAL

If I will try,.....

If you will try,.....

If he will try,.....

現今之 Subjunctive Present，即爲此種無意志之 “shall” 省去之形；其所以第三人稱單數語尾無 “s” 之變化者，因其爲省去 “shall” 之 Root Form 故也。

Subjunctive Future 之 “should” 與 “would”，其用法亦爲古時 “shall”，“will” 之殘形。

(1) 假設法現在 (Subjunctive Present)

假設法現在通例用於 “if”，“unless”，“provided” 等所率之 Adverb Clause 中。但現今英語中，此項 Tense 已漸次廢除，概用 Indicative Present 代之。

If the report **be** (or **is**) true, there will be a war. (這消息如果是的確的，那麼就要發生戰爭了。)

Unless he **consent** (or **consents**), we can do nothing. (如果他不答應，我們是做不來事情的。)

Provided he **confess** (or **confesses**) his fault, I will pardon him. (若他認錯,那我就饒恕他吧。)

此項 Tense 之名稱及形,雖為 Present, 意味上卻用於表現在或未來之 Uncertainty (不確實)。

(a) If he **be** (or **is**) too old, I will not employ him. (如果他年紀太老,我就不要雇用他。)

(b) If it **rain** (or **rains**) to-morrow, I shall not start. (If) 如果下雨,我就不走了。)

上例中之 (a) 表現在事實之不確實, (b) 表關於未來之不確實。

[注意] (a) 此項 Tense 亦用于 “whether”, “if” 及 “when”, “till” 所率之表疑問或時間之 Clause 中, 現今亦概用 Indicative Present 代之。

I doubt **whether** the report **be** (or **is**) true or not. (消息之確否可疑。)

I wonder if this report **be** (or **is**) really true. (這消息未知真確否。)

We had better wait, **till** the storm **be** (or **is**) over. (我們還是等待着大風雨的停止吧。)

(b) **Though**, **whether**, **whoever**, **whatever**, **whichever**, **however** 等所率表讓步之 Clause 中, 亦用此項 Tense, 但現今加入一 “may” 字。

Though he (**may**) **slay** me, yet I will trust in him. (縱使他殺死我, 我也是信任他的。)

Whatever the matter (**may**) **be**, do your best. (不論事情如何, 你總須盡你的力。)

(c) “It is . . . that” 下面之 Clause 中, 古時亦用 Subjunctive Present, 但現今添入 “should” 一字。

It is necessary that he (**should**) **remain**. (他必須留着。)

(d) 表祈禱之文句中亦用此 Tense, 但須注意切勿與命令法混同。

God **bless** you! [=I wish that God (**may**) **bless** you!] (願上帝保佑你!)

(The) Plague **take** you! (倒路死的!)

(2) 假設法現在完了 (Subjunctive Present Perfect)

假設法現在完了，用於業已完了之事情覺得未能確實之時。

Do you think he has arrived?—I can't say. If he **have** (or **has**) **arrived**, he ought to send me word. (你想他已到了嗎？——我不知道，如果他已到了，他是應該來通知我的。)

Tell him to return the book, if he **have** (or **has**) done with it. (如果他已用好了，叫他把書還我。)

(3) 假設法過去 (Subjunctive Past)

1. 此項 Tense 表示與現在事實相反之 Supposition (假設)。即名稱與形雖為過去，其所述之點卻全屬於現在，與過去毫無關係。

If I were a bird, I would fly to you. (要是我是鳥，我就要飛到你這裏來了。)

If I could fly, I would fly to you. (要是我能飛，我就要飛到你這裏來了。)

上例中 “if I were a bird” 即為與 “I am not a bird” 這事實相反之假設，“if I could fly” 即為與 “I cannot fly” 這事實相反之假設。

2. 將此 Tense 用於動詞 “wish” 之後時，表 Unattainable Desire (難達之願望)，其中含有悲嘆現在事實之意味。

I wish I were a bird. (要是我是鳥就好了。)

I wish I could fly. (要是我能飛就好了。)

上述兩例之背面，即含有如下之意味。

I am sorry I am not a bird. (可惜我不是鳥。)

I am sorry I can not fly. (可惜我不能飛。)

3. “As if” 常與此項 Tense 同用，但此實為一種省略文。

The child talks as if he were a man. (= The child talks *as* he would talk if he were a man.) (這孩子講起話來好像一個大人。)

上文之背面，即含有“he is not a man”之意。

He lives **as if** he **were** rich. (他過着富者似的生活。)

He talks **as if** he **knew** everything. (他談得來好像什麼東西都知道的樣子。)

[注意] “**As though**” = **as if**.

4. “**As it were**” = as if it were so; so to speak. 此係用於述勉強之比喻，乃‘如果可以這樣說’或‘所謂’之意。

He is, **as it were**, a walking dictionary. (他這人是一部所謂活字典。)

He is, **as it were**, a **grown-up** baby. (他這人就是一個所謂長了的小囡囡。)

5. “**Were to . . .**” 表關於未來之純粹之假設。

If the sun were to rise in the west, my **resolution would be** unchanged.

(縱使太陽西昇，我也不肯改變我的決心。)

I am not going abroad, but if I **were to** go, I would go to Russia. (我不到外國去，如果去的話，我是要到俄國去的。)

(4) 假設法過去完了 (Subjunctive Past Perfect)

假設法過去完了用於表與過去事實相反之假設。

假設法過去——If he **were** honest, he would pay me. (= He is not honest, therefore he will not pay me.) (他如果誠實，他就付錢給我了。)

假設法過去完了——If he **had been** honest, he **would have** paid me. (= He was not honest, therefore he did not pay me.) (要是他誠實，他就付錢給我了。)

假設法過去——If I **had** the money, I would lend it to you. (我如果有錢，我就借給你了。)

假設法過去完了——If I **had had** the money, I would have lent it to you. (要是我有錢，我就借給你了。)

假設法過去——I wish I **knew** English. (= I am sorry I do not know English.) (我若懂得英語就好了。)

假設法過去完了——I wish I **had learned** English. (= I am sorry I did not learn English.) (要是我學過英語就好了。)

(5) 假設法未來 (Subjunctive Future)

假設法未來，不論人稱如何，概由添加 “should” 於 Subjunctive Present (假設法現在) 而成，表關於現在及未來之疑惑。其 Uncertainty 之觀念較假設法現在更強，含有 Improbability (不致於有) 之意味。

假設法現在——I fear I shall fail. What shall I do if I fail? (我怕我是要失敗的。如果失敗了，怎樣辦好呢?)

假設法未來——I hope I shall succeed. But what should I do if I should fail? (我希望我會成功。但是萬一失敗了，我怎麼辦好呢?)

假設法現在——I think it will rain. I shall not start, if it rain(s). (天好像要下雨呢。如果下雨，我就不走了。)

假設法未來——I don't think it will rain. I shall start, even if it should rain. (不見得會下雨吧。縱使下雨，我也要走。)

Subjunctive 之 “would” 只附於意志動詞，有以下兩種用法。

(1) 表現在事實之反面。

I could do so, if I **would** [do so]. (如果我要這樣做，就可以做；但我並不想這樣子做。)

You might go, if you **would** [go]. (你要去就可以去的；但你並不想去。)

(2) 表人之願意做否猶未可逆料之事情。

If you **would** grant my request, I should be greatly obliged to you. (如你肯答應我的要求，我是非常感激的；但我不知道你肯不肯。)

If you **would** only do your best, you would succeed. (如果你盡你的全力做去，那你是可以成功的。)

(6) 假設法未來完了 (Subjunctive Future Perfect)

Subjunctive Future Perfect 與 Subjunctive Present Perfect 之關係，全然和 Subjunctive Future 與 Subjunctive Present 之關係相

等。即“should”一字之附加，不過為加強 Uncertainty 之觀念而已。

假設法現在完了——I think he **has** arrived already. If he **have** (or **has**) arrived, tell him to come at once. (我想他已到了。如果已經到了，叫他立刻就來。)

假設法未來完了——I think he **has not** arrived yet. But if he **should have** arrived, tell him to come at once. (我想他還未到。但如果萬一他已經到了的話，那麼叫他立刻就來。)

2. 結 題 法 (Conditional Mood)

Conditional Mood 乃對於 Conditional Clause (表條件之短句) 述其條件之結果者也。換言之，即為與 Subjunctive Mood 對應之 Mood。普通文法書中，此項 Mood 只附在 Subjunctive Mood 中約略言及，以致初學者多不明其用法，今為諸君便於了解起見，特提出詳論之。

結題法用 shall, will, can, may 之過去形 should, would, could, might 作成，Tense 只有兩種。

1. 單 形 (Simple Form):—

Should	}	+ Root Form.
Would		
Could		
Might		

2. 複 形 (Compound Form):—

Should	}	have + Past Participle.
Would		
Could		
Might		

〔注意〕結題法中，“should”與“would”表有意志或無意志之用法，全與直說法中“shall”與“will”之用法相等。“Could”與“might”之用法，將在 Potential Mood 之“can”與“may”兩項中併述之。

(1) 結題法單形 (Simple Conditional Form)

此形用於 Conditional Clause 爲 Subjunctive Past 或 Subjunctive Future 時。

(a) 用於 Subjunctive Past 時，表現在事實之反面。

I would buy it, if I had the money. (= I do not buy it, because I have no money.) (如果我有錢，我就買。)

If I were rich, I would go abroad. (= I am not rich, so I do not go abroad.) (如果我有錢，我就到外國去。)

有意志與無意志之用法如下。

Non-volitional (無意志):—

If I tried, I should succeed. (如果我做，我將成功。)

If you tried, you would succeed. (如果你做，你將成功。)

If he tried, he would succeed. (如果他做，他將成功。)

Volitional (有意志):—

If I had the money, { I would lend it to you. } (如果我有錢，我就借給
{ you should have it. } { 你。)

If I had the money, { I would lend it to him. } (如果我有錢，我就借給
{ he should have it. } { 他。)

(b) 用於 Subjunctive Future 時，只表結題之未來。

If you would grant my request, I should esteem it a great favour.
(如果你肯答應我的要求，我就作為重恩看待。)

You would have to leave school, if you would not amend your conduct.
(如果你不肯改過行爲，你就非離去學校不可。)

He would have to give up his studies, if his eyes should not get better.
(如果他的眼睛不好起來，他就非停止求學不可。)

(2) 結題法複形 (Compound Conditional Form)

此形用於 Subjunctive Past Perfect, 常表過去事實之反面。

I **would have written** to you if I *had known* your address. (= I *did not write* to you, because I *did not know* your address.) (如果我知道了你的住址, 我就寫信給你了。)

If the doctor *had come* earlier, the invalid **would have been saved**. (= The doctor *came* too late, and so the invalid *was not saved*.) (如果醫生來得早一點, 病人就可以得救了。)

有意志及無意志之用法與 Simple Form 同。

Non-volitional (無意志):—

If I had tried, I **should have succeeded**. (如果我做了, 我就成功了。)

If you (he) had tried, you (he) **would have succeeded**. (如果你——他——做了, 你——他——就成功了。)

Volitional (有意志):—

If I had had money, { I **would have lent** it to you. } (如果我有了錢, 我
{ you **should have had** it. } 就借給你了。)

Exercise XXXIX

將下列句譯成英文:—

1. 我若是你, 我就不做這種事情。
2. 如果是值得一讀的書, 那我就讀吧。
3. 要是早一分鐘, 我就趕得上快車了。
4. 縱使你給我一百萬元, 我也不肯做這種事情。
5. 如果他死了, 他的家族將怎樣呢?
6. 中國的民衆, 正所謂睡在火山之頂。
7. 那個人如果是年青的, 那我就用他吧。
8. 要是那個人年紀不很老, 我就用他了。

“Should” and “Would”

“Should” 與 “Would” 有以下三種用法。

(a) Indicative “Should” and “Would”:—

此爲直說法未來之“shall”, “will”之過去形。Indirect Narration (間接敘法)中用於“said”, “thought”, “knew”等過去動詞之後面。既爲“shall”, “will”之過去形,其用法當然依“shall”, “will”之規則。(請參照前面‘間接敘法中之 Shall 與 Will’)。

(b) Subjunctive “Should” and “Would”:—

此爲做古時“shall”, “will”之用法,不拘人稱如何,表無意志用“should”, 表有意志用“would”。(請參照‘假設法未來’)

(c) Conditional “Should” and “Would”:—

此種“should”, “would”全依照“shall”, “will”之用法。(請參照前項之‘結題法’)

“Should” 之特別用法 (Special Uses of “Should”)

“Should” 有以下種種之特別用法,但推究其源,皆不外乎爲 Subjunctive “Should” 之特種用法,故不依人稱而有變化。

(1) Duty (義務)——表‘應如何’, ‘非如何不可’之意。
[Should=ought to]

Children **should** obey their parents. (孩子應該服從父母。)

We **should** keep faith. (吾人應守信義。)

(2) 表義務之“should”若連 Perfect Form 而用時,則爲‘恨沒有做了應做的事’或‘恨做了不應該做的事’之意,表 Omission (疏忽)及 Commission (故犯)之罪

You **should have written** it with pen and ink. (= You have done wrong in not writing it with pen and ink. (你應該是用了鋼筆寫的——你不用鋼筆寫,就是你錯。))

You **should not have concealed** the matter from me. (= You have done wrong in concealing the matter from me.) (你不該瞞了我——你瞞了我,就是你錯。)

(3) 加強此種 “should” 之意味時, “should” 常用在表判斷之形容詞後面, 取 “It is good (well, right, wrong, prop. natural, necessary, . . .) that one should . . .” 之形

It is **right** that one **should** speak well of the absent. (對於不在座的人, 要講他好才對。)

It is **not good** that man **should** be alone. — *Bible*. (人是不應孤獨的。)
述過去之事時, 用 “should have” + Past Participle 之形。

It is **proper** that the Government **should have resorted** to such a measure. (政府採用了這個手段是正常的。)

It is **right** that you **should have done** so. (你這樣做了是不錯的。)

(4) **Surprise** (驚訝)——文句之表 ‘想不到會如此如此’ 之意者, Dependent Clause 中亦用 “should”。

I am **surprised** that you **should say** such things. (想不到你會說出這種話來。)

It is **strange** that cherry-trees **should be** blossoming at this time of the year. (想不到櫻桃樹會在這時候開出花來。)

I am **surprised** that he **should have succeeded**. (想不到他竟成功了。)

It is **surprising** that he **should have said** such things of me. (想不到他會這樣說我。)

比較 { You **should have done** so. (你應該這樣子做的。)[沒有這樣子做]
It is **strange** that you **should have done** so. (想不到你竟這樣子做了。)[已這樣做]

[注意] (a) 驚訝之意成爲疑問形時, 亦用 “should”。

What has he done that you **should** resort to violence? (他做了什麼事情, 以致你竟用武力對付?)

Who are you that you should speak thus to me? (對我這樣講話,你到底是誰?)

(b) 表驚訝時亦有用以下之形者。

Who should come in but the very man we were talking of? (誰知進來的正是我們所講起的那個人。)

When should I meet then but my wife? (誰知當時我所遇見的正是我的妻子。)

比較 { **Who should do it but a fool?** (要不是傻子,誰做這種事情呢。)
 { **Who should do it but himself?** (誰知做這事的就是他自己。)

(5) **Regret (遺憾)**——文句之表‘事至於此可嘆’之意者, **Dependent Clause** 中亦用 “**should**”。

I am sorry that things should have come to this. (事至於此堪痛。)

It is a pity that he should have missed such a golden opportunity.
 (他失去了這樣絕好的機會真是可惜。)

[注意] 表驚訝遺憾之文句,往往用省略法。

That it should have come to this! (竟會弄到這個地步!)

(6) “**Why should . . . ?**” 意為‘並無非如此不可之理由’, 與 “**There is no reason why . . . should**” 之意同。

Why should he refuse? (= **There is no reason why he should refuse.**)
 (他爲甚麼拒絕呢?——他並沒有非拒絕不可的理由。)

If others have succeeded, why should I not succeed? (= **There is no reason why I should not succeed.**) (如果別人成功了,我爲什麼不可以成功呢?)

[注意] 此種構文,往往有略作 “**Why not?**” 者。

Your father intends to make a milkman of you?—Why not?
 (= **Why should he not make a milkman of me?**) (你的父親想叫你做一個牛乳分送人嗎?——爲什麼他不可以叫我做一個牛乳分送人呢?)

(7) “**Lest . . . should**” = **that . . . may (or might) not**。

He works hard lest he should fail. (= **He works hard that he may not fail**) (他防恐失敗,起勁用功——他起勁用功不使自己失敗。)

He *worked* hard **lest** he **should** fail. (= He worked hard that he might not fail.) (他防恐失敗，起勁用了功。)

[注意] 此種構文，不拘現在過去，亦不拘人稱如何，一概用“should”。

(8) “Should (又 would) like” + Infinitive 爲‘想如何做’之意，乃較爲丁寧之說法 (請參照後面‘條件文’)

I **should like** to go abroad. (我是想到外國去。)

I **should like** to have a cup of tea. (我心想喝一杯茶。)

“Would” 之特別用法 (Special Uses of “Would”)

(1) Would = wish to:—

He who **would** (= *wishes to*) search for pearls, must dive deep. (欲得真珠者，必須潛入深處——不入虎穴，焉得虎子。)

If you **would** (= *wish to*) be happy, be virtuous. (若你想得幸福，你必須要有德操。)

What **would** you have me do? (= What do you wish me to do?) (你要我做什麼呢?)

(2) Would = I wish:—

Would that I were young again. (= I wish I were young again.) (我希望我能再年青。)

Would to Heaven I had never seen her! (要是我沒有遇見她就好了!)

(3) Insistence 之 “will” 與 Refusal 之 “will not”，過去形爲 “would” 與 “would not”。(請參照 ‘Will 之特別用法’)

He gave an evasive answer, but I **would** have (= I insisted on having) a definite answer, yes or no. (他曖昧地回答了，但我堅執着要得一個確實的回答。)

I offered him some money, but he **would not** (= refused to) take it. (我給了他若干錢，但他不肯接受。)

(4) 表習慣之“will”，過去形用“would”。(請參照‘Will 之特別用法’)

He **would** often come home drunk, and beat his wife. (他常常喝醉了酒回家打他的妻。)

[注意] 表現在不規則之習慣時用“will”，過去用“would”；表現在規則之習慣時用 present Tense，過去用“used to”。

- { He **will** often sit up all night poring over a novel. (他常常整夜地坐着耽讀小說。)
- { He **would** often sit up all night poring over a novel. (他常常整夜地坐了耽讀小說。)
- { I **take** the Eastern Times. (我定着時報。)
- { I **used to take** the Shun Pao. (我從前是定申報的。)

Exercise XL

A. 將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 你應該是同我商量過的。
2. 講死人的壞話是不行的。
3. 到此刻還沒有報告來，真奇怪了。
4. 你這樣想，也是當然的事。
5. 爲什麼我們不應該坐汽車呢？
6. 想不到那樣的懶惰者竟會成功。

B. 將“should”或“would”填入下列文句中之空處：—

1. One of them proposed that the boy's camel — be killed.
2. He said it — be better for him to lose his camel than that he — die.
3. The boy said to himself that the camel — not die.
4. What — his father say if he — arrive at Suez without the camel?
5. If you — not amend your conduct, I — have to dismiss you
6. He — often fly into a passion at trifles.

7. He hoped he — succeed, but I feared he — not.
8. If you — grant my request, I — never forget your kindness.
9. If I were you, I — not have done such a thing.
10. If you — fail again, you — have to leave school.

條件文 (Conditional Sentences)

條件文由下列兩部分構成：

- (a) 設條件之 Clause, 即 **Protasis** (提言)
- (b) 應條件之 Clause, 即 **Apodosis** (結語)

今總括假設法與結題法之所言, 將條件文句中兩者間 Tense 之呼應關係列表於下。

PROTASIS	APODOSIS
{ Sub. Present	Indicative (1)
{ Sub. Present Perfect	Indicative (2)
{ Sub. Past	Simple Cond. Form . . . (3)
{ Sub. Past Perfect	Comp. Cond. Form . . . (4)
{ Sub. Future {	(should) Simple Cond. Form . . . (5)
{	(would) Simple Cond. Form . . . (6)
{	(were to) Simple Cond. Form . . . (7)
{ Sub. Future Perfect {	(should have) . . . Cond. or Indicative . . . (8)
{	(would have) . . . Comp. Cond. Form . . . (9)

[注意] 例句之數字與表中之數字互相對應。

- (1) { If that **be** the case, I **can** wait a little. (如果是這樣, 那我不妨等一下。)
- { If it **rain**, I **shall not start**. (如果天下雨, 我就不走。)
- (2) { If he **have arrived**, they **ought** to send me word to the effect. (如果 he 到了, 他們就應該來對我這樣說。)
- { If he **have done** such a thing, he **will be** sure to repent it. (如果他做了這樣的事情, 那他一定是要後悔的。)

[注意] 但口語體中概用 Indicative 代 Subjunctive Present 及 Subjunctive Present Perfect。

(3) If I **knew** it, I **would tell** it to you. (如果我知道,我就告訴你。)

[注意] 應 Subjunctive Past 之結題法,亦有用複形者。此時提言指現在,結語指完了之行爲。

If the weather **were** good, more people **would have come**. (如果天氣好,人就來得更多了。)

(4) If I **had known** it, I **would have told** it to you. (如果我知道,我就告訴你了。)

[注意] 應 Subjunctive Past Perfect 之結題法,亦有用單形者,此時提言指過去,結語指現在而言。

If the locomotive **had not been invented**, we **should be travelling** in coaches now. (如果蒸汽機關不曾發明,我們現在還要坐着馬車旅行呢。)

(5) If I **should fail** this time, I **would try** again. (如果我這次失敗了,我還要再試一次。)

[注意] (a) 此種構文亦有顛倒順序,先出 Indicative 而後用 Subjunctive Future 者。

I **will try** again, if I **should fail** this time. (如果我這次失敗了,我還要再試一次。)

(b) 對於 Subjunctive "should" 亦有用命令法或 Indicative Present 者。

If you **should meet** him, please **tell** him so. (如果遇見他,請對他這樣說。)

If he **should do so**, I **am** much mistaken in his character. (如果他做這樣的事,那我是大大地誤解了他的性格了。)

(6) If you **would grant** my request, I **should esteem** it a great favour. (若你肯答應我的要求,那我是作為重恩看待。)

(7) If I **were to learn** a foreign language, I **would learn** French. (如果我學起外國語來,我是要學法語的。)

(8) If he **should not have arrived** yet, he **will (or would)** be sure to arrive to-morrow. (萬一他若是還沒有到,那麼明天他是一定到的。)

(9) If he **would but have tried** harder, he **would have succeeded**. (要是他再用功一點,他就成功了。)

[注意] 古時亦有用假設法代替結題法者。

If it were so, it **were** (= *would be*) well. (如果是這樣, 那就好。)

If thou hadst been here, my brother **had not died** (= *would not have died*). — *John*, xi, 21. (如果你在此地, 我的兄弟就不致於死了。)

提言之形 (Forms of the Protasis)

1. Conditional Clause 之先, 通例有 “if”, “in case”, “unless”, “provided” 等接續詞。

If I were rich, I should not have to work. (如果我有錢, 我就無須工作。)

Even if I were rich, I would work. (縱使有錢, 我也要工作。)

I shall wait **in case** he is absent. (他若不在, 我就等他。)

I will pardon him **provided** (that) he acknowledge his fault. (如果他認錯, 我就饒他。)

2. Conditional Clause 之 “if” 常行省略, 此時 Subjunctive 之動詞 (有助動詞時則助動詞) 必放在 Subject 之前面。

Should any one call (= *if any one should call*), say that I shall not be home till evening. (如果有人來訪, 說我要等到晚上才回家。)

Were it not (= *if it were not*) for his idleness, he would be a good student. (要是他不懶惰, 他就是個好學生。)

Had you been more careful (= *if you had been more careful*), you would not have fallen ill. (要是你更小心一點, 你就不會生病了。)

[注意] 用在 Concessive Clause 中之 Subjunctive 動詞, 亦有置於文句之前面者。

Be it ever so humble, there is no place like home. — *John Howard Payne* (不論如何卑陋, 天下無處勝吾家。)

3. Infinitive, Preposition, Conjunction 及其他品詞中, 亦有含條件之意者。

(a) An Infinitive:—

What shall I do? It would be wrong **to tell** (= *if I were to tell*) a lie. (怎麼辦好呢? 說慌是不行的。)

To hear (=if one were to hear) him speak English, one would take him for an Englishman. (聽他說英語,人總以為他是英國人。)
 I should be happy **to be** (=if I could be) of service to you. (若能効勞於君,我是引為榮幸的。)

(b) **A Preposit on:—**

With (=if I had) your assistance, I should certainly succeed. (若得君之幫助,我是必定成功的。)

Without (=if there were no) water, nothing could live. (若無水,則萬物皆死。)

But for (=if it were not for) his idleness, he would be a good student. (若他不懶惰,他便是一個好學生。)

But for (=if it had not been for) your care, I should have died. (若沒有你的照料,我就死去了。)

[注意] 由以上兩例,可知“but for”既可代用作 Subjunctive Past, 亦可代用作 Subjunctive Past Perfect。

(c) **A Conjunction:—**

He worked very hard, **otherwise** (or **or else**) he would have failed. (=If he had not worked hard, ...) (他非常用功,否則他就要失敗了。)

I would have replied, **but that** (=but for the fact that) he prevented me. (=... if he had not prevented me.) (如果他沒有阻止我,我就要回答了。)

(d) **A Noun:—**

A wise man would not do such a thing. (=If he were a wise man, he would not do such a thing.) (若是聰明人,這種事情是不肯做的。)
Why, a child could answer it. (就是孩兒也能回答得出。)

4. 條件全然略去者。

(a) “I should like to ...” 為比較 “I like ...” 口調更為溫和之語法,含有 “if I could ...” 之意。

I should very much like to go with you. (我很想和你一塊兒去。)

I should like to go abroad. (=I should like to go abroad, if I could.)

(我是想出洋去的。)

[注意] “I should like” 往往亦作 “I would like”，其疑問形爲 “Would you like...?”

(b) “I should think (or say)” 爲比較 “I think”, “I say” 口調更爲婉轉之語法, 含有 “if I thought about it” 或 “if I might venture my opinion” 之意。

How old do you think he is? — He must be above forty, **I should think**. (你想他有多少年紀? — 我想一定是四十歲以上的樣子。)

Is he the greatest Chinese statesman living? — **I should think (or say)** so. (他是目前中國最大的政治家嗎? — 我想大概是的。)

(c) “It would seem” = I should think.

He is a scholar, isn't he? — So **it would seem**. (他是個學者嗎? — 大概是的呢。)

(d) “Would you?” 較 “will you?” 更爲客氣, 含有 “if I were to ask you” 之意

Would you kindly show me the way? (可否請你指點我路徑。)

同樣, “Might I ask you?” “Could you?” 亦較 “May I ask you?” “Can you?” 爲客氣。

Might I ask you to show me the way? (我可否請你指點我路徑。)

Could you come and show me the way? (你可否來指點我路徑。)

(e) “I would advise you” 較 “I advise you” 爲客氣, 含有 “if I were to advise you” 之意

I would advise you to go to the seaside. (我要勸勸你到海邊去。)

(f) “I would rather” 表選擇之意。

I would rather die than live in dishonour. (=I prefer death to dishonour.) (含恥而生, 不如死去好。)

[注意] 此種構文亦有用 “I had rather” 者。

(g) “You had better (or best)” 爲 “You would have it better to . . .” 之變形，與 “I would advise you to . . .” 同樣，表勸告 (Advise) 之意味。

You had better go to the seaside. (你還是到海邊去好。)

You had best keep alive. (活着最爲得策。)

Exercise XLI

將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 如果他不懈惰，他就是個好教師。
2. 要是我，我是不做這種事情的。
3. 看你在做，好像並不難的樣子。
4. 若有人來訪，說我生着病。
5. 如果沒有這個障礙，我是可以成功的。
6. 他一定是生了病或者什麼，否則他是一定來的。
7. 可否煩你將這一節說明給我聽聽？
8. 你爲保養身體，還是旅行去好。
9. 他是個詩人嗎？——我想大概是的吧。
10. 若要我投降，我寧可死去。

3. 命令法 (Imperative Mood)

命令法之種類 (Kinds of the Imperative)

(1) Direct Imperative (直接命令)：—

命令法之 Subject 常爲第二人稱，但人稱代名詞 “you” 通常省略。Tense 只用 Present，不拘單數複數，一概用 Root Form。

Work hard. (努力工作呀。)

Be diligent. (勤力點。)

使語勢特別加強時，動詞之前添用 “do”。

Do be quiet! (靜點!)

Mother, **do take me** to the play. (母親,請帶了我去看戲吧。)

表打消之命令,前面用“do not”。

Do not be idle. (勿怠惰。)

Do not fear. (不要怕。)

古文體中表打消時不用“do”,而將“not”放在動詞之後面。

MODERN FORM

Do not fear.

Do not be afraid.

OLDER FORM

Fear not.

Be not afraid.

[注意] 命令文句中偶然亦有用 Subject 者。

Now **you go** and **get** me my hammer. Will; and **you bring** me the rule, Tom. (Will, 你去把我的鐵槌拿了來;還有你, Tom, 你去把我的尺拿了來。)

Don't you believe it! (不要相信這個!)

(2) **Indirect Imperative** (間接命令):—

對於第三者之命令,用“**Let him (them)**”之形。

{ **Come at once.** (立刻就來。)[直接]

{ **Let him come at once.** (叫他立刻就來。)[間接]

對於眼前之人發命令時,若用第三人稱,亦須取“let”之形。

{ **Men, do your best.** (諸位努力呀。)[直接]

{ **Let each man do his best.** (每個人都須努力。)[間接]

[注意] (a) 間接命令之“let”,有時可解作“should”之意。

Let the teacher look to the interests of the students. (爲教師者應顧到學生之利益。)

Let young men bear this fact in mind. (青年宜將此事記在心中。)

(b) 間接命令有時用作‘要怎樣就怎樣吧,於我無關’之意味。

{ **Blow, wind, blow!** (風呀,吹就吹吧。)[直接]

{ **Let the wind blow.** (風要吹就吹吧。)[間接]

“**Let me . . .**”爲對於自己之間接命令,表示向對方乞求允許之意味。

Let me speak! (讓我說吧!)

Let me go! (讓我去吧!)

It is hard work to teach English, **let me tell you.** (我對你講,教英語是一件苦事呢。)

“**Let us . . .**” 用於發表提議時。

Where shall we go?—**Let us** go to the park. (我們到那裏去呢?——到公園裏去吧。)

Let us take a walk. (去散步如何。)

Active 之命令法,改爲 Passive 時,成爲間接命令。

{ **Do it at once.**
= **Let it be done at once.** } (立刻就做。)

{ **Hear me.**
= **Let me be heard.** } (聽我的說話。)

{ **Obey him.**
= **Let him be obeyed.** } (服從他。)

命令法之特別用法

(Special Uses of the Imperative)

命令法除表 Command (命令), Request (請求) 之意外,尚有以下幾種用法。

(1) **Conditional Imperative** (條件的命令)——用於命令法之後有 “and” 或 “or” 時。

Work hard, and you will succeed. (= *If you work hard, you will succeed.*) (努力工作吧,這樣一來你就成功。)

Work hard, or you will fail. (= *If you do not work hard, you will fail.*) (努力工作呀,否則你將失敗。)

(2) **Concessive Imperative** (讓步的命令)——此爲‘縱使如何如何’之意。

Be that as it may (= *However that may be*), it is not a pleasant affair.

(不論如何，總之這是一件不愉快的事情。)

Come what may (= *Whatever may happen*), I am prepared for the worst. (不論發生什麼事情，我總是預防着萬一。)

Go where you will (= *Wherever you may go*), you can not succeed without perseverance. (不論你到那裏去，沒有忍耐心你總不能成功。)

Be the matter what it may
Let the matter be what it may } (= *Whatever the matter may be*), always
 do your best. (不論事情如何，你總須常常盡你的全力。)

(3) **Absolute Imperative** (獨立的命令)——此為 “suppose” 或 “say” 用作命令法時。

Suppose (= *If*) you had a sum of money—**say** (= *for instance*) a thousand dollar, what would you do with it? (假設你有若干錢——譬如說一千元，那你將怎麼辦呢?)

Exercise XLII

將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 不論人家怎樣說，我總盡我的職務。
2. 宣佈出來，否則我是不饒你的。
3. 和氣待人吧，這樣一來，人亦和氣待你了。
4. 爲學生者，須將此事銘感於心。
5. 我們立刻就着手做吧。
6. 假設你是世界上最富的人，你將如何辦呢？
7. 不論你怎樣發笑，事實總是事實。
8. 中國之興亡在此一戰，各人都努力吧。

4. 可能法 (Potential Mood)

用助動詞 “may”, “can”, “must” 作成之動詞之形，即爲 Potential Mood。

1) 與意志動詞連用, 表‘許可’ (may), ‘能力’ (can), ‘必要’ (must) 者, 名之曰 Primary Use (第一用法)。

(2) 與無意志動詞連用, 表‘或許’ (may), ‘必定’ (must), ‘不會’ (can not) 等 Inference (推斷) 者, 名之曰 Secondary Use (第二用法)。

Potential Mood 之時制有四:

<i>I. Potential Present</i>	<i>II. Potential Present Perfect</i>
May Can } + Root Form Must }	May Can not } have + P.P. Must }
<i>III. Potential Past</i>	<i>IV. Potential Past Perfect</i>
Might Could } + Root Form (Must) }	Might Could } have + P.P. (Must) }

[注意] 此等助動詞與“shall”, “will” 同樣, 連接動詞之 Root Form 而用, 無第三人稱單數之語尾變化。

(1) 可能法現在 (Potential Present)

“May”

(1) Primary Use:—

(a) Permission (許可)——“May” 與意志動詞連用時, 表許可之意, 其反面即 Prohibition (禁止) 用 “must not”。

May I go to the play? (我可以去看戲嗎?)

{ Yes, you may go. (你可以去。)

{ No, you must not go to such places. (你不准到這種地方去。)

(b) **Concession (讓步)**——“May”與“say”之一類動詞連用時，表讓步之觀念，為‘不妨如何如何’之意，與“can perhaps”之義相同。其反面用“can not”。

You **may say** that he was a great man, but you **can not call** him a good man. (你不妨說他是偉人，但你卻不能稱他是善人。)

表讓步之“may”又有如下之慣用法。

He **may well** be proud of his son. (他儘可以誇耀他自己的兒子。)

I **may as well** begin at once. (我想還是立刻着手好。)

You **may as well** call a cat a little tiger **as call** a tiger a big cat. (若稱虎為大貓，並也不妨稱貓為小虎。)

(2) Secondary Use:—

“May”與無意志動詞連用時，為‘或許’之意，表 Possibility 之觀念。其打消形“may not”為‘或許不’之意。

The report **may or may not** be true. (這消息或許是真，或許是不真的。)

此種“may”不論表現在未來，皆可以用。

現在——He **may be** honest. (=Perhaps he **is** honest.) (他或許是誠實的。)

未來——He **may succeed**. (=Perhaps he **will** succeed.) (他或許將成功。)

(3) Subjunctive Use:—

(a) 用於“though”，“whether”，“whoever”，“whatever”，“whichever”，“whenever”，“wherever”，“however”等所導之 Concessive Clause 中。

Though he **may be** a good scholar, he **is certainly not** a good teacher. (他學問雖好，卻並不是一個好教師。)

Whether the report **may be** true or not, it does not concern us. (消息確實與否，於我們是沒有關係的。)

Wherever you **may** hide, I will find you out. (不論你躲在那裏，我總把你找得出來。)

(b) 用於“that”，“so that”，“in order that”等所率之 Final

Clause (表目的之短句)中。

He works hard (in order) **that** he **may** succeed. (他爲了要想成功而勤地工作。)

Tell me the story again, **so that** you **may** be understood. (請再講一遍,使我可以懂得你的話。)

(c) 用於表祈願之 Optative Clause 中。

May you succeed! (=I wish you may succeed!) (祝君成功!)

May you come back safe and sound! (祝君平安回來!)

比較 { I hope (=I think) you **will** succeed. (我想你是成功的。)
 { I hope (=I wish) you **may** succeed. (我希望你成功。)

“Can”

(1) Primary Use:—

“Can” 與意志動詞連用時表 Ability (能力), 其打消形 “can not” 表 Inability (不能)。

Can you swim? (你能游泳嗎?)

{ **Yes**, I **can** swim. (我能游泳。)

{ **No**, I **can not** swim. (我不能游泳。)

(2) Secondary Use:—

“Can” 之打消形或疑問形與無意志動詞連用時, 表 Impossibility, 意爲‘那有這種事情’, 這種事情是不會有的’。

Can it be true? (這豈是真的?)

It **can not** be true. (這是不會真的。)

Can he be ill when he runs about like that? (他那樣地跑着, 怎麼會生着病呢?)

比較 { The report **may not** be true. = It is possible that it is not true.
 (這消息或許是不真確的。)
 { The report **can not** be true. = It is impossible that it is true.
 (這消息是不會真確的。)

此種意味之“can not”，不論表現在未來，皆可以用。

現在——It **can not be true.** (= It is impossible that it **is true.**) (這是不會真確的。)

未來——You **can not fail.** (= It is impossible that you **will fail.**) (你是不會失敗的。)

“Must”

(1) Primary Use:—

(a) Necessity (必要)——“must” 與意志動詞連用時，表‘必要’，‘必須’之意。

One **must** pay what one owes. (欠的東西是必須還的。)

打消形之“must not” 爲禁止之意，表 Non-Necessity (不必要) 時用“need not”。

比較 { **May I go?**—No, you **must not** go. (我可以去嗎?—你不准去。)
 { **Must I go?**—No, you **need not** go. (我必須去嗎?—你用不着去。)

(b) Insistence (主張)——由必要之意一轉，“must” 用於表 Insistence 或 Strong Desire。

I **must** know your reason. (= I *insist on* knowing your reason.) (我非知道你的理由不可。)

You **must** stay to dinner. (I *insist on* your staying to dinner.) (你一定非吃了飯去不可。)

(2) Secondary Use:—

(a) Certainty (確實斷定)——“Must” 與無意志動詞連用時，表斷然確實之意味，即所謂 Logical Necessity (理論上之必然)。

The report **can not be true**, it **must be false.** (這消息不會真確，一定是虛報。)

此“must”與“may”, “can”同, 不論表現在未來, 皆可以用。

現在——He **must** be honest. (= He is certainly honest.) (他必定是誠實的。)

未來——He **must** succeed. (= He will certainly succeed.) (他必定是成功的。)

(b) **Presumption** (推論)——由前項之用法一轉, “must”用於表‘一定是如何如何吧’之意。

You have walked all the way? Then you **must** be tired. (你全是走了來的嗎? 那你一定是疲乏了吧。)

* * *

今將以上所述“may”, “can”, “must”之用法列表於下。

(1) **Primary Uses:—**

You may do so.	(可以這樣做)	<i>Permission.</i>
You must not do so.	(不准這樣做)	<i>Prohibition.</i>
I can do so.	(能這樣做)	<i>Ability.</i>
I can not do so.	(不能這樣做)	<i>Inability.</i>
You must do so.	(必須這樣做)	<i>Necessity.</i>
You need not do so.	(毋須這樣做)	<i>Non-Necessity.</i>

(2) **Secondary Uses:—**

It may be so.	(也許如此)	}	<i>Possibility.</i>
It may not be so.	(也許不如此)		
It must be so.	(必定如此)		<i>Certainty.</i>
It can not be so.	(不會如此)		<i>Imp-ssibility.</i>

(2) 可能法現在完了 (Potential Present Perfect)

可能法現在完了無 Primary Use, 只用表 Inference (推論) 之 Secondary Use. 關於完了之動作下 Inference 時用此形。

{ He may have arrived already. (他或許已經到了。)

{ He may not have arrived yet. (他或許還未曾到。)

Can he have arrived? (他難道已經到了嗎?)

He must have arrived. (他必定到了。)

(3) 可能法過去 (Potential Past)

Potential Past 之 “might”, “could”, “must” (had to), 與前述之 “should”, “would” 同樣, 有 Indicative, Subjunctive, Conditional 三種用法。

(1) Indicative:—

直說法之 “might”, “could”, “must”, 爲 “may”, “can”, “must” 之過去形, 多用於間接敘法中。 “Must” 之過去與現在同, 但表 Necessity (必要) 之意時, “must” 之過去用 “had to”。

(a) Primary Use:—

Permission: — { He said, “You may go.” } (他說我可以去的。)
 { He said that I might go. }

Ability: — { I asked, “Can you swim?” } (我問他能否游泳。)
 { I asked if he could swim. }

Necessity: — { He said, “I must go to school.” } (他說他非到學校
 { He said that he had to go to school. } 裏去不可。)

Insistence: — { He said, “I must know your reason.” } (他說必須要知
 { He said that he must know my reason. } 道我的理由。)

Prohibitions— { He said, "You **must not** drink." } (他說我不准喝酒。)
 { He said that I **must not** drink. }

(b) **Secondary Use**:—

{ He said, "The report **may** or **may not** be true."
 { He said that the report **might** or **might not** be true.
 (他說這消息或許是真,或許是不真的。)

{ I thought, "It **can not** be true; it **must** be false."
 { I thought it **could not** be true; it **must** be false.
 (我想這是不會真確的;這一定是謊話。)

(2) **Subjunctive**:—

Potential Past 作 Subjunctive Past 用時,表現在事實之反面,只有 Primary Use 而無 Secondary Use。“Must”之 Subjunctive Past 用 “had to”。

If I **might** = I **must not**.

If I **could** = I **can not**.

If I **had to** = I **need not**.

If I **might** give an opinion, I should say . . . (= I *must not* or *have no right to* give an opinion on the subject) (若我可以發表意見,我是要這樣這樣說的。)

I wish I **could** fly. (= I am sorry I *can not* fly.) (我願我能飛。)

I would fly to you, if I **could**. (如果我能夠飛,我就飛到你這裏來了。)

If I **had to** serve in the army, I would enter the cavalry. (= I *need not* serve in the army.) (如果我非從軍不可,那我是要當騎兵的。)

(3) **Conditional**:—

作 Conditional Mood 用之 “might” 與 “could”, 第一第二兩方之意味並用。“Must” 作第一之意味用時為 “should have to”, 作第二之意味用時仍為 “must”。

(a) Primary Meaning

I might (= <i>should be permitted to</i>) do so, if	=	I <i>must not</i> do so. (i)
		I <i>may</i> , but <i>do not</i> (ii)
I could (= <i>should be able to</i>) do so, if	=	I <i>can not</i> do so. (iii)
		I <i>can</i> , but <i>do not</i> do so. (iv)
I should have to do so, if	=	I <i>need not</i> do so. (v)

- (i) You **might** go to the play, if you were older = You *must not* go to the play, because you are too young. (如果年紀大一點, 那你就去看戲去。)
- (ii) I **might** go to the play, if I wanted to. = I *may* (= *am permitted to*) go, but I *do not* want to. (如果我要看戲, 我就可以去看。)
- (iii) You **could** see if you would. = You *can not* see, because you will not. (你如果要看, 就可以看。)
- (iv) I **could** enter the school if I tried. = I *can* enter the school, but I *do not* try. (如果我試了, 我就能入學。)
- (v) I **should have to** do so, if I were rich. = I *need not* do so, because I am poor. (如果我有錢, 我就非這樣做不可。)

(b) Secondary Meaning

I might succeed, if	=	I <i>should perhaps</i> succeed, if
You could not fail, if	=	You <i>would certainly not</i> fail, if
He must succeed, if	=	He <i>would certain'y</i> succeed, if

- If I tried hard, I **might** (= *should perhaps*) succeed. (如果我努力做去, 我或許成功。)
- If you did your best, you **could not** (= *would never*) fail. (如果你盡力做去, 你是不致於失敗的。)
- If he tried hard, he **must** (= *would certainly*) succeed. (如果他努力做去, 他必定成功。)

(4) 可能法過去完了 (Potential Past Perfect)

可能法過去完了亦有 Indicative, Subjunctive, Conditional 三種用法。

(1) Indicative:—

此為前述 Potential Present Perfect “may have been”, “must have been”, “can not have been” (“can have been?”) 等之過去形, 用於 Indirect Narration; 與 Potential Present Perfect 同樣, 只有 Secondary Use 而無 Primary Use。(請參照 Potential Present Perfect)

{ I said, “How **can I have done** wrong?”
 { I wondered how I **could have done** wrong. } (我奇怪我自己怎麼會做了錯事呢。)

{ He said, “You **may have done** wrong in opening the letter.”
 { He said that I **might have done** wrong in opening the letter.

(他說我拆了信的事或許是錯的。)

{ He said, “You **must have done** wrong in opening the letter.”
 { He said that I **must have done** wrong in opening the letter.

(他說我拆了信的事一定是錯的。)

{ I thought, “I **can not have done** wrong in doing so.”
 { I thought that I **could not have done** wrong in doing so.

(我想這樣子做是不見得錯的。)

(2) Subjunctive:—

Potential Past Perfect 作為 Subjunctive Past Perfect 用時, 表過去事實之反面, 只有 Primary Use 一種。“Must” 的缺形用 “had to”。

If I **might have done** so = I *must not* do so.

If I **could have done** so = I *could not* do so.

If I **had had to do** so = I *had not to do* so.

He would come if he **might have done** so. = He did not come, because he *was not permitted*. (如果他可以來,他就來了。)

I would have helped you if I **could have done** so. = I did not help you, because I *could not*. (如果我能夠幫助你,我就幫助你了。)

If I **had had to do it**, I would have done it at once. = I *had not to do* it, so I did not do it. (如果我非做不可,我就立刻做了。)

(3) Conditional:—

作 Conditional Mood 用之 Potential Past Perfect, 第一第二兩方意味並用。第一意味上之 ‘must’ 用 “should have had to”。

(a) Primary Meaning

I might have done so, if =	=	{	I <i>might not do</i> so (i)
			I <i>might</i> , but <i>did not do</i> so (ii)
I could have done so, if =	=	{	I <i>could not do</i> (iii)
			I <i>could</i> , but <i>did not do</i> so (iv)
I should have had to do so, if =	=	I <i>had not to do</i> so (v)	

- (i) You **might have gone** to the play, if you had been older. = You *were not permitted to go*, because you were not old. (如果你年紀大一點, 你就不妨去看戲。)
- (ii) I **might have gone** to the play, if I had wanted to. = I *was permitted to go*, but I did not want to. (我若要看戲, 我就可以去看。)
- (iii) I **could have entered** the school, if I had been here. = I *could not enter*, because I was not here. (如果我在此地, 我就能入學了。)
- (iv) I **could have entered** the school, if I had wanted to. = I *could enter*, but I did not want to. (如果我要入學, 我就能入學了。)
- (v) If I had not entered the school, I **should have had to** follow the plough. = I *had not to follow the plough*, because I entered the school. (如果我沒有進學校, 我就非務農不可了。)

(b) Secondary Meaning

I might have succeeded, if
= I <i>should perhaps</i> have succeeded, if
You could not have failed, if
= You <i>would certainly not</i> have failed, if
He must have succeeded, if
= He <i>would certainly</i> have succeeded, if

I might (= *should perhaps*) have succeeded, if I had worked harder.

(我若更努力一點，我也許成功了。)

You could (= *would certainly*) not have failed, if you had worked harder. (你若更努力一點，你就不會失敗了。)

He must (= *would certainly*) have succeeded, if he had worked harder.

(他若更努力一點，他就一定成功了。)

Exercise XLIII

將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 祝君一路順風。
2. 不論做什麼事情，語學知識是必要的。
3. 說張君到美國去了，未知確否。
4. 這是不會真確的，因為我昨天正遇見過他。
5. 你儘可以這樣說。
6. 如果我能夠借給你，我就把錢借給你了。
7. 如果中學校已畢業了的，你就用不着考試了。
8. 如果你不來救我，我就被殺死了。
9. 如果你願意，你是很可以借錢給我的。
10. 我願我能解決這種難問題。

時之呼應 (Sequence of Tenses)

1. 複合文句中 Principal Clause 之動詞若為現在，現在完了，或未來時，Dependent Clause 中動詞之 Tense，概不受何等限制。

He says He has said He will say	}	that he reads a book.	}	(現在)
		that he is reading a book.		
		that he has read a book.		
	}	that he has been reading a book.	}	(未來)
		that he will read.		
		that he will be reading.		
	}	that he will have read.	}	(過去)
		that he will have been reading.		
		that he read.		
	}	that he was reading.	}	(過去)
that he had read.				
that he had been reading.				

2. 但 Principal Clause 之動詞若爲過去時，則 Dependent Clause 中之動詞必須用 Past 或 Past Perfect 之類 是謂之 Sequence of Tenses。

I knew	}	that he painted pictures.
		that he was painting a picture.
		that he had painted a picture.
		that he had been painting a picture.
		that he would paint a picture.
		that he would be painting a picture.
		that he would have painted a picture.
		that he would have been painting a picture.

{ He is doubtful if he shall succeed, but he says he will do his best.
 (他覺得自己難以成功，但他說他要盡全力做去。)

{ He was doubtful if he should succeed, but he said he would do his best.

{ I work hard that I may succeed. (我起勁用功，心想得到成功。)

{ I worked hard that I might succeed.

Is she your sister? I thought she was your wife. (她是你的妹子嗎？我以爲是你的夫人。)

Has he returned? I did not know that he had returned. (他回來了嗎？
我不曾知道他已經回來了。)

【例外】(a) 敘述一般之真理時，Principal Clause 之動詞雖為過去，亦只用現在形。

I learned that honesty is the best policy. (我明白了正直是最善的政策。)
The teacher told us that the earth moves round the sun. (教師告訴我們，說地球是環繞着太陽走的。)

(b) Dependent Clause 中所言之事情，若為由過去而至現在之常習動作時，其動詞不受 Principal Clause 中動詞之影響。

I told him that I take a walk every afternoon. (我對他說，我是每天下午要散一次步的。)

(c) 敘述歷史上事實之過去 (Past)，即使 Principal Clause 之動詞為過去，亦不用過去完了。

The teacher told us that Columbus discovered America in 1492. (先生告訴我們，說哥倫布在 1492 年發見美洲。)

(d) 表比較之接續詞 “than” 或 “as” 等所導之 Dependent Clause 中，其 Tense 不受何等限制。

She sang then better than she has just done. (當時她唱得比現在所唱的還要好。)

She sang then as well as she has done to-day. (當時她也唱得像今天那樣的好。)

直接敘法與間接敘法 (Direct and Indirect Narration)

照人之所言，直接傳達人之言語者為 Direct Narration (直接敘法)，間接傳達人之言語而僅留其要旨者為 Indirect Narration (間接敘法)

Direct—He said, “I am ill.” (他說，“我生了病。”))

Indirect—He said that he was ill. (他說他生了病。)

此種 Sentence 中，Principal Clause 之動詞謂之 Reporting Verb；不論直接間接，所傳述之部分謂之 Reported Speech。Reporting Verb 之最普通者為 “say”，其他如 “ask”，“tell”，“inform”，“reply”，“answer” 等亦用之。

直接敘法時，(a) Reported Speech 之第一字須用 Capital Letter，(b) 先後須用 Quotation-Marks，(c) Principal Clause 與 Reported Speech 之間普通加一 Comma，而不用接續詞。

間接敘法時，a) 不用 Quotation-Marks，(b) Principal Clause 與 Reported Speech 之間須用 “that” 或其他接續詞，(c) 動詞須依照時之呼應之規則。

(1) 將直接敘法之文句改為間接敘法時，動詞之時制與代名詞之人稱等，須加以適當之變化。Reporting Verb 若為 Present, Present Perfect 或 Future 時，Reported Speech 中動詞之 Tense，概不受何等變化。

{ He says, “I am happy.” } (他說他是幸福的。)
 { He says that he is happy. }

{ He has told me, “I met your father.” } (他對我講，說他遇見了我的
 { He has told me that he met my father. } 父親。)

{ He will say, “I have no time for it.” } (他將說他沒有時間做這個。)
 { He will say that he has no time for it. }

(2) Reporting Verb 若為 Past 時，Reported Speech 中 Tense 之變化如下。

(a) Present } > Past
 Future }

{ He said, “I am wrong.” } (他說他是錯了。)
 { He said that he was wrong. }

{ He said, “I shall stay a week or so.” } (他說他將住一個禮拜光
 { He said that he should stay a week or so. } 景。)

【注意】但敘述一般真理時，不用過去。

{ He said, "The earth **moves** round the sun." } (他說地球是繞日而行的。)
 { He said that the earth **moves** round the sun. }

(b) Present Perfect } > Past Perfect
 Past

{ He said, "I **have done** it." } (他說這件事他已做好了。)
 { He said that he **had done** it. }

{ He told me, "I **arrived** just now." } (他告訴我說他方才到的。)
 { He told me that he **had arrived** just then. }

【注意】但歷史上之事實只用 Past。

{ He said, "Dr. Johnson **was** blind of one eye." }
 { He said that Dr. Johnson **was** blind of one eye. }
 (他說 Johnson 博士是一隻眼睛瞎的。)

(3) Reported Speech 之動詞若為 Subjunctive Mood (但 Subjunctive Present 不在此例)或 Conditional Mood 時，雖遇 Reporting Verb 為過去，亦不受變化。

{ He said, "I **would** go abroad if I **were** rich." }
 { He said that he **would** go abroad if he **were** rich. }
 (他說他如果有錢，他就要出洋去了。)

{ He said, "If I **had** the money, you **should** have it." }
 { He said that if he **had** the money, I **should** have it. }
 (他說他如果有錢，他就借給我了。)

{ He said, "If I **had been** you, I **would have gone** abroad." }
 { He said that if he **had been** I, he **would have gone** abroad. }
 (他說如果他是我，他就要出洋去了。)

(4) Reported Speech 若為 Interrogative Sentence 時，須將 Reporting Verb 之 "say" 改為 "ask", "inquire", "demand", 或 "want to know" 等 若無疑問詞時，須添加 "if" 或 "whether"。

{ He said to me, "Where are you going?" } (他問我到那裏去。)
 { He asked me **where** I was going. }

{ He asked "Where do you live?" } (他問我住在那裏。)
 { He inquired of me **where** I lived. }

{ He said to me, "Why did you strike my dog?" } (他責問我爲什麼打了他的狗。)
 { He demanded of me **why** I had struck his dog. }

{ The man said, "When shall I call again?" }
 { The man wished to know **when** he should call again.
 (那個人要想知道什麼時候他可以再來訪問。)

{ He said to me, "Do you know him?" } (他問我是否知道那個人。)
 { He asked me { **whether** } I knew him. }
 { **if** }

(5) Reported Speech 若爲 Imperative Sentence 時，須將 Reporting Verb 之 "say" 變爲 "tell", "order", "bid", "command", "advise" 或 "forbid" 等。此時命令之動詞變爲 Infinitive。

{ I said to the boys, "Be quiet." } (我叫孩子們靜一點。)
 { I told the boys **to be** quiet. }

{ I said, "Boys, don't make such a noise." }
 { I told the boys **not to make** such a noise. } (我叫孩子們不要這樣騷擾。)
 { I forbade the boys **to make** such a noise. }

{ "Fire," cried the officer to his men. } (士官叫部下開炮。)
 { The officer **ordered** his men **to fire**. }

{ He said to me, "Please wait a moment." } (他要我稍稍等一下。)
 { He asked me **to wait** a moment. }

{ I said to him, "Please lend me your knife." }
 { I asked him **to be** kind enough to lend me his knife.
 (我請求他把小刀借一借給我。)

(6) Reported Speech 若爲 Exclamatory Sentence 時，須除去感嘆詞，用其他語表出內中之意義。

{ He said, "How happy I am!"
He said that he was very happy. } (他說他真是非常幸福。)

{ He said, "Alas! I have failed."
He exclaimed with a sigh that he had failed. } (他長嘆他自己失敗了。)

(7) 將直接敘法改爲間接敘法時，除 Tense 與 Person 之外，最普通之變化如下。

Direct	Indirect
now (現在)	then (當時)
this (這個)	that (那個)
these (這些)	those (那些)
here (此地)	there (那邊)
to-day (今天)	that day (那天)
to-morrow (明天)	{ the next day (翌日) the following day (翌日)
yesterday (昨天)	{ the day before (前一日) the previous day (前一日)
last night (昨夜)	{ the night before (前一夜) the previous night (前一夜)
ago (自今以前)	before (自當時以前)

Pointing to a book on the shelf, he said, "I bought **this** a few days ago, but I am going to sell it **tomorrow**."

Pointing to a book on the shelf, he said that had bought **that** only a few days **before**, but that he was going to sell it **the next day**. (手指着書架上的一本書，他說那是二三日以前買來的，但他打算翌日就要賣掉牠。)

Exercise XLIV

A. 變更下列文句之 Narration:—

1. He said to him, "Why do you stop here?"
2. He says to me that he has been speaking.

3. He asked me if I had ever seen that man.
4. He said to his friend. "Please do this for me by tomorrow."
5. He said to me, "Did you see a lion?"
6. He said that he would go there.
7. I said to him, "Will you come?"
8. He said to his friend, "Work steadily."
9. He said to me, "I was put in jail yesterday."
10. He said that he had seen that man long before.
11. My servant told me, "The rain was falling yesterday."
12. I said that I was going to call on him that day.
13. His advice was, "You will some day regret it."
14. He says to her, "You had better give up card-playing."
15. My cousin in Peiping wrote to me, saying, "Your letter arrived yesterday. It is very cold here."
16. Emerson said, "Self-trust is the essence of heroism."
17. He said that he had seen it the day before.
18. He will say, "The boy was diligent."
19. They said to me, "What we have seen is not what we expected."
20. I said to him. "Would you kindly lend me your pencil?"

B. 矯正下列文句中之錯誤：—

1. His parents were very glad to hear that their son has passed the examination.
2. He told me just now that he has bought a house.
3. He told me that he wishes to sell his old house.
4. He has done so that he might win your favour.
5. He reluctantly admitted that he may have committed the blunder.
6. I did not know that he is your cousin.

V. 動 狀 詞 (Verbs)

1. 不 定 詞 (Infinitive)

不 定 詞 的 形 (FORMS OF THE INFINITIVE)

Infinitive (不定詞)無语法上的主語，亦無人稱及數的變化，只用於述動作本身。通常由“to”加 Root Form 而成，Tense 只有 Simple 與 Perfect 兩種。今以動詞“study”為例，列表於下。

	Active		Passive
	Indefinite	Progressive	
Simple	to study	to be studying	to be studied
Perfect	to have studied	to have been studying	to have been studied

(1) Simple Infinitives (單形不定詞):—

(a) Simple Infinitive 連接表推想的動詞“seem”, “appear”, “be said”, “be thought”等而用時，表示與該動詞同時所起的動作 (Simultaneous Action)。即動詞若為 Present，則後面的 Infinitive 亦表 Present 的事情；動詞若為 Past，則後面的 Infinitive 亦隨之表 Past 的事情。

- { He *seems to be* rich. (=It *seems* that he *is* rich.) (他好像有錢。)
 { He *seemed to be* rich. (=It *seemed* that he *was* rich.) (他好像是
 有錢的。)
 { He *seemed to be studying* hard. (=It *seemed* that he *was* studying
 hard) (他那時好像正在用功。)

(b) Simple Infinitive 連接表未來觀念的動詞“wish”, “hope”, “intend”, “expect”, “promise”, “propose”等而用時，亦含有未來的意味，用以表後起的動作 (Subsequent Action)。

{ He *promises to do his best.* (=He says he **will do his best.**) (他說他盡力去做。)

{ He *promised to do his best.* (=He said he **would do his best.**) (他說過他要盡力去做。)

I *expect him to succeed.* (=I think he **will succeed.**) (我望他會成功。)

I *intend to do it.* (=I think I **will do it.**) (我打算做這件事。)

(2) Perfect Infinitives (完了形不定詞):—

(a) Perfect Infinitive 用在動詞 “seem”, “appear”, “be thought” 等字後面時,表示較此種動詞先起的動作 (Prior Action)。

{ He *seems to have been idle.* (=It *seems* that he **has been idle.**) (他好像是懶惰過來的。)

{ He *seemed to have been idle.* (=It *seemed* that he **had been idle.**) (從前他好像是懶惰過的。)

比較 { He *seemed to be rich.* (=It *seemed* that he **was rich.**) (他好像是有錢的。)

{ He *seems to have been rich.* (=It *seems* that he **was rich.**) (他好像是有過錢的。)

(b) Perfect Infinitive 連接 “wish”, “hope”, “intend”, “expect”, “promise” 等動詞的 Past 而用時,表動作的非實現 (Non-Realization of the Action)。請比較:—

{ He *hoped to have succeeded.* (=He *hoped to succeed*, but he did not.) (他原是希望成功的,但他卻沒有成功。)[結果不能]

{ He *hoped to succeed.* (=He may or may not have succeeded.) (他希望成功,但結果有否成功不得而知。)[結果不明]

{ He *expected to have come.* (他原是打算來的。)[結果不能]

{ He *expected to come.* (他曾希望要來。)[結果不明]

{ He *was to have come*, but he did not. (他原是應該來的,但他卻沒有來。)[結果不能]

{ He *was to come*, but I don't know whether he did or not. (他是應該來的,但我不知道他來了沒有。)[結果不明]

不定詞的用法 (USES OF THE INFINITIVE)

不定詞的用法有以下四種：

- (1) **Non-Infinitives** (名詞不定詞)
 - (2) **Adjective Infinitives** (形容詞不定詞)
 - (3) **Adverbial Infinitives** (副詞不定詞)
 - (4) **Absolute Infinitives** (獨立不定詞)
-

(1) 名詞不定詞 (Noun-Infinitive)

凡作用與名詞相同的 Infinitive, 都叫做 Noun-Infinitive。其用法有以下三種：

- (a) **As Subject** (作主語用)
 - (b) **As Object** (作目的語用)
 - (c) **As Complement** (作補足語用)
-

(a) 作主語用的不定詞

(Noun-Infinitive As Subject)

Infinitive 作主語用時, 可做名詞或代名詞的格式, 將主語的 Infinitive 放在文句的先端

To know oneself is difficult. (知己不易。)

To teach is hard. (教書爲難事。)

To err is human; to forgive divine. — *Pope*. (誤爲人之常, 宥爲神之樂。)

但普通的用法, 多將主語的 Infinitive 放在文句的後端, 前面先用 “it” 作形式上的主語 (Formal Subject), 使 Infinitive 與 “it” 立於 Apposition (同格) 的地位。

It is difficult **to know** oneself. (知己不易。)

It is wrong **to tell** a lie. (說謊話是不行的。)

Infinitive 無文法上的主語，此事前已述之。但諸君須注意，Infinitive 雖無文法上的主語，意味上的主語 (Sense-Subject) 卻常常有之。以上兩例，因其表一般的真理，毋須指定某人，故 Sense-Subject 可以不用。但若要指出特定的某個事物時，則 Sense-Subject 非有不可。又，Noun-Infinitive 的 Sense-Subject 前面，概須放入前置詞 “for”。

It is impossible **for us to solve** this question. (要我們來解決這問題是不可能的。)

It was an easy thing **for Lord Byron to be** a great poet. (拜倫的成為偉大的詩人，是容易的事情。)

比較 { It is hard **to master** a language. (學通一種國語是困難的。)
 { It is hard **for a Chinese to master** any European tongue. (要中國人學通不論那一種歐洲語是困難的。)

(b) 作目的語用的不定詞

(Noun-Infinitive As Object)

(1) Infinitive 作不完全他動詞即 Facitive Verb 的 Object 用時，概放在補足語的後面，前面用形式上的目的語 (Formal Object) “it”。

{ It was easy **to perform** the task. [主語]
 { I found it easy **to perform** the task. [目的語]
 (做這件工作，我覺得並不難。)

{ It is a rule with me **to side** with the poor. [主語]
 { I make it a rule **to side** with the poor. [目的語]
 (援助窮人是我的主義。)

{ I thought (that) it was wrong to disobey him. [主語]
 I thought it wrong to disobey him. [目的語]
 (不服從他,我覺得是不對的。)

(2) Noun-Infinitive 作 “know”, “learn”, “teach”, “tell”, “show” 等知識動詞的 Object 用時,前面概放 “**wha**”, “**when**”, “**how**”, “**where**” 等 Relative Adverb (關係副詞) 而成為 Noun Phrase。

He does not know **how to write** (=the way to write). (他不曉得寫法。)

I wish I know **where to go** (=the place for going). (我希望我能知道去的地方。)

I scarcely know **what to say** (=what I ought to say). (我幾乎不明白怎樣說才好。)

(3) 動詞 “**think**”, 不論表有意志的 Intention (意向), 或無意志的 Expectation (期待), 皆不得用 Infinitive 為 Object。

{ I think to try. (誤)
 I think (that) I will try. (正) } (我要試一下。)
 = I intend to try. (正)

{ I think to succeed. (誤)
 I think (that) I shall succeed. (正) } (我想我會成功。)
 = I expect to succeed. (正)

又, 動詞 “**say**” 亦不得用 Infinitive 作 Object。

{ He says to do his best. (誤)
 He says he will do his best. (正) } (他說他要盡力做。)
 = He promises to do his best. (正)

{ She said not to marry him. (誤)
 She said she would not marry him. (正) } (她說她不願和他結婚。)
 = She refused to marry him. (正)

{ He said to kill me. (誤)
 He said he would kill me. (正) } (他說他要殺我。)
 = He threatened to kill me. (正)

(c) 作補足語用的不定詞 (Noun-Infinitive As Complement)

用 Infinitive 作 Complement 的動詞，大概有以下數種。

(1) Intransitive Verbs (自動詞):—

He *seems to be* honest. (他好像是誠實的。)

The man *turned out to be* an impostor. (那人原來是個騙子。)

How *came you to know* him? (你怎樣認識他的?)

No one *happened to be* by. (沒有人在近旁。)

(2) Verbs of Judgment (判斷動詞)——即動詞的表‘以爲如何如何’的意味者。

I *thought him to be* a good man. (我以爲他是一個好人。)

I *found him to be* a great liar. (我發見了他原是一個大謊言家。)

We *supposed him to be* dead. (我們以爲他死了。)

She *fancies herself to be* beautiful. (她以爲自己是一個美人。)

(3) Verbs of Statement (陳述動詞):—

He *declares it to be* false. (他明言這是不確的。)

He *asserts his statement to be* true. (他斷言他的話是真確的。)

He *admits my statement to be* true. (他承認我的話是真確的。)

The doctor *pronounced his illness to be* very serious. (醫生宣告他的病勢嚴重。)

此類動詞中，只有“say”不得用 Infinitive 作 Complement。

He *said it to be* true. (誤)

He *said that it was* true. (正)

= He *declared it to be* true. (正)

(他說這是真的。)

He *said me to go* to the play. (誤)

He *said I might go* to the play. (正)

= He *permitted me to go* to the play. (正)

(他說我可以去看戲。)

[注意] (a) 照以上所說，諸君可知動詞“say”既不能用 Infinitive 作 Object，亦不能用 Infinitive 作 Complement。但“say”作 Passive 用時，可用 Infinitive 作 Complement。

{ It is said that he is mad. } (聽說他發狂了。)
 { He is said to be mad. }

(b) 動詞 “think” 不能用 Infinitive 作 Object, 前已述之。但 “think” 用於表判斷的意味時, 可用 Infinitive 作 Complement.

I think him to be honest. (我覺得他是誠實的。)

(4) Verbs of Causation (使役動詞)——即動詞的表‘使何人作何事’的意味者。

If he does not wish to go, you need not compel him to go. (如果他願意去, 你是用不着強迫他去的。)[強迫]

My father permitted me to attend the banquet. (父親允許我去列席宴會。)[許可]

My father has forbidden me to smoke. (父親禁止我吸煙。)[禁止]

I ordered him to clean the garden. (我叫他打掃庭園。)[命令]

He begged me to stay. (他請求我不要走。)[請求]

My doctor advised me to go to the seaside. (醫生勸我到海邊去。)[勸導]

Heat causes water to evaporate. (熱使水蒸發。)[原因]

原形不定詞 (Root-Infinitive)

無 Infinitive 的記號 “to”, 照動詞的 Root Form 而用的 Infinitive, 叫做 Root-Infinitive. Root-Infinitive 本宜歸入前項 Noun-Infinitive as Complement 之內, 今為諸君便於了解起見, 特另設一項詳述之。用 Root-Infinitive 作 Complement 的動詞, 有以下兩種。

(a) Verbs of Perception (知覺動詞)——即見聞等關係於五官的動詞。

To see:—S^e the dog run. (看狗跑。)

To hear:—Hear the bird sing. (聽鳥唱歌。)

To feel:—I felt the house shake. (我感到房子震動。)

To observe:—They observed the barometer fall suddenly. (他們看到風雨表突然下降。)

To watch:—I was *watching* the crows fly home to roost (我眺望着烏鴉飛回巢去。)

To notice:—I did not *notice* (or *perceive*) any one enter the room. (我並沒有看到什麼人走進房間裏去。)

以上動詞若用於 Passive 時，則須用附有“to”的 Infinitive 作 Complement。

{ I saw the dog **run**. [Active]
The dog *was seen to run*. [Passive] } (我看狗跑。)

{ I never *heard* him **laugh**. [Active]
He *was never heard to laugh*. [Passive] } (我從來沒有聽到他笑過。)

(b) **Verbs of Causation** (使役動詞)——使役動詞中用 Root-Infinitive 作 Complement 者，有以下五個。

To let:—I *let* him **go**. (= I permitted [or allowed] him to go.) (我叫他去了。)

To make:—I *made* him **drink**. (= I forced him to drink.) (我強迫他飲了酒。)

To bid:—*Bid* him **wait**. (= Tell him to wait.) (叫他等着。)

To have:—I *had* him **go** with me. (= I got him to go with me.) (我叫了他同去。)

To help:—*Help* me **put** the room in order. (請幫我將房間整頓一下。)

[注意] 但“help”亦有用作通常的 Infinitive 作 Complement 者。

Help me to finish the work. (請幫我做完這工作。)

上述五個動詞中，“make”與“bid”亦用於作 Passive，但須用有“to”的 Infinitive 作 Complement。

{ They *made* me **sign** the paper. } (他們強迫我簽了字。)
{ I *was made to sign* the paper. }

{ He *bade* me **follow** him. } (他叫我跟了他去。)
{ I *was bidden to follow* him. }

除以上兩種動詞外，今略舉 Root-Infinitive 的慣用成語如下。

(a) “Had better”——此即“would have it better to...”的略形，表忠告之意。

You **had better start** at once. (你還是立刻動身走好。)

- (b) “**Had best**”——與“**had better**”同樣，表忠告之意

I told him that he **had best study** in the country. (我勸他最好在鄉間讀書。)

- (c) “**Had rather**”——用於表選擇之意。

I **had rather be** a doorkeeper in the house of Lord, than dwell in the tents of wickedness. (與其住在邪惡的天幕中，我寧可做一個神宮的守門人。)

- (d) “**Can not (choose) but**”——此為‘不得不’[只得]之意。

I **can not but go**. (我不得不去——除去無別法。)

I **could not but obey** his command. (我只得服從他的命令。)

Who **can but pity** her? (= No one can but pity her.) (誰能做得到不可憐她呢?)

- (e) “**Do nothing but**”——此為‘只是如何如何’之意。

He **does nothing but drink** every day. (他只是每天喝酒。)

- (f) “**Have**” + Object + Root-Infinitive——此形除前述使役的用法以外，又用於表 Passive 的意味。前者含有意志，後者不含何等意志。

{ I **had him do** the work. (= got him + Infinitive) [含意志]
(我叫他做了工作。)

{ I **had my brother die**. (Passive Meaning) [無意志]
(我失了我的兄弟。)

{ I **will have him come**. (我要叫他來。)[含意志]

{ I **shall have him come**. (他將到我這裏來。)[無意志]

Exercise XLV

A. 將下列文句譯成英文：一

1. 他說他將來不再飲酒。
2. 他以爲他自己是一個了不得的人。

3. 叫你父親買一只錶給你吧。
4. 聽說他病得很利害。
5. 不論什麼東西，那位先生總是叫我們暗記的。
6. 我感覺到有人拉我的袖子。
7. 我叫家裏的人把你的行李拿到車站裏去吧。
8. 我不喜歡忙的時候有客人來。
9. 要那樣的人做事成功，是不可能的。
10. 父親不許我長住。

B. 變更下列文句中 Finite Verb 之 Voice:—

1. We never heard him speak English.
2. We saw them slowly climb up the steep path
3. They made me drink against my will.
4. He was often heard to say so.
5. He was never known to tell a lie.

(2) 形容詞不定詞 (Adjective Infinitive)

作用與形容詞相同，用於修飾名詞的 Infinitive，叫做 Adjective Infinitive。

(a) 用於被修飾的名詞成爲 Infinitive 的 Sense-Subject 時。

There is no **one to do** it. (沒有做這件事的人——沒有人做這件事。)

= There is no one *who will do* it.

I have no **friend to help** me. (我沒有幫助我的朋友。)

= I have no friend *who will help* me.

He was the first **man to come**. (他是最先來的人。)

= He was the first man *that came*.

(b) 用於被修飾的名詞成爲 Infinitive 的 Sense-Object 時。

He had no **food to eat**. (他沒有吃的東西。)

= He had no food *that he could eat*.

I have no **time to spare**. (我沒有空的時間。)

= I have no time *that I can spare*.

There is a house to let in this street. (這街上有一所出租的房子。)

Have you anything to sell? (你有什麼要賣的東西嗎?)

I have nothing to do today. (今天我沒有要做的事情。)

There are many sights to see in the West Lake. (西湖中有許多可觀的風景。)

文句中有將關係代名詞 (Relative Pronoun) 作前置詞的目的語者，此種文句，若將關係代名詞略去，用 Infinitive 直接修飾名詞時，則原來在關係代名詞前面的前置詞，必須放在 Infinitive 後面。

We need a house to live in (=in which to live). (我們需要一所住的房子。)

He has sufficient income to live on (=on which to live). (他有充分的生活費。)

Give me a chair to sit on (=on which to sit). (請給我一坐的椅子。)

若為他動詞的 Infinitive 而有目的語時，則前置詞須放在目的語後面。

I have no money to buy food with (=with which to buy food). (我沒有買食品的錢。)

I have no basket to carry the apples in (=in which to carry the apples). (我沒有載蘋果的籃子。)

(c) 修飾抽象名詞的 Infinitive, 對名詞只立於修飾的地位

Practice is the only way to learn a language. (實習是學習語言的唯一的方法。)

Autumn is the best time to visit the West Lake. (秋天是遊西湖的最好的季節。)

(3) 副詞不定詞 (Adverbial Infinitives)

作用與副詞相同，用於修飾動詞、形容詞、及副詞之 Infinitive, 叫做副詞不定詞。

(a) 修飾動詞的不定詞 (Infinitives Qualifying Verbs)

Infinitive 修飾動詞時，表(甲)目的、(乙)結果、(丙)原因。

(甲) **Purpose** (目的)——Infinitive 與意志動詞同用時，通常表示目的。

He **came to see** me. (=He came *for the purpose of seeing* me.) (他是來看看我的。)

He **went to buy** meat and wine. (他出去買酒和肉去了。)

We **eat to live**, not **live to eat**. (我們爲生而食，並非爲食而生。)

She **ran to meet** her mother. (她跑去接她的母親。)

Infinitive 表目的時，亦有附加“in order”(於意志動詞之前)或“so as”(於無意志動詞之前)者。

I got up early **in order to catch** the first train. (我爲要趕上第一班火車，一早就起來了。)

I got up early **so as to be** in time for the first train. (我一早起來，去趕第一班火車。)

上例中“catch”爲意志動詞，“to be in time”爲無意志動詞。

[注意]“So as to…”用於表目的，但“so”與“as to”之間有副詞插入時，則表結果。

Purpose:—I got up early **so as to be** in time for the first train.

= I got up early **so that I might be** in time for the first train.

(我一早起來，去趕第一班火車。)

Result:—I got up **so early as to be** in time for the first train.

= I go up **so early that I was** in time for the first train.

(我一早起來，因此我就趕上了第一班火車。)

(乙) **Result** (結果)——Infinitive 與無意志動詞同用時，通常表示結果。

I awoke **to find** (=and found) my trunk gone. (我醒來時不見了我的皮箱。)

Few people live **to be** (= *till they are*) seventy years old. (人生七十古來稀。)

The boy grew up **to be** (= *and became*) a fine youth. (孩子長成一個漂亮的青年。)

Infinitive 用在 “only” 或 “never” 之後，亦表結果。

He worked hard, **only to fail** (= *but he failed*). (他起勁工作，可是終歸失敗了。)

Byron left his native land, **never to return** (= *and he never returned*) (拜倫去國之後，就終於再不回去了。)

(丙) Cause (原因)——Infinitive 與 “to hear”, “to see” 等表感情的動詞同用時，則表示感情的原因。

I rejoice **to hear** of your success. (聽到你的成功，我很歡喜。)

She wept **to see** the sight. (他一見就哭了。)

此項 Adverbial Infinitive 的主要用法，爲以上三種 此外又有表條件及理由的用法，須注意。

(a) Reason (理由):—

He must be a fool **to say** so. (= *He must be a fool that he should say so.*) (他說出這樣的話來，那他一定是一個笨牛。)

He must be a scholar **to know** that. (= *He must be a scholar since he should know that.*) (他知道那個，那他一定是一個學者。)

(b) Condition (條件):—

You will do well **to speak** more carefully. (= *You will do well if you speak more carefully.*) (你若再說得當心一點，就可以了。)

(b) 修飾形容詞的不定詞 (Infinitives Qualifying Adjectives)

Infinitive 修飾形容詞時，表目的或原因。

(甲) Purpose (目的):—

Is this water **good to drink**? (這水可以喝嗎?)

Esperanto is very **easy to learn**. (世界語是非常容易學的。)

Chinese characters are **difficult to learn**. (漢字是不容易學的。)

(乙) Cause (原因)——Infinitive 與表感情的形容詞同用時，則表感情的原因

I am glad to **see you**. (看到了你，我真歡喜。)

I am sorry to **give you trouble**. (麻煩你了，對不起。)

I was **surprised to hear** of his failure. (聽到他的失敗，我吃了一驚。)

[注意] (a) 此種 Infinitive 可作 Subjunctive Mood 的代用。

I **should be very happy to be** (=if I were to be) of any service to you.
(倘能効勞於君，我覺得非常榮幸。)

I **should be glad to get** (=if I could get) the position. (我若能得到這地位，我就快活了。)

(b) 此種 Infinitive 又用於作如下的慣用成語。

He has, I am glad to **say**, passed his **examination**. (可喜的事是他的試驗及格了。)

Sad to say, he is addicted to drinking. (要命的事是他的耽於飲酒。)

But **strange to say**, he does not neglect his duties. (但是說也奇怪，他竟沒有疏忽他的職務。)

(c) 修飾副詞之不定詞 (Infinitives Qualifying Adverbs)

Infinitive 所修飾的副詞，爲以下三個

So . . . as:—Her hair is **so long as to sweep** the floor.

= Her hair is *so long that it* sweeps the floor.

(她的頭髮長得拖地。)

Enough:—You are rich **enough to keep** a motor-car.

= You are *so rich that you can* keep a motor-car.

(你很有錢，可以買汽車。)

Too:—I am too poor to afford such extravagance.

= I am so poor that I can not afford such extravagance.

(我很窮，不能這樣闊綽。)

(4) 獨立不定詞 (Absolute Infinitives)

Infinitive 中有修飾 Sentence 全體者。此種 Infinitive 對於文句中的任何部分皆無何等關係，故叫做 Absolute Infinitive。但實際上此種 Infinitive，乃條件或讓步短句的省略形。

To tell (or speak) the truth, I am tired of teaching. (= *If I am to tell the truth, . . .*) (老實說，我已厭於教書了。)

To be frank with you, you are a man of weak will. (= *If I am to be frank with you, . . .*) (不瞞你說，你實在是一個意志薄弱的人。)

To do my best (= *though I did my best*), I could not make him believe me. (不論我怎樣說，我終不能使他相信我。)

To do her utmost (= *though she did her utmost*), she could not eat as at other times. (不論她怎樣做勁，她終不能像平日那樣地吃東西。)

It is a good method, **to be sure**; but it is hard to practise. (這確是一個好方法，但卻難以實行。)

To make matters worse, he fell ill. (事情更糟糕的是他生了病。)

He has experience, **not to speak of** (= *as well as*) scholarship. (他不要說學問，就是經驗也有。)

He has no scholarship, **to say nothing of** (= *much less*) experience. (他沒有學問，經驗更不必說了。)

He is very frugal, **not to say** (= *if not; one might almost say*) stingy. (他是非常節儉的，幾乎可以說是吝嗇。)

He is a wise fool, **so to speak** (= *if I am allowed so to speak*). (他就是所謂一個聰明的愚人——如果我可以這樣說。)

不定詞的慣用語 (Idiomatic Uses of Infinitives)

(1) “Be” + Infinitive —— 表‘預定’之意。

I **am to go**. (= It is decided that I must go.) (我是要去的。)

We **are to meet** again on Sunday evening. (= It is fixed that we shall meet again on Sunday evening.) (我們定星期日晚上再相會。)

There **is to be** an examination to-morrow. } (我們明天要有試驗。)
We **are to have** an examination to-morrow. }

(2) “Be” + Passive Infinitive = “can”, “must”, 或接尾語的 “-able”。

Not a soul **was to be seen** (= could be seen). (沒有一個人可以看到。)

His condition **is to be pitied** (= is pitiable). (他的狀態是可憐的。)

This book **is not to be had** in Shanghai. (這本書在上海是不會有的。)

(3) “Be going” + Infinitive —— 意為‘要想如何如何’。

I **am going to start** to-morrow. (我打算明天動身。)

I **am going to express** my keen sense of appreciation for your kindness. (我想對於諸君的好意來表示一下深切的感謝。)

(4) “Be about” + Infinitive —— 意為‘快要如何如何做’。

He **is about to start**. (他快要出發了。)

I **was about to go out**. (我正要走出去了。)

(5) “Have” + Infinitive = “must” + Root。

I **have to go** now. (= I must go now.) (我現在必須去了。)

I regret **to have to decline** your cordial invitation. (我不得已而謝絕你親切的招待，我很抱歉。)

[注意] 此項打消形 “have not” + Infinitive = “need not” + Root。

You **have not to come** so early to-morrow morning. (明天早晨你可以不必來得這樣早。)

(6) “Have only” + Infinitive —— 意為‘只要如何如何就好’。

You **have only to say** a word. (你只要說一句話就可以。)

In order to know a man, you **have only to travel** with him for a week. (要知道一個人如何，你只要同他旅行一個禮拜就行。)

今概括以上所述不定詞的用法，列表于下：

不 定 詞 (Infinitive)	
名詞用法	To tell a lie is wrong. (主語)
	I don't like to do so. (目的語)
	To see is to believe. (補足語)
形容詞用法	A house to let. Give him a chair to sit on. He had no money to buy food with.
副詞用法	He came to see me. (目的) I am glad to hear it. (原因) He worked hard only to fail in the examination. (結果)
絕對不定詞	To tell the truth, I am tired of this work. He is, so to speak, a walking dictionary.

Exercise XLVI

A. 將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 鄰近有什麼出租的房子嗎？
2. 這本書的英文是容易懂的。
3. 她沒有可以依賴的親戚。
4. 我愚笨得竟會去相信那樣的人。
5. 他的這種習慣已經牢不可破。
6. 他做了這樣的事情，自己後悔着。
7. 這把椅子，看起來樣子雖好，但坐上去卻不見得怎樣舒服。
8. 關於這問題我要研究一下，你有什麼參考書嗎？
9. 時間一經失去，便無法再拿回來。
10. 老實說一句，你這人有點太卑怯。

B. 把下列文句譯成中文：—

1. It is my good fortune to find a friend in the time of need.
2. I awoke to find him in the room.
3. The enemy's ship fled only to be captured the next day.
4. What would I not have given to be able to say the rules without a mistake?
5. The doctor reached the house too late to find the patient alive.
6. To make a long story short, he tried to get money without working for it.
7. Some steps will have to be taken, in case there should be any accident.
8. He did not live to enjoy the fruits of what he had done.
9. By all means try to keep out of debt.
10. It is better to have health without riches than to have riches without health.

2. 分 詞 (Participles)

Participle (分詞) 兼有動詞與形容詞的性質，所以也叫做 **Verbal Adjective** (動詞狀形容詞)。

Participle 可以有動詞的附屬語，即目的語、補足語、或副詞。

Writing something on a card, he gave it to me. (名片上寫了什麼東西，他就把名片交給我了。) [Something 爲 writing 的目的語]

Being poor, he could not send his son to school. (他因爲貧窮，不能將兒子送到學校裏去。) [Poor 爲 being 的補足語]

The boy, **working hard**, tried to make up for lost time. (孩子起勁用功，想彌補失去了的時間。) [Hard 爲形容 working 的副詞]

Participle 無文法上的主語，但意味上的主語 (Sense-Subject) 卻有之

I saw a man **writing** at the desk. (我看到一個人在檯子上寫字。)

I received a letter **written** in English. (我接到了一封用英文寫的信。)

上例中第一句的“man”爲現在分詞“writing”的 Sense-Subject, 第二句的“letter”爲過去分詞“written”的 Sense-Subject。

分詞的形 (FORMS OF THE PARTICIPLE)

他動詞有六種分詞形, 自動詞只有四種。今以他動詞“to do”及自動詞“to go”爲例, 列表於下:

	TO DO		TO GO
	Active	Passive	
Present	doing	being done	going
Past	—	done	gone
Perfect	having done	having been done	having gone
Prog. Perf.	having been doing	—	having been going

[注意] 關於現在分詞及過去分詞的作法, 請參看本章第二節動詞的 Conjugation。

分詞的用法 (USES OF THE PARTICIPLE)

分詞的用法可分爲下列三種:

- (1) **As Adjective** (作形容詞用)
- (2) **As Complement** (作補足語用)
- (3) **Participial Construction** (分詞構文)

(1) 作形容詞用的分詞 (Participle as Adjective)

作形容詞用的 Present Participle (現在分詞) 與 Past Participle (過去分詞), 若用在名詞的後面時, 則爲 Adjective Clause 的簡略形。

Who is the *man speaking* to your father? (= Who is the man *that is speaking* to your father?) (與令尊談天的是誰?)

What is the *language spoken* in Mexico? (= What is the language *that is spoken* in Mexico?) (墨西哥是用什麼語言的?)

放在名詞前面，純粹作形容詞用的 Participle，叫做 **Participial Adjective** (分詞狀形容詞)。此種分詞亦可作為 **Adjective Clause** 的簡略形看待。

An **interesting book** = a book *that interests*. (有趣味的書)

Interested parties = parties *which are interested*. (有利害關係者)

今略舉作形容詞的分詞與分詞狀形容詞的區別於下。

作形容詞用的分詞：—(1) 用於名詞後，(2) 可用普通動詞的附屬語，(3) 通常用於表一時的狀態。

分詞狀形容詞：—(1) 用於名詞前，(2) 通常表永久的性質，(3) 可用比較。

Participle as Adjective

Birds **singing** in a tree. (在樹上唱着歌的鳥)

A letter **written** in English. (用英文寫的信)

Participial Adjective

Singing birds. (鳴禽)

Written language. (文章語)

{ This is an **interesting** book. (這是一本有趣的書。)
 { I never read a **more interesting** book. (我一向不曾讀到過這樣有趣的書。)
 { This is the **most interesting** book I ever read. (這是我所讀過的最有趣的書。)

(a) 現在分詞 (Present Participle)

不論自動他動，現在分詞通常皆含有 **Active Meaning**。

Men **living** (= *who live*) in town do not know rural pleasure. (住在都會中的人是不知道田園的樂趣的。)

I saw a man **wearing** (= *who wore*) a straw hat. (我看見一個戴草帽的人。)

A **rolling** stone gathers no moss. [A stone which *rolls*.] (轉石不生苔——轉業不聚財。)

He is a kind, **obliging** man. [A man who *obliges*.] (他是個和善而又親切的人。)

[例外] 現在分詞亦偶有表 **Passive Meaning** 者。

What is the **wanting** volume? [The volume that *is wanted*.] (缺的是那一卷?)

I can not find the **missing** papers. [The papers which *are being missed*.] (我找不着散失了的文件。)

(b) 他動詞的過去分詞

(Past Participle of Transitive Verbs)

他動詞的過去分詞通常含有 **Passive Meaning**。

This is a house **built** some hundred years ago. [A house which *was built*] (這是幾百年前所造的房子。)

These fables were written by a man named **Æsop**. [A man who *was named*] (這些寓言是一個名叫伊索的人寫的。)

Is there a magazine **devoted** to the study of English? (有一種專門研究英語的雜誌嗎?)

Stolen fruit tastes sweet [Fruits which *are stolen*]. (偷來的果實味道好。)

They discovered an **uninhabited** island. [An island which *is not inhabited*] (他們發現了一個無人島。)

Customs are **unwritten** laws. (習慣為不文法。)

[例外] 他動詞的過去分詞，亦偶有表 **Active Meaning** 者。

A **drunken** fellow = a fellow who *has drunk* much wine. (醉漢)

A **learned** man = a man who *has learned* a great deal. (有學問的人)

(c) 自動詞的過去分詞 (Past Participle of Intransitive Verbs)

自動詞的過去分詞與他動詞的過去分詞相反，含有 **Active Meaning**.

In days **gone by** (= *which have gone by*). (從前的時候)

I have met a gentleman **just returned** (= *who has just r-turned*). (我遇見了一位剛才回國的紳士。)

A **retired** officer. (= An officer who *has retired* from service.) (退伍軍官)

A **well-behaved** boy. (= A boy who *behaves* well.) (循規蹈矩的孩子)

A **withered** flower. (凋謝了的花)

Escaped convicts. (逃獄犯)

[注意] 做上例過去分詞的用法，亦有將 “-ed” 加於名詞的語尾而作形容詞用者。此種形容詞，叫做 **Quasi-Participles** 擬似分詞。

A **long-armed** monkey = a monkey having long arms. (長臂猿)

A **one-eyed** monster = a monster possessed of one eye. (獨眼的怪物)

A **kind-hearted** man = a man blest with kind heart. (宅心仁慈的人)

(2) 作補足語用的分詞 (Participle as Complement)

現在分詞與過去分詞，因其為一種形容詞，故與純粹的形容詞同樣，可作不完全動詞的補足語用。

- | | |
|---|---|
| { | He is always busy . (他常常是忙碌的。) [形容詞] |
| { | He is always doing something. (他常常是做着什麼事情的。) [現在分詞] |
| { | My work is ready . (我的工作準備好了) [形容詞] |
| { | My work is done . (我的工作做好了。) [過去分詞] |

(a) 作補足語用的現在分詞 (Present Participle as Complement)

1. 用現在分詞作補足語的自動詞，實際上可以作為進行形“be + Present Participle”中“be”的變體看待。

We **sat telling** stories in the dark. (我們坐在暗中講故事。)

He **stood gazing** at the scene. (他立着眺望景色。)

A soldier **lay dying** on the battle-field. (一兵士躺在戰場上死去。)

The ball **went flying**. (皮球飛過去了。)

The boy **came running** to meet me. (孩子跑來迎接我。)

The dog **kept barking** all night. (狗通夜叫個不休。)

The prices **go on rising**. (物價不絕地騰貴。)

2. 用現在分詞作補足語的他動詞，在意味上與上列的自動詞互相對應。

I **have** him **waiting**. (=He *is waiting*.) (我叫他等着。)

I **sent** the ball **flying**. (=The ball *went flying*.) (我把球踢過去了。)

I **found** my enemy **sleeping** on a rock. (=My enemy *was sleeping* on a rock.) (我發見我的敵人睡在岩石上面。)

I **saw** him **standing** at the door. (=He *was standing* at the door.) (我看見他立在門口。)

I **heard** the thunder **roaring**. (=The thunder *was roaring*.) (我聽到雷鳴。)

He **kept** me **waiting**. (=I *kept waiting*.) (他叫我等着。)

(b) 作補足語用的過去分詞 (Past Participle as Complement)

1. 用過去分詞作補足語的自動詞，即為受動形“be + Past Participle”中“be”的變體。

He sat surrounded by his family. (他被他的家人繞着而坐。)

He stood accused of a great crime. (他被科了重罪。)

One of our forefathers lies buried here. (我們的一個祖先葬在此地。)

He came in unobserved. (他一個人偷偷地進來了——進來時不被人看到。)

He went out unperceived. (他一個人偷偷地出去了。)

Where did you become acquainted with him? (你在什麼地方和他認識的。)

You will soon get used to the work. (你不久就會慣的。)

He will soon grow tired of the work. (他不久就會討厭這工作。)

2. 用過去分詞作補足語的他動詞,主要的有以下幾種。

To see:—I should like to see paper made. (我想看一看造紙的情形。)

To hear:—I never heard Italian spoken. (我從來沒有聽到過人講意大利語。)

To find:—They found a man concealed behind the door. (他們發見了一個人藏在門後。)

To leave:—I left no means untried. (各種方法我都用盡了。)

To have:— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I had (or got) my watch stolen. [My watch was stolen.]} \\ \text{(我被偷去了錶。)} \\ \text{I had (or got) my watch mended. (我[叫人]把我的錶修好。)} \end{array} \right.$

To get:— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He got (or had) his arm broken. [His arm was broken.]} \\ \text{(他被折斷了手臂。)} \\ \text{He got (or had) a new suit made. (他[叫人]做了一套新衣服。)} \end{array} \right.$

[注意] “Have (or get) + Object + Past Participle” 之形,有兩種意味。一表 Passing Meaning, 一表 Causative Meaning。前者用於主語不含意志而立於受動之地位時,後者用於主語含有意志而命令他人做事時。此兩種 Past Participle, 實皆可以作為 Passive Infinitive 看待。(參照前述的‘原形不定詞’)。請比較下例:—

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I shall have him steal it. [=He will steal it.]} \text{(他將偷這個。)} \\ \text{I shall have it stolen. [=It will be stolen.]} \text{(這將被他偷去吧。)} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I will have him mend it = I will get him to mend it. (我要叫他把這} \\ \text{個修好。)} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I will have it [be] mended = I will get it [to be] mended. (我要使這} \\ \text{個東西被人修好。 我要叫人把這個東西修好。)} \end{array} \right.$

要而言之，“have”有用 (1) Root Infinitive 作 Complement 者，亦有用 (2) Past Participle 作 Complement 者。其意味分爲 Passive 與 Causative 兩種。

- (1) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I shall have him do it. (Passive)} \\ \text{I will have him do it. (Causative)} \end{array} \right.$
- (2) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I shall have it done. (Passive)} \\ \text{I will have it done. (Causative)} \end{array} \right.$

(3) 分詞構文 (Participial Construction)

1. 用 Participle 將兩句文句縮成爲一句構文，叫做分詞構文 (Participial Construction)。此種分詞，文法上雖爲主語的形容詞，但實際上却兼有動詞與接續詞的作用

Seeing the constable, he ran off. = He *saw* the constable, *and* ran off.

(看到了巡捕，他就逃走了。)

Living in a remote village, I rarely have visitors.

= I *live* in a remote village, *so* I rarely have visitors.

= *As* I *live* in a remote village, I rarely have visitors.

(因我住在偏僻的鄉村裏，所以不大有客人來。)

2 分詞的六種 Form，皆可用此種構文。

Active:—

Writing something on a card, he gave it to me. (在名片上寫了些什麼東西，他就把名片交給我。)

Having written my composition, I have nothing more to do. (我已寫好了文章，沒有什麼另外要做的事情了。)

Having been writing letters all the morning, I had no time to attend to other matters. (因我整個早晨寫了信，所以沒有工夫做其他的事情。)

Passive:—

The book, **being written** in an easy style, has many readers. = **Written** in an easy style, the book has many readers. (此書因筆致平易，故讀者甚多。)

The book, **having been written** in haste, has many faults. = **Written** in haste, the book has many faults. (此書因匆匆寫就，故多謬誤。)

[注意] “Being written”, “having been written” 等放在文句的句頭時，通常只略作 “written”。

3 分詞構文中之 Participle, 表以下幾種意味

(a) Time (時間):—

Walking (=When he was walking) along the street, he met an old friend. (當他在街上走的時候，他遇見了一個老朋友。)

(b) Cause (原因):—

(**Being**) **tired** (=As he was tired) with the work, he sat down to rest. (他因工作得疲乏了，所以他就坐下來休息。)

(c) Reason (理由):—

The letter, **having been addressed** (=because it was addressed) to the wrong house, never reached me. (因為寫錯了地址，那封信就寄不到我這裏來。)

(d) Condition (條件):—

Turning (=If you turn) to the left, you will find the house you want. (若向左轉彎，你就可以找到你所要找的房子了。)

(e) Concession (讓步):—

Admitting (Though I admit) what you say, I still think that you made a mistake. (就算像你所說的樣子，但我仍然覺得你是錯的。)

(f) Connection (連續):—

Drawing his sword, (=He drew his sword and) he threatened to kill me. (他拔出了劍，說要把我殺死。)

4 此種構文中，time 的關係如下。

(a) 與 Principal Clause 中的所言為同時的事情時，用 Present Participle。

{ **Living** (=as I live) in a remote village, I rarely **have** visitors.
 { **Living** (=as I lived) in a remote village, I rarely **had** visitors.

(因我住在偏僻的鄉村裏，所以不大有客人來。)

(a) 表時間或理由者：

Night coming on (= When night came on), we started for home. (一到夜裏，我們就動身回家了。)

The first problem having been solved (= As the first problem has been solved), the second must now be solved. (第一問題解答了，那麼現在就非解答第二問題不可。)

The moon having risen (= As the moon had risen), we put out the light. (因月亮出來了，我們就吹滅了燈光。)

It being Sunday (= As it was Sunday), there was no school. (因為是禮拜日，所以沒有功課。)

(b) 表條件者：

We shall start on Sunday, *weather permitting* (= if weather permits). (如果天氣好，我們禮拜日就出發。)

(c) 表附帶的狀況者：

He was reading a book, *his wife sewing* beside him. (他看着書，他的妻在傍邊縫衣。)

[注意] “being”, “having been” 等，常行省略。

Breakfast [being] over (= When breakfast was over), he went out for a walk. (吃了朝飯以後，他就出去散步。)

This [having been] done, he left the room. (這個做好了以後，他就跑出房間去了。)

此種 Participle 的 Sense-Subject，若為不定的事物時(如代名詞、“we”之類)，則被省去。這叫做 Impersonal Absolute Participle (無人稱獨立分詞)。

Strictly speaking (= If we speak strictly), this is no correct. (嚴格地說一句，這是不對的。)

Talking of (= Now that we are talking of) newspapers, which is the best English newspaper in China? (說起報紙來，中國最好的英文報是那一種?)

Generally speaking, Chinese make better linguists than Japanese.

(一般地說起來，中國人比日本人長於語學。)

Judging (=If we judge) **from** his statement, he seems to be quite innocent. (由他的言語上聽起來，他好像是沒有什麼罪的。)

He writes a very good hand. **considering** (=when we consider) his age. (就他的年紀來說，他的字寫得很好。)

Granting that (=Even if we grant that) your statement is true, it does not answer my argument. (就算你的話是確實的，這也不成爲我的議論的答辯。)

Admitting that (=If we admit that) your theory is right, how could you put it into practice. (就認你的學說是對的，但你如何能實行呢?)

I will make allowance, **seeing that** (=as we see that; since) he is young. (姑念他年紀青，我就寬一點吧。)

今將以上所述分詞之用法列表於下：

	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
用之節 在名 名後 詞詞 詞修 者者	Who is the <i>man writing</i> at the desk? (=the man that is writing) <i>People living</i> in towns do not know such pleasures. (=people who live)
作之詞 純形用 粹容者	I have bought an <i>interesting book</i> . (=a book which interests us) Look at the <i>sleeping child</i> . (=the child that is sleeping)
作語 補用 足者	He lay <i>thinking</i> . (“He is thinking.”之變體) I kept him <i>waiting</i>
分詞 構文	<i>Seeing</i> a policeman, he ran off (<i>Being</i>) Very tired with the work, I soon fell asleep. <i>School being</i> over, I went to see him. } (Absolute Participle) <i>Considering</i> his age, he is very active. }

	PAST PARTICIPLE
用之節 在後名 名詞 詞修者	Here is a letter <i>written</i> in English. (=a letter that is written) Time once <i>lost</i> can never be regained. (=time that is once lost)
作之詞 純形用 粹容者	The <i>wounded</i> soldier was carried to the hospital. (=the soldier that was wounded) He is a <i>retir-ed</i> officer . (=an officer that has retired)
作足用 補語者	He sat <i>surrounded</i> by his children. (“He was surrounded . . .”之變體) I had my photograph <i>taken</i> .

Exercise XLVII

A. 用 Participle 縮短下列文句之一部份：一

1. When I went on deck, I saw a curious sight.
2. I start to-morrow, if weather permits.
3. I have never read the book, so I can not criticize it.
4. I had never read the book, so I could not criticize it.
5. As she was deserted by her husband, she committed suicide.
6. We ascended the tower and enjoyed a fine view.
7. When school was over, we played base-ball.
8. If we are united, we stand; if we are divided, we fall.
9. As he was sick, I took his place.
10. He fell sound asleep, because he was tired.

B. 改正下列文句中之錯誤：一

1. Being a fine day, I went out for a walk.
2. Having read the book, it was thrown aside.

3. Groaning and reeling under its load we saw the stage-coach slowly ascending the hill.
4. Defeated on all sides, his heart began to fail.
5. We, going on deck, saw a curious sight.

C. 將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 我去剃一個頭來。
2. 我接到了一封用紅墨水寫的信。
3. 因第一次告了失敗，所以我就不再做了。
4. 走去一看，她正在哭着。
5. 你這篇文章是叫誰改的？
6. 因為景色很好，我立在那裏足足看了一個鐘頭。
7. 向右轉彎，你在左邊可以看到一所大房子。那就是郵局。
8. 嚴格地說起來，這些都是錯的。
9. 他從腳踏車上跌下，折斷了手臂。
10. 那個外國人不能將自己所說的充分地使人了解。

D. 將下列文句譯成中文：—

1. Things done by halves are never done right.
2. Doing this work every day, you will soon improve.
3. I put some flowers in the vase on his table, thinking it would please him.
4. Being now king of half the world, Alexander wished to conquer the rest of it.
5. I had some refreshment carried to him.
6. Pleased with the article, I gave the price asked.
7. The Director was seated in his chair, looking very serious and dignified.

3. 動名詞 (Gerund)

(1) 動名詞的形 (Forms of the Gerund)

“Root-Form + ing” 而作名詞用者，叫做 Gerund (動名詞)。

Gerund 有四種 Form. 今以 “to write.” 爲例，列表於下。

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	writing	being written
PERFECT	having written	having been written

(2) 動名詞與分詞的比較

(Gerunds and Participles Compared)

Gerund 的形雖與 Participle 相同，作用卻完全兩樣。Participle 爲 Verbal Adjective，兼有動詞與形容詞的性質，其所言必有關於名詞。但 Gerund 爲 Verbal Noun，兼有動詞與名詞的性質，故其作用與名詞相同，可用作 Subject, Object, 或 Complement。

Reading is a good pastime. (讀書爲好的娛樂。) [主語]

I like **reading**. (我喜歡讀書。) [動詞之目的語]

I am fond of **reading**. (我是好讀書的。) [前置詞之目的語]

Seeing is **beli-ving**. (百聞不如一見。) [補尾語]

Gerund 亦有與 Participle 同樣，用在名詞之前者。但此種 Gerund，概用於表示 Purpose (目的)，與只表狀態的 Participle 用法全然不同。

{ *Participle*:—A **swimming** boy = a boy who is swimming. (游泳着的
孩子)
Gerund:—A **swimming-pool** = a pool for swimming. (游泳池)

- { I remember **meeting** him somewhere. (我記得在什麼地方遇見過他。)
 { I forget to **mention** the event. (我忘記了提起那件事情。)
- { I don't **care to go** abroad. (我並不想出洋去。)
 { I don't **mind running** the risk. (冒險亦在所不辭。)
- { When did you **begin teaching** (or **to teach**) English? (你教英文從什麼時候開始的?)
 { I **commenced teaching it** a year ago. (一年前開始的。)
- { It has **stopped raining**. (雨止了。)
 { We **stopped to rest** ourselves. (我們停住是休息了一下。)

(4) 前置詞與動名詞 (Prepositions and Gerunds)

Gerund 作前置詞的目的語用者，可分為以下三種。

(a) 獨立的前置詞：

He is **above selling** his country. (他是不會賣國的。)

The ostrich is used **for riding**. (駝鳥可供乘騎之用。)

I **made a mistake in trusting** such a man. (相信了這樣的人，我弄錯了。)

On leaving school, he went into business. (他走出了學校，進了實業界。)

(b) 連動詞用的前置詞：

He **insisted on knowing** the reason. (他硬要明白理由。)

He **talks of going** abroad. (他講起出洋去的事情。)

I could not **keep from crying**. (我忍不住要哭了。)

(c) 連形容詞用的前置詞：

I am **fond of reading** novels. (我是喜歡讀小說的。)

He is **afraid of making** mistakes. (他防恐弄錯。)

I am **tired with walking**. (我走得疲乏了。)

() 動名詞構文 (Gerundive Construction)

用 Gerund 將 Noun Clause 縮短成爲 Phrase 時，Noun Clause 的 Subject 即變成所有格而作 Gerund 的 Sense-Subject。此種構文叫做 Gerundive Construction。

{ I am sure **that he will pass.** } (我確信他會及格。)
 { I am sure **of his passing.** }

{ **That his father is poor** is known to all. } (他的父親貧窮，是大家都知道的。)
 { **His father's being poor** is known to all. }

此種構文中，Sense Subject 若爲代名詞時，必須用所有格，但名詞的所有格若放在前置詞後面時，往往省去 " 's "。

{ I am glad **that the examination is over.** } (我慶喜試驗已畢。)
 { I am glad **of the examination's being over.** }

{ He is proud **that his father is rich.** } (他誇耀他父親有錢。)
 { He is proud **of his father being rich.** }

{ **The teacher's being poor** is known to all. (先生的窮是大家知道
 的。)
 比較 { I was not aware **of the teacher being poor.** (我並不知道先生是窮
 的。)
 { I was not aware **of his being poor.** (我並不知道他是窮的。)

與 Principal Clause 有同一 Subject 的 Noun Clause，如將其縮短成爲 Gerund 時，因 Principal Clause 的 Subject 即爲 Gerund 的 Sense-Subject，故 Noun Clause 的 Subject 全然省略。

A { I am sure **that I shall succeed.** } (我確信我會成功。)
 { I am sure **of [my] succeeding.** }

B { I am sure **that you will succeed.** } (我確信你會成功。)
 { I am sure **of your succeeding.** }

上例中 A 的 "I"，因其爲 "succeeding" 的 Sense-Subject，故無須用 "my succeeding"。B 的 "your" 爲 "succeeding" 的 Sense-Subject，因其與 Principal Clause 之 Subject 不屬同一事物，故須特別指出。

- { He insisted on knowing my reason. (他硬要明白我的道理。)
- { He insisted on **my** telling him the reason. (他硬要我把道理告訴他。)
- { (a) He blamed **me** for **neglecting** to write. (他責備我，說我沒有寫信給他。)
- { (b) He blamed **me** for **my brother**['s] **neglecting** to write. (他責備我，因我的兄弟沒有寫信給他。)

(a) 例中“blamed”的 Object “me”，即為“neglecting”的 Sense-Subject，故無須用“my neglecting”。(b) 例中“neglecting”的 Sense-Subject 為“my brother”。

言普通一般的事情時，Gerund 全然不用 Sense-Subject。

Doing so is difficult. (= It is difficult for anybody to do so.) (這樣子做是難的。)

Reading good books makes one wise. (讀好書會使人聰明起來。)

(6) 動名詞與名詞的比較 (Gerunds and Nouns Compared)

Gerund 的作用，雖與名詞相同，但推究其源，實為一種的動詞，故 Gerund 可用普通動詞的附屬語，如目的語補足語或副詞，但不得用名詞的附屬語，即冠詞與形容詞。反之，與 Gerund 同形的名詞，可用冠詞或形容詞，卻不得用目的語補足語或副詞。

- { He makes much money by **writing** novels. [Gerund]
(他寫小說賺錢。)
- { He earns his living by *the writing of* novels. [Noun]
(他靠小說的著作度日。)
- { **Rising early** is good for the health. [Gerund]
(起得早於健康有益。)
- { *Early rising* is good for the health. [Noun]
(早起於健康有益。)

[注意] 上例第三句中的 'early' 爲副詞，第四句中的 'early' 爲形容詞。

(7) 完了形的用法

(Use of the Perfect Form)

Gerund 的 Perfect Form, 相當於 Finite Verb 的 Past, Present Perfect, 或 Past Perfect。

{	He repents that he <i>was</i> (or <i>has been</i>) idle.	}	(他懊悔自己以前的懶惰。)
	He repents of having been idle.		
{	He repented that he <i>had been</i> idle in his youth.	}	(他懊悔自己年青時候的懶惰。)
	He repented of having been idle in his youth.		

[注意] 但時的觀念由前後的關係可以明瞭時，Gerund 亦有用 Simple Form 代 Perfect Form 者。

I remember **meeting** (= *having met*) him at my uncle's. (我記得在叔父家裏遇見過他。)

He blamed me for **neglecting** = *having neglected*) to write. (他責備我不會寫信給他。)

Gerund 本無 Tense, 但由前後的關係, 仍然可以探出其 Tense 的所在。

I am sure of his **passing** in the examination. (= I am sure that he *will pass* in the examination.) (我確信他是會及格的。)

I am sure of your **being able** to solve this question. = I am sure that you *are able* to solve this question. (我相信你是能解答這個問題的。)

I am sure of his **having arrived**. (= I am sure that he *has arrived*.) (我相信他已經到了。)

I was not aware of his **being** such a rich man. (= I was not aware that he *was* such a rich man.) (我不曾知道他是這樣有錢的人。)

He **denied having done** it. (= he denied that he *had done* it.) (他不承認自己做了這事。)

(8) 動名詞的慣用法

(Idiomatic Uses of the Gerund)

- (a) "There is no" + Gerund = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{"It is impossible" + Infinitive.} \\ \text{"We can not" + Root.} \end{array} \right.$

There is no saying what may happen. (= We can not say what may happen.) (將發生什麼事情, 未可預測。)

There is no denying the fact. (= It is impossible to deny the fact.) (這事實無可否認。)

There is no telling when lasting peace will come. (不曉得永久的和平幾時才來。)

- (b) "Can not help" + Gerund = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{"Can not forbear from" +} \\ \text{Gerund.} \\ \text{"Can not but" + Root.} \end{array} \right.$

I can not help laughing. (= I can not forbear from laughing.) (我忍不住要笑了。)

I could not help thinking so. (= I could not but think so.) (我不得不這樣想了。)

We can not help feeling indignant on hearing the enemy's savage actions. (聽了敵人野蠻的行動, 我們不禁憤怒起來。)

- (c) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{"It is no use" + Gerund} \\ \text{"It is no good" + Gerund} \end{array} \right\} = \text{"It is of no use" + Infinitive.}$

It is no use crying over spilt milk. (= It is of no use to cry over spilt milk.) (對着倒翻了的牛乳哭泣, 是無濟於事的。——事已至此, 夫復何言。)

It is no good trying. (試了也是無益的。)

It is no use complaining. (怨也無用。)

- (d) "Of one's (own)" + Gerund = Participle + "by oneself"
This is the picture of his own drawing. (= This is the picture drawn by himself.) (這是他自己畫的圖畫。)

This is a work **of his doing**. (這是他所做的工作。)

Usually that which a man calls fate is a web **of his own weaving**,
from threads **of his own spinning**. (人所稱爲命運的東西，通常就是
他自己所紡的線自己所織成的網。)

(e) **“On (or upon)” + Gerund = “As soon as” . . . Verb.**

On leaving school, he went abroad. = **As soon as** he left school, he
went abroad. (一走出學校，他就出洋去了。)

On receiving a telegram, he went home. (接到了電報，他就回家去了。)

Upon the speaker's **appearing** on the platform, there arose a storm
of applause. (演說者一登台，喝采之聲即如雷鳴。)

(f) **“Feel like” + Gerund = “Feel inclined” + Infinitive.**

I **felt like crying**. = I felt inclined to cry. (我似乎要哭的樣子。)

I **feel like making** a trial. (我似乎想試一下。)

(g) **“Come near” + Gerund = “Nearly” . . . Verb.**

He **came near falling**. = He nearly fell. (他險些兒要跌倒了。)

He **came near being drowned**. = He was nearly drowned. (他差一點就
要溺死了。)

(h) **“No” + Gerund = “There must be no” + Gerund.**

No scribbling on the wall. (壁上不准亂塗。)

No smoking. (禁止吸煙。)

(i) **“Worth” + Gerund = “Worth while” + Infinitive.**

The exhibition is **worth visiting**. = It is worth while to visit the
exhibition. (博覽會值得去看一看。)

His eloquent speech is **worth hearing** once. = It is worth your while
to hear his eloquent speech once. (他的雄辯倒有一聽的價值。)

(j) **“To go (a-)shooting” = to go on a shooting expedition.**

One day he **went (a-)shooting**. (有一天他出去打獵。)

Let us **go (a-)boating** to-morrow, if it is fine. (如果天氣好，明天我們去
划船吧。)

What do you say to our **going (a-)fishing**? (一塊兒釣魚去如何?)

[注意] 此種“a-”乃前置詞“on”的縮略形。故後面的“shooting”, “fishing”等 Gerund 即爲此“a-”的 Object。但若遇此“a-”字被略去時, 則“shooting”, “fishing”等便成爲 Participle, 宜作動詞“go”的 Complement 看待。

今概括以上所說, 列表於下:

動名詞 (Gerund)	
作名詞用之 GERUND	Reading is a good pa-time. I like reading . I am fond of reading . Seeing is believing .
GERUND 與 PREPOSITION	He is <i>above</i> selling his country. He <i>talks of</i> going abroad. He is <i>afraid of</i> making mistakes.
GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION	The <i>teacher's</i> being poor is known to all, I was not aware <i>of the teacher</i> being poor. I was not aware <i>of his</i> being poor.

Exercise XLVIII

A. 將下列文句譯成英文:—

1. 你做了這樣的事, 不羞恥嗎?
2. 母親擔心着我的失敗。
3. 跑路是一種好的運動。
4. 我一到杭州, 就去訪問了王君。
5. 法律禁止未成年者吸烟。
6. 西湖有一去之價值。
7. 他懷着研究數學的目的, 往歐洲去了。
8. 誰也不知道戰爭將在何時結局。

B. 將下列文句譯成中文：—

1. There is no standing still in this life, one must either advance or fall behind.
2. Nothing is worth doing, if it is not worth doing well.
3. It is the last leaf! There is no knowing when we shall have another.
4. There are fish so plentiful that it may be had for the asking.
5. I saw Smith's flying, and I could not help admiring his wonderful feat.
6. The choicest gold is to be had for the digging.
7. On nearing the field, she made a circuit around it, to see if her enemies were again there.
8. There is no living without trusting to somebody or other in some cases.

VI. 助動詞 (Auxiliary Verbs)

助動詞爲數不多 “Shall”, “will”, “can”, “may”, “must”, “be”, “have” 等七個已在 Tens 與 Mood 項下詳述。今就所餘的 “do”, “need”, “dare”, “ought” 等四個,加以詳細的說明。

“Do”

助動詞 “do” (第三人稱單數現在爲 “does”) 的過去爲 “did”, 其後面的動詞用 Root-Form。“Do” 的用法,可分爲以下三種。

1. “Do” in Question and Negative Statements

助動詞 “do” 的主要用途在於作成疑問文句與否定文句。

疑 問

- Do you go? (你去嗎?)
Does he go? (他去嗎?)
Did you go? (你去了嗎?)

否 定

- I do not go. (我不去。)
He does not go. (他不去。)
I did not go. (我沒有去。)

[注意] (a) 有其他助動詞時，疑問文句與否定文句中可不必再用“do”。換言之，除現在過去以外，疑問文句與否定文句中概不用“do”。

Will you go? (你要去嗎?)	I will not go. (我不要去。)
May I go? (我可以去嗎?)	You must not go. (你不准去。)
Has he gone? (他去了嗎?)	He has not gone. (他還沒有去。)

(b) 古文中的否定文句，不論何種動詞，皆不用“do”，只將“not”一字直接放在動詞後面。現今的詩與疑古文中，尚有此種用法。

{ I know not. (古文體)
 { I do not know. (現代文)

“Tell me not in mournful numbers,
 Life is but an empty dream.”—*Longfellow*.

(勸君勿將哀詩詠，告我人生是虛夢。)

此種古文體，現代文中尚殘留一二。

I doubt not that you are right. (無疑，你是對的。)
 I care not what others may say. (別人怎樣說，我都不管。)

(c) 現今普通所用的“*I think not*”與“*I hope not*”等，諸君切勿與古文體的“*I know not*”等用法混同。此種“not”，非表動詞的打消，乃用於代表否定文句全體者。

{ Will he die? (他會死嗎?)
 { I hope not. (=I hope he will not die.) (我想他不致於死。)
 { Will he recover? (他會痊愈嗎?)
 { I am afraid not. (=I am afraid he will not recover.) (恐怕他不會痊愈了。)

疑問文句與否定文句，遇下列幾種情形，概不用“do”。

(a) 動詞為“to be”或“to have”時，不用“do”。

Are you tired? (你疲勞嗎?)	I am not tired. (我不疲勞。)
Were you there? (你在那邊嗎?)	I was not there. (我不在那裏。)
Have you my knife? (你拿我的 小刀嗎?)	I have not your knife. (我沒有 拿你的小刀。)

[例外] “Be”的強勢命令與否定命令，須用“do”。

- { **Be quiet.** (靜點。)
 { **Do be quiet.** (靜一點呀。)
 { **Be diligent.** (用功呀。)
 { **Do not be idle.** (不要偷懶。)

又, “Have” 不作‘所有’的意味解時, 亦可用 “do”。

Do you have (=have you) many fires in London? (倫敦火災多嗎?)

Did you have a good time yesterday? (昨天興趣好嗎?)

(b) 疑問文句之主語, 若為疑問詞或受疑問詞之修飾時, 概不用 “do”。

{ **Whom do you want to see?** (你要會那一個?) [whom 為目的語]

{ **Who broke** the window? (誰打破了窗子?) [who 為主語]

What happened? (有了什麼事情嗎?)

How many students failed in the examination? (有多少學生落第了。)

(c) 附屬疑問句中不用 “do”。

{ **Where did you buy it?** (什麼地方買的?) [疑問句]

{ **Will you tell me where you bought it?** (你肯告訴我買的地方嗎?)

[附屬疑問句]

{ **What does he want?** (他要什麼?) [疑問句]

{ **Ask him what he wants.** (問一問他要什麼東西。)[附屬疑問句]

(d) 否定敘述文句與否定命令文句中, 用 “not” 以外的否定詞時, 不用 “do”。

None of them came. (他們一個都不來。)

I want nothing. (我不要什麼東西。)

Never tell (lie. (決不要說謊。)

He knows neither English nor German. (英文德文, 他都不懂。)

2. “Do” of Emphasis

欲使肯定文句中動詞的意味加強時, 用 “do”。

One day a wolf **did come**. (有一天, 狼真的來了。)

He does work hard, but somehow he remains as poor as ever. (他的確是勤勞的, 但不知怎的 他仍然窮得要命。)

War is an evil; but if you **do fight**, fight it out. (戰爭是惡事;但一旦戰了,你就須血戰到底。)

I **did go** to see him, but he was absent. (看是去看過他,可是他不在那裏。)

You do not eat at all. **Do take** some! (你一點也不吃。請吃一點呀!)

[注意] 強語勢之“do”, “does”, “did”, 讀時須發重音。

3. “Do” as Pro-Verb

欲避去動詞的反復,用“do”。這叫做代動詞(Pro-Verb)。

I love him as much as you **do** (=love him). (我愛他同你愛他一樣。)

You know more than I **did** (=knew) at your age. (在你這樣的年紀時,我還沒有像你這樣懂事。)

Did you go?—Yes, I **did** (=went). (你去了嗎?——我去了。)

“Here they lived,

As all their forefathers had **done** (=lived).”——Wordsworth.

(他們和他們的祖先一樣,住在此地。)

{ I like beef. (我喜歡牛肉。)

{ — So do I. (=I like it too.) (我也喜歡的。)

{ I don't like pork. (我不喜歡豬肉。)

{ Nor do I.

{ Neither do I. } (=I don't like it either.) (我也不喜歡。)

{ Nor I either. }

[注意] (a) “So I do” 與 “So do I” 的用法不同。前者為‘正是如此’之意。

{ You seem to like beef; **so do I**. (你好像是喜歡牛肉的,這東西我也喜歡。)

{ You seem to like beef.—**So I do**. (你好像是喜歡牛肉的。——正是像你所說。)

(b) 若有其他助動詞時,不用“do”代替動詞。

I **will go**.—**So will I**. (我要去。——我也要去。)

My mother **has gone** to the play.—**So has mine**. (我的母親看戲去了。——我的母親也去了。)

(c) “Have” 與 “be” 雖作本動詞用時，亦不用 “do”。

I have a bicycle.—So have I. (我有一輛腳踏車。——我也有一輛。)

I am a student.—So am I. (我是個學生。——我也是。)

“Need”

“Need” 作助動詞用時，必用於表打消的文句，絕無人稱或數的變化。

{ He need not work. (他毋須做工。) [助動詞]

{ He needs no money. (他並不需要錢。) [本動詞]

You need not do so. (你毋須這樣做。)

Why need I work? (=I need not work.) (為什麼我要工作呢?)

[注意] 諸君切勿將第三人稱單數的 “needs” 與副詞的 “needs” 混同。副詞的 “needs” (=of necessity) 通常用在 “must” 前後。請比較下例。

{ He must needs do this. (他非做這個不可。) [副詞]

{ He needs to learn. (他須求學。) [動詞]

{ He need not do this. (他毋須做這個。) [助動詞]

述過去的事情時，“need” 後面用 Perfect Form。

You need not have done so (=did not need to do so). (你是用不着這樣做的。)

Why need he have come tonight? (他為什麼必須今天晚上來呢?)

He need not have been a wicked man. (他未必是一個惡人。)

“Scarcely”, “hardly”, “only” (=nothing but) 等亦表打消之意，故亦可與助動詞 “need” 連用。

It need hardly be said that..... } (我幾無如何如何說之必要。)

I need hardly say that..... }

I need only say that..... (我只要如何如何說就好。)

“Need not” 因其為 “must (=have to)” 的打消，故可用 “have not to” 代之。因此，“need not” 的過去形用 “had not to”。

I had not to go. (我原是用不着去的。)

“Dare”

“Dare” 作助動詞用時，概用於否定文句與疑問文句。此種 “dare”，遇第三人稱單數時不加 “s” 其後面的動詞，亦用 Root Form。

He **dare not** insult me. (他不敢侮辱我。) [助動詞]

Dare he insult me? (他敢侮辱我嗎?) [助動詞]

How **dare** you insult me? (你怎敢來侮辱我?) [助動詞]

He **dares to** insult me. (他竟敢侮辱我。) [本動詞]

“Dare” 的 Past, 無一定形。

They **dared** (or **durst**) **not** come. } (他們不敢來。)

They **did not dare** to come. }

“I dare say” 用於表推測之意，其用法與 “I suppose” 同。

You are tired, I **dare say**. (想來你疲乏了吧。)

I **dare say** there are m stakes. (我想或許有錯誤吧。)

“Ought”

“Ought” 原來為 “owe” 的過去，用於表‘義務’，‘當然’之意。助動詞 “Ought” 與其他助動詞有所不同，其後面不用動詞的 Root Form 而用 Infinitive。

You **ought to** pay what you owe. (= *It is proper that you should pay what you owe.*) (欠的東西必須要還。——表義務)

He **ought to** succeed, for he is so industrious. (= *It is natural that he should succeed...*) (因他勤勉得很，他當然是成功的。——表自然的結果)

You **ought not to** go to such a place. (你不應該到這種地方去。)

He **ought to** be here. (他應該是到這裏來的。)

表過去的事情時，“ought” 後面用 Perfect Infinitive。此種文句概含有譴責的口吻。

You ought to have done it yesterday. (這事你應該在昨天就做的。)

You ought not to have done such a thing. (你不應該做出這種事情來。)

Exercise XLIX

A. 將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 那時你身邊帶了錢沒有？
2. 我家裏養着一隻狗。——我家裏也有一隻。
3. 我去是去了，可是沒有遇見他。
4. 我不想做一個政治家。——我也不想做。
5. 他因為很有錢，所以他用不着工作。
6. 他勤勉得很。像他那樣的人，當然是立名於世的。

B. 將下列文句譯成中文：—

1. You need not make yourself uneasy about the invalid, for he must recover.
2. Our success in the past ought to be a stimulus for the future.
3. I dared not speak to Mary, for fear he might see me, for his eyes were fixed on me every moment.
4. A boy often wants what he does not need, and he sometimes needs what he does not want.
5. The benevolent alone ought to be in a high position.

第六章

副詞 (ADVERBS)

副詞有以下三種：

1. **Simple Adverbs** (單純副詞)
 2. **Interrogative Adverbs** (疑問副詞)
 3. **Relative Adverbs** (關係副詞)
-

(1) 單純副詞 (Simple Adverbs)

單用於修飾其他 Word 的副詞，謂之單純副詞。由其意味可分爲以下六種。

(a) **Time** (時間)：—before, ago, early, lately, soon, at once, to-day, 'long ago 等。

I was still young **then** (=at that time). (那時候我年紀還青。)

(b) **Place** (場所)：—here, there, far, near, to and fro 等。

He is buried **here** (=at this place). (他葬在此地。)

Have you ever been **there** (=at that place)? (你曾經到過那邊嗎?)

(c) **Number** (數)：—once, sometimes, seldom, often 等。

(d) **Manner** (狀態)：—well, thus, kindly, bravely, wisely 等。

(e) **Degree or Quantity** (度或量)：—little, more, greatly, enough, too, almost 等。

(f) **Affirmation or Negation** (肯定或否定)：—yes, no, not, never, certainly 等。

[注意] 以上列舉之副詞中，須要特別注意者，將在後面詳述。

(2) 疑問副詞 (Interrogative Adverbs)

疑問副詞是表示疑問的副詞。

(a) Time (時間):—

When did you see him? (你幾時看到他的?)

What time do you get up? (你什麼時候起床?)

How long will it take to go to England? (到英國去要費多少日子?)

How often do you write to him a month? (你一個月給他幾封信?)

(b) Place (場所):—

Where do you go? (你到那裏去?)

Whence has he come? (他從什麼地方來的?)

How far is it from here to Hangchow? (從這裏到杭州有多少遠?)

(c) Manner (狀態):—

How (=in what state of health) is your father? (令尊怎麼樣?)

How (=by what means) did he do this? (這東西他是怎樣做的?)

(d) Degree (程度):—

How (=to what degree) do you like it? (這東西你歡喜嗎?)

(e) Cause or Reason (原因或理由):—

Why (=for what reason) did he do this? (為什麼他做了這個?)

How (=from what cause) is it that you are always behind time? (為什麼你常常遲到?)

[注意] 以疑問副詞開始之文句，如與其他 Clause 連結時，即成爲 Noun Clause。

I do not know **when** he came. (我不知道他是什麼時候來的。)

(3) 關係副詞 (Relative Adverbs)

1 關係副詞之主要者爲“when”，“where”，“why”，“how”等四個，兼有副詞與接續詞的作用。大抵表時間、場所、理由與狀態。

(a) Time (時間):—

The year **when** (=in which) this happened was 1376 A. D. (這事件發生在紀元 1376 年。)

(b) **Place (場所):**—

He led us to a joyous land **where** (= *in which*) waters gushed and fruit-trees grew. (他領我們到了一處流水涓涓果木叢生的樂土去。)

(c) **Reason (理由):**—

The reason **why** (= *on account of which*) it happened is told in Browning's poem. (這事情所以發生的理由,在勃朗寧的詩裏有所敘述。)

(d) **Manner (狀態):**—

This is the way **how** he did it. (他是這樣子做的。)

2. 關係副詞的先行詞 (Antecedent), 多被省略。

The news reached us (at a time) **when** it was least expected. (毫不預防到的時候,消息來了。)

Put it (in the place) **where** you found it. (把這東西放在原處。)

That is (the reason) **why** I can not consent. (那就是我不好答應的理由。)

This is (the way) **how** it happened. (其發生的情形,就是如此。)

I don't know **how** large it is. (我不知道這東西怎樣大小。)

【注意】(a) 關係副詞所率的 Clause, 其文法上的位置, 因 Antecedent 之有無而異。

{ (1) I don't know the exact time **when** it happened. (這事情究竟是什麼時候發生的, 我不知道。)

{ (2) I don't know **when** it happened. (我不知道這事是什麼時候發生的。)

(1) 例中的 “the exact time” 是 “know” 的 Object, “when it happened” 爲修飾名詞 “time” 的 Adjective Clause。(2) 例中的 “when it happened” 是 “know” 的 Object, 故爲 Noun Clause。又如

{ (1) I found it on the table **where** I had left it. (這東西我在原來放着的桌子上找到了。)

{ (2) I found it **where** I had left it. (這東西我在原來放着的的地方找到了。)

(1) 例中的 “on the table” 是說明 “found” 的 Adverb Phrase, “where I had left it” 爲修飾 “table” 的 Adjective Clause。(2) 例中的 “where I had left it” 則爲說明 “found” 的 Adverb Clause。

(b) “When” 與 “who” 有時以 “that” 代用，有時全然省去。

{	His father died on the day when he was born. His father died on the day that he was born. His father died on the day he was born.	} 他的父親死於他生的那天。
---	---	----------------

3. 關係副詞，與關係代名詞同樣，有表示追敘的用法。

He went to Nanking, **where** (=and there) he stayed for three days. (他往南京，在那裏住了三天。)

He stayed there till Saturday, **when** (=and then) he started for Peiping. (在那裏他住到禮拜六為止，然後他動身到北平去了。)

4. “The + Comparative . . . the + Comparative” 的構文中，前面的 “the” (=to what extent) 爲關係副詞，後面的 “the” (=to that extent) 爲指示副詞(指示副詞即爲單純副詞中 “then”, “here”, “thus” 等表一定時間、場所、或程度的副詞)。

The more men have, **the more** they desire. (人所得愈多，所欲愈深。)

The higher up you go, **the colder** it becomes. (愈登得高，天氣愈冷。)

The sooner, **the better**. (愈快愈好。)

5. “Whenever”, “wherever” 與 “however”, 叫做 Compound Relative Adverb (合成關係副詞)。

Come **whenever** (=at any time that) you like. (隨便什麼時候來吧。)

Whenever =very time that) I meet him, I speak seriously to him. (每次我遇見他，我總是嚴正地對他說的。)

Sit **wherever** =in any place that) you like. (隨便什麼地方坐吧。)

My dog follows me **wherever** =to any place that) I go. (不論到什麼地方去，我的狗總跟着我走。)

此種複合關係副詞，又用於 Concessive Clause 中。

Whenever =no matter when) you may go, you will find him at his books. (不論你什麼時候去，你總看到他在讀書。)

Wherever (=no matter where) you may go, you can not succeed without perseverance. (不論你往那裏，沒有忍耐，你總得不到成功。)

However = *no matter how*) hard you may try, you can not master a language in a month or two. (不論你怎樣起勁,你總不能以一兩個月的時間修通一種外國語。)

副詞的作法 (Formation of Adverbs)

1. 副詞大抵由形容詞後面加“-ly”而成。

diligent—diligently

kind—kindly

faithful—faithfully

glad—gladly

2. 語尾為“le”時,略去“e”再加“y”。

noble—nobly

feeble—feebly

possible—possibly

simple—simply

3. 語尾為“y”時,將“y”變為“i”再加“-ly”。

pretty—prettily

happy—happily

heavy—heavily

gay—gaily or gayly

4. 語尾為“ll”時,只加“y”。

full—fully

dull—dully

5. 語尾為“ue”時,略去“e”再加“-ly”。

true—truly

due—duly

6. 副詞和形容詞同形。(hard, fast, early, well, low, far, much, enough 等)

{ The wind blows **hard**. (風猛烈地吹。)(副)

{ He is a **hard** worker. (他是個勞作者。)(形)

{ He walks **fast**. (他快快地走。)(副)

{ He is a **fast** walker. (他是個健跑家。)(形)

{ Is he **well**? (他好嗎?)(形)

{ Speak **well** of others. (須講人家好。)(副)

{ He is an **early** riser. (他是個早起家。)(形)

{ He rises **early**. (他一早就起來。)(副)

- { He has **much** experience in teaching English. (他對於教英文很有經驗。)(形)
 { He who works **much** will advance **much**. (多工作者多進步。)(副)

7. 形式有兩種的副詞，一與形容詞同形，一加“-ly”，兩方的意味有所不同。

- { **hard** (起勁)——I study as **hard** as possible. (我盡力起勁用功。)
 { **hardly** (幾乎不)——I **hardly** ever see him now. (我近來不大會見他。)
 { **late** (遲)——I arrive **late** last night. (我昨夜夜深時到的。)
 { **lately** (近來)——I have **lately** been very busy. (我近來很忙。)
 { **wide** (廣)——The fire spread far and **wide**. (火勢四散開去。)
 { **widely** (大)——His opinion differs **widely** from mine. (他的意見和我的大不相同。)
 { **near** (近)——He drew **near**. (他走近來了。)
 { **nearly** (差不多)——It is **nearly** ten o'clock. (差不多十點鐘了。)

副詞的用法 (Uses of Adverbs)

副詞除用於修飾動詞、形容詞、副詞之外，又有下列各種用法。

(1) 置於名詞或名詞代用語之前以加強語勢。

Even a schoolboy can read it. (小學生也能讀得出。)

He is **only** a student. (他不過是一個學生。)

She is **almost** a woman. (他儼然是一個成年的女人了。)

(2) 修飾 Adverb Phrase。

He left **soon after** my arrival. (我到後他就立刻走了。)

The gate is shut **exactly at ten o'clock**. (門是正確地在十點鐘關的。)

By this time we had go **half through the wood**. (這時候我們已穿過了一半森林。)

(3) 修飾 Adverb Clause。

He left **soon after** I arrived. (我到了以後，他就立刻走了。)

He did so, **only because** he could not help doing so. (他這樣做了，只因爲他不得不這樣子做。)

- { He has **much** experience in teaching English. (他對於教英文很有經驗。)(形)
- { He who works **much** will advance **much**. (多工作者多進步。)(副)

7. 形式有兩種的副詞，一與形容詞同形，一加“-ly”，兩方的意味有所不同。

- { **hard** (起勁)——I study as **hard** as possible. (我盡力起勁用功。)
- { **hardly** (幾乎不)——I **hardly** ever see him now. (我近來不大會見他。)
- { **late** (遲)——I arrive **late** last night. (我昨夜夜深時到的。)
- { **lately** (近來)——I have **lately** been very busy. (我近來很忙。)
- { **wide** (廣)——The fire spread far and **wide**. (火勢四散開去。)
- { **widely** (大)——His opinion differs **widely** from mine. (他的意見和我的大不相同。)
- { **near** (近)——He drew **near**. (他走近來了。)
- { **nearly** (差不多)——It is **nearly** ten o'clock. (差不多十點鐘了。)

副詞的用法 (Uses of Adverbs)

副詞除用於修飾動詞、形容詞、副詞之外，又有下列各種用法。

(1) 置於名詞或名詞代用語之前以加強語勢。

Even a schoolboy can read it. (小學生也能讀得出。)

He is **only** a student. (他不過是一個學生。)

She is **almost** a woman. (他儼然是一個成年的女人了。)

(2) 修飾 Adverb Phrase。

He left **soon after** my arrival. (我到後他就立刻走了。)

The gate is shut **exactly at** ten o'clock. (門是正確地在十點鐘關的。)

By this time we had go **half through** the wood. (這時候我們已穿過了一半森林。)

(3) 修飾 Adverb Clause。

He left **soon after** I arrived. (我到了以後，他就立刻走了。)

He did so, **only because** he could not help doing so. (他這樣做了，只因爲他不得不這樣子做。)

He left **shortly** after my arrival. (我一到他就走了。)

He left **shortly** after I arrived. (我到了之後，他就走了。)

但“enough”放在所修飾的 Word 後面

{ The book is **easy enough** for you to understand. (這本書容易得很，你可以懂得。)

{ He spoke **highly enough** of what you had done. (你所做的事，他稱讚得了不得。)

{ I have **slept enough**. (我睡得夠了。)

上列第一句中的“enough”修飾形容詞，第二句中修飾副詞，第三句中修飾動詞。

(2) 副詞修飾動詞時

(a) 修飾自動詞時，副詞放在動詞之後。

He landed **safely** at the foot of the precipice, and looked **anxiously** around in search of Pierre. (他安全地在斷崖根脚登了岸，焦灼地望着四處找尋庇愛兒。)

He who does not **rise early**, can not do a good day's work. (不早起的人，是不能好好的做一天的工作的。)

[注意] 但 **always, never, often, sometimes, seldom, generally, rarely** 等副詞，普通放在動詞的前面。

He **always** laughed at a good joke. (他聽了有趣的笑話，常是笑的。)

Never speak ill of others. (決不要說人家的壞話。)

He **often** came here to see me. (他常常到這裏來看我的。)

He **seldom** absents himself from school. (他是不大缺席的。)

(b) 修飾他動詞時，副詞放在動詞的前面或目的語的後面。

Kindly show me the way. (請你指點我路徑。)

He **showed** me the way **kindly**. (他親切地指點了我路徑。)

He **briefly** explained his plan. (他簡略地說明了自己的計劃。)

(c) 有助動詞時，副詞放在助動詞與本動詞之間。

I have **never** been abroad. (我沒有出過洋。)

The wind **has suddenly** fallen. (風突然止了。)

(3) 副詞修飾 Infinitive 時，通常放在 Infinitive 的後面。(但 not, never, always 等概放在 Infinitive 的前面)

The teacher ordered the boy *to study diligently*. (先生命學生努力用功。)

I hope *never to see* his face again. (我希望不再和他見面。)

【注意】副詞修飾 Infinitive 時，亦有放在 “to” 與動詞之間的，這叫做 Split Infinitive，初學者宜避去此種用法。

(4) 副詞修飾文句全體時，通常放在文句的冒頭。此種副詞，謂之 Sentence-Modifying Adverb。

Unfortunately he was not listened to. (不幸得很，沒有人聽他的話。)

Luckily no one was inside, when the roof fell in. (幸而屋頂坍下時，沒有人藏在裏面。)

比較 { **Happily** he did not die. (= It was a happy result that he did not die.) (幸而他沒有死去。)
He did not die **happily**. (= He did not die a happy death.) (他並不是幸福地死的 - 未獲善終。)

(5) 表一定時間的副詞，放在文句的冒頭或末尾。

{ **Next Sunday** the 20th athletic meeting of our school will be held.
The 20th athletic meeting of our school will be held **next Sunday**.
(本校的第二十屆運動會將在下星期日舉行。)

(6) 表場所的副詞，放在動詞的後面。又，表時間的副詞與表場所的副詞同用時，概以場所的副詞居先，時間的副詞居後

She will be **here soon**. (她立刻就來。)

He was born **in Chekiang, on the 20th of April, 1898**. (他於一千八百九十八年四月二十日生於浙江。)

(7) 加強語勢時，也有將副詞放在文句的冒頭的。

{ I had **scarcely** finished my work when a friend of mine called on me.
(我差不多還沒有做好我的工作，就有一個朋友來訪問我了。)
Scarcely had I finished my work when a friend of mine called on me.

{ I little expected that he would succeed so well. (想不到他會那樣好地成功。)
 Little did I expect that he would succeed so well.

[注意] 將副詞放在文句的冒頭以加強語勢時，文句中的助動詞須隨之變動而放在 subject 的前面。又，若原來的文句中無助動詞時，則須加助動詞“do”。但“away”，“off”，“up”，“down”等作文句冒頭的副詞用時，不在此例；且主語若為代名詞時，則連動詞的位置亦有毋須變更的。

{ The ball went away. } (球滾過去了。)
 { Away went the ball. }
 { We went off like the wind, down the hill. } (我們像風一般地跑下山去。)
 { Off we went like the wind, down the hill. }

(8) 可注意的“only”的位置

{ Only I heard of this yesterday. (形容詞)
 (只有我昨天聽到了這個。)
 I only heard of this yesterday. (副詞)
 (我還是剛剛昨天聽到的。)
 I heard only of this yesterday. (副詞)
 (昨天我聽到的只是這個。)
 I heard of this only yesterday. } (副詞)
 I heard of this yesterday only. }
 (昨天我才聽到了這個。)

副詞的比較 (Comparison of Adverbs)

副詞的比較，大體與形容詞相同。今略述於下。

1. 單音節與少數二音節的副詞，表比較級時加“-er”，表最上級時加“-est”。

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fast (快)	faster	fastest
late (遲)	later	latest

near (近)	nearer	nearest
often (屢)	oftener	oftenest

2. 以“-ly”結尾的副詞，表比較級及最上級時，用“more”與“most”。

bravely (勇敢地)	more bravely	most bravely
quickly (速)	more quickly	most quickly

[例外] 但“early”的變化為“earlier”，“earliest”。

3. 不規則的比較。

well (好)	better	best
badly } (壞)	worse	worst
ill }		
much (多)	more	most
little (少)	less	least
far (遠)	{ farther	{ farthest
	{ further	{ furthest

[注意] 形容詞的最上級須附定冠詞“the”，但副詞的最上級不用“the”。

{ He is **the best** man alive. (他是世上最好的人。)

{ Take **any** book that you like **best**. (拿一本你所最喜歡的書吧。)

“Very” and “Much”

1. 修飾形容詞及副詞的原級時用“very”，修飾比較級及最上級時用“much”。

{ This book is **very** easy. (這本書很容易。)[形容詞原級]

{ He studies **very** hard. (他非常用功。)[副詞原級]

{ It is **much** hotter today than yesterday. (今天比昨天更要熱。)[形容詞比較級]

{ He has worked **much** harder than you have done. (他比你更要用功。)[副詞比較級]

He is **much** *the best* student in the class. (他是一級中拔羣的學生。)[最上級]

[注意] 但“**very**”用於加強意味作‘實際的’意思解時，亦可用於最上級的前面。

This is the **very best** of all. (這是全部裏面最好的。)

He is the **very best** student in the class. (他是一級中最好的學生。)

2. “**Very**”用於修飾形容詞及副詞，“**much**”用於修飾動詞。

{ He is **very clever** for his age. (就他的年紀而論，他很聰明。)[形容詞]

{ I like coffee **very much**. (我非常歡喜咖啡。)[副詞]

I like it **much**. (我很歡喜這個。)[動詞]

3. 修飾現在分詞用“**very**”，修飾過去分詞用“**much**”。

{ This book is **very interesting**. (這書很有趣。)

{ I am **much interested** in the study of English. (學英語我覺得很有趣。)

{ The news is **very surprising**. (這消息很可驚。)

{ I am **much surprised** at the news. (聽了這消息使我大吃一驚。)

但以下的用法，屬於例外。

I am **very tired**. (我很疲勞。)

He is **very pleased**. { (他非常高興。)

He is **much pleased**. }

I am **much afraid** of it. (我很怕這個。)

又，Past Participle (過去分詞)作純粹的形容詞用時，須用“**ver**”作修飾語。

The area affected by the eruption is **very limited** (=na row). (被噴火所害的區域甚屬有限。)

These are **very laboured** (=elab rat) works. (這些是非常苦心的作品。)

“Yes” and “No”

不論所問的形式是肯定或否定，凡表肯定的回答用“yes”，表否定的回答用“no”。此兩字的用法，與中國的‘是’‘否’有抵觸之處，諸君極須注意。

- Is this book difficult? (這本書難嗎?) [肯定]
 { **Yes, it is difficult.** (是的,這本書是難的。)[肯定]
 { **No, it is not difficult.** (不,這本書並不難。)[否定]
- Did you **not** find him at home? (你沒有找到他在家裏嗎?) [否定]
 { **Yes, I found him at home.** (不,我找到他在家裏。)[肯定]
 { **No, I did not find him at home.** (是的,我沒有找到他在家裏。)[否定]

如上例所示,回答肯定的疑文句時,“yes”、“no”的用法概與中國語相同。但回答否定的疑問文句時,“yes”、“no”的用法,適與中國語相反。關於這點,諸君務須牢記於心。

[注意] (a) 用“**No**”開始的文句,也有一見似乎不表打消之意的。這種句子,須知道“**No**”的下面有一句打消文句略去。

- Is your father at home? (你的父親在家嗎?)
 { **No; he is away at seaside.**
 { =**No, he is not at home; he is away at the seaside.**
 { (不,他沒有在家;他到海邊去了。)
- Is he not old? (他年紀不老嗎?)
 { **No; he is young.**
 { =**No, he is not old; he is young.**
 { (是的,他年紀並不老;他是年青的。)

(b) 雖非同答疑問,但若表示同意於對方所否定的事情時,用“**no**”;表示不同意於對方所否定的事情時,則用“**yes**”。

- { (甲) **No one** speaks English better than Chang. (沒有人英語說得比張君更好。)
 { (乙) **No.** (=No one speaks it better than he.) (是呀,沒有人說得比他更好。)
 { (丙) **Yes,** Chang speaks better than he. (不,趙君比他說得好呢。)
- { (甲) He **does not** work hard enough. (他是不十分勤苦的。)
 { (乙) **No.** (是的,他是不十分勤苦的。)
- { (甲) You **should not** have done such a thing. (你不應該做這種事情。)
 { (乙) **No.** (是的,我不應該做這種事情。)

“Ago”, “Before” and “Since”

1. 表時間之長短時，“ago”為‘自今以前’之意，與 Past Tense 同用；“before”為‘當時以前’之意，通常與 Indirect Narration 中的 Past Perfect 同用；“since”兼“ago”，“before”兩方之用法。

He *died* three years ago (or since.) (他三年前死去了。)

He said his father *had died* three years before (or since.) (他說他的父親三年前死去了。)

[注意] “Ago”不論時間之長短如何，都可以用，如“a few minutes ago”（幾分鐘以前），“ages ago”（幾世紀以前）；但“since”只用於較短的時間。

2. “Before”單獨用時，為“before now”（自今以前）或“before then”（自當時以前）之意，可與 Present Perfect, Past, 或 Past Perfect 同用。

I *have met* him before. (我以前碰到過他。)

I *met* him once before. (我以前碰到他一次過。)

She said she *had met* him before. (她說她以前碰到過他。)

3. “Since”單獨用時，即為“since then”（當時以來），用於表繼續之意，故與 Perfect Tense 同用。

I *met* him last month and *have not seen* him since. (我前個月碰到了他之後就沒有看見他。)

His father *died* three years ago, and he *has lived* with his uncle ever since. (他的父親三年前死去了，以後他就和叔父住在一起。)

[注意] “Since”以前加“ever”者，不過為要使口調好聽及意味加強而已。

“Once” and “Ever”

1. “Once”用於肯定的敘述文句，“ever”用於疑問文句、條件文句、及否定文句。

I *have met* him once. (我曾經碰到過他。)

Have you ever seen a tiger? (你看到過老虎沒有?)

If you **ever** go that way, don't fail to call on me. (假使你往那條路走,不要忘記到我這裏來。)

I don't think he will **ever** do so. (我決不想他會這樣做。)

I **never** (=not + ever) saw his like. (我向來沒有看到過像他那樣的人。)

2. 最上級時,即肯定文句中亦用“ever”。

He is *the cleverest* boy that I have **ever** seen. (他是我所曾經看到過的最聰明的孩子。)

He is *the richest* man t' at **ever** lived. (他是世上稀有的富翁。)

3. “Ever”用在純粹的肯定文句中時,爲“always”之意,但含義比“always”要強。

Fortune was **ever** on his side. (他一向運氣是好的。)

I have **ever** thought so. (我老是這樣想的。)

Ever keep this precept in mind. (常須將此教規存於心中。)

I have known him **ever** since he was a boy. (從孩子時代起我就認識他。)

“Too” and “Enough”

1. “Too”爲‘過於’,‘太’之意,“enough”爲‘相當’,‘正好’之意。

He ate **too** much. (=he overate himself.) (他喫得太多了。)

Your pay is good **enough** for your work. (你的薪俸正相當於你的工作。)

He is now strong **enough** to walk. (他現在強健得可以走路了。)

2. Too + Adjective + Infinitive = so . . . that | | | |---|------| | } | can | | | do | | | will | . . . not.

It is **too** dark to see. = It is **so** dark that we **can not** see. (天暗得看不見了。)

He was **too** busy to miss his wife. = He was **so** busy that he **did not** miss wife. (他忙得很,所以並不以妻子不在家而感到寂寞。)

He is **too** wise not to see that. = He is **so** wise that he sees it. (他聰明得很,所以他是明白那件事情的。)

[注意] 但 “**only too + Infinitive**”, “**but too + Infinitive**”, “**too ready + Infinitive**”, “**too inclined + Infinitive**” 等皆不含打消之意。

I am **only too glad to join** you. (和你一塊兒去,我真是歡喜極了。)

He will be **but too happy to obey** you. (他將非常高興來服從你的命令吧。)

He is **too ready to speak**. = He is very talkative. (他太會講話。)

3. Can not + too = it is impossible + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{too} \\ \text{to over-} \dots \end{array} \right.$

We **cannot be too careful** in this world. (在這個世界中,我們無論怎樣注意也不會注意得過頭的——即在這個世界中,我們做人越注意越好。)

One **cannot be too faithful** to one's duties. (對於自己的職務,越能忠實越好。)

“Already”, “Yet” and “Still”

1. “**Already**” 用於肯定的敘述文句,表‘完了’之意,可與各種 Tense 同用。

Light the fire. It is **already** lighted. (把火點起來。火已經點着了。)

He has **already** recovered. (他已經復原了。)

He had **already** passed his twentieth birthday. (他已過了二十歲的生日了。)

2. “**Yet**” 多用於肯定的疑問文句及否定的敘述文句,表‘完了’或‘未曾完了’之意。

Has the bell rung **yet**? (鐘已打了嗎?)

No, it has **not rung yet**. (還沒有打過。)

3. “**Still**” 用於表‘繼續’之意。

Is he **still** living? (他還活着嗎?)

The old building is **still** in use. (舊屋子還使用着。)

“Little” and “A Little”

1. “Little” 與 “a little” 之區別，大致和作形容詞時之用法相同。“Little” 之意為‘少’，着重於無；“a little” 之意為‘有一點’，着重於有。

He is **little** better than he was yesterday. (他並不見得比昨天好。)

He is **a little** better this morning. (他今朝好一點了。)

2. “Little” 與 “know”, “think”, “dream”, “expect” 等動詞連用時，為 “not at all” 之意，表全然的打消。

I **little** expected that he would succeed so well. (我料不到他會這樣好好地成功。)

Little did I dream of seeing such a fine scenery. (我夢想不到我會看到這樣好的景色。)

You **little** know what mischief you have done! (你倒一點也不知道自己所做的惡事!)

I **little** thought that it was you. (想不到原來是你。)

[注意] “Not a little” 為‘大大地’之意，用於肯定；“not in the least” 為‘一點也不’之意，用於否定。

I was **not a little** surprised. (我大大地吃了一驚。)

I was **not in the least** surprised. (我毫不吃驚。)

3. 與 “how”, “so”, “as”, “too” 等連用之 “little”，亦可作為一種的打消看。

This shows **how little** he knows the world. (這就表示出他是怎樣的不懂得世情。)

He knows the world **so little** that he trusts everybody. (他不懂得世情，所以他對於什麼人都信任。)

He knows the world **as little as** a baby. (他的不懂世情同嬰孩一樣。)

He knows the world **too little** to do for a lawyer. (他太不懂世情，所以不配做律師。)

“There”

1. “There” 除表示‘那邊’的意味之外，又有用於表示事物之有無的。此種“there”，與“be”連用，絕無‘那邊’的意味，只不過是一種引導文句的 Expletive (虛辭)而已。

There are many beautiful flowers in the garden. (園裏有許多美麗的花。)

Is there a middle school here? (這裏有中學嗎?)

There was no inn there. (那邊並無一處客棧。)

If it goes on raining, **there will be** a flood. (若雨再不停止，就將發生洪水。)

There ought to be more middle schools in this town. (這市裏應該再多幾處中學。)

There must have been a strong earthquake somewhere. (一定在什麼地方有了大地震。)

There seems to have been a rainfall. (好像下過雨的樣子。)

2. 除“be”之外，凡表存在、生死、偶發事件、及來去等的動詞，亦可做此種構文，將主語放在動詞的後面。

Once upon a time **there lived** an old man (= an old man lived). (從前有一個老頭子。)

There was born a child (= a child was born) to them. (他們生了一個孩子。)

There broke out a rebellion (= a rebellion broke out). (暴動發生了。)

There came a man (= a man came). (有人來了。)

3. “There + be” 可以用“we have”，“you have”，或“they have”等代換，意思完全一樣。

{ **There was** an examination in English yesterday. (昨天英語考過了。)

{ **We had** an examination in English yesterday.

{ **Are there** many rains in June? (六月裏雨多嗎?)

{ **Have you** many rains in June?

{ **There is** no school to-day. (今天學校放假。)

{ **They have** no school to-day.

Exercise L

1. 改正下列文句中的錯誤：—

1. I am very interested in your story.
2. I remember I ever have been there, perhaps it was about ten years before.
3. I was told that he had died a fortnight ago.
4. Never I saw such a grand sight.
5. Is the invalid little better?—He is not very better than yesterday.

2. 將 “Yes” 或 “No” 填入下列文句中的空處：—

1. Did you not find him at home?
—, he was out.
2. Did you not catch the train?
—, I missed it.
3. Can neither you nor he speak French?
—, I think he can.
4. No one speaks English better than he.
—.
5. There was no one else, was there?
—, I was alone.
6. Where are you going?
—, I am not going anywhere.
7. Then you did not start in time, I suppose.
—, I left home quite early, but I was stopped by a friend on the way.
8. Can't he speak English?
—, he can.

3. 將下列文句譯成中文：—

1. He was the more hated, because he had done such a thing in their presence.
2. Persons of high rank are too apt to keep their inferiors at a distance.

3. He was too wise to be imposed upon by fair words spoken without sincerity.
4. The more monkeys are laughed at, the more funny things they try to do.
5. A book may be compared to your neighbour; if it be good, it cannot last too long, if bad, you cannot get rid of too early.
6. It is just possible, no doubt, that a young man may, at the outset of life, mistake his calling; in that case, the sooner he changes it, the better.
7. He has his way to make in the world and cannot begin too early.
8. Our respect towards a person lies not so much in what he can say, or even do, as in what we feel he really is.

4. 將下列文句譯成英文：—

1. 你還欠用功，此後非更用功不可。
2. 四季之中我最喜歡的是秋。
3. 那個人衰弱得很，不能入軍官學校。
4. 良友愈多愈好。
5. 我聽到了他死去的消息，非常吃驚。
6. 這次戰爭是世界未曾有的大災難。
7. 他受了人的稱讚，更加用功起來。
8. 你想他什麼時候回來？
9. 近來忙得很，連訪問朋友的時間也沒有了。
10. 從前有一個叫做趙子昂的名畫家。

第七章

前置詞 (PREPOSITIONS)

前置詞的形 (Forms of Prepositions)

(1) 單形前置詞 (Simple Prepositions):

after	from	over	to
at	in	per	under
by	of	since	up
down	off	through	with
for	on	till	<i>etc.</i>

(2) 複合前置詞 (Compound Prepositions):

about (= on + by + out)	between (= by + two)
above (= on + by + up)	beyond (= by + yonder)
across (= on + cross)	but (= by + out)
against (= on + gainest)	into (= in + to)
along (= on + long)	onto (= on + to)
amid(st) (= on + middle)	out of
among(st) (= on + mingle)	throughout (= through + out)
around (= on + round)	toward(s) (= to + ward)
before (= by + fore)	underneath (= under + neath)
behind (= by + hind)	until (= un + till)
below (= by + low)	unto (= un + to)
beneath (= by + n eath)	upon (= up + on)
beside (= by + side)	within (= with + in)
besides (= by + side)	without (= with + out) <i>etc.</i>

(3) 分詞前置詞 (Participial Prepositions):

During the holidays. (假期中)

Pending fresh orders. (等新的命令來為止)

Notwithstanding his anger. (不顧他的發怒)

Regarding }
Respecting } this point. (關於這一點)
Concerning }

Past ten o'clock. (十點鐘以後)

(4) 二重前置詞 (Double Prepositions):

He appeared **from among** the trees. (他從樹林中走了出來。)

The seed had sprouted **from under** the ground. (種子從地底下抽出芽來。)

We stayed there **till after** sunset (我們停留在那裏直等到太陽落山之後。)

But for our assistance, I could not have succeeded. (若沒有你的幫忙，我就不能成功了。)

The ground is valued **at above** ten thousand dollars. (那塊地估價在一萬元以上。)

(5) 熟語前置詞 (Phrase Prepositions)。

"**As for** me, give me liberty or give me death." (至於我，給我自由吧，否則就給我死好了。)

There is no doubt **as to** who will be elected (關於誰當選的事，已無疑義。)

He can't work **because of** his age. (他因年紀的關係不能勞動。)

Thoughts are expressed **by means of** words. (思想是藉了言詞表出的。)

There is a garden **in front of** the house. (房子的前面有一個花園。)

He attended the meeting **in spite of** his illness. (他不顧自己的病，會裏出席了。)

Mr. Wang is teaching **in place of** the principal (王先生代着校長教書。)

I am obliged to absent myself **on account of** illness. (我不得已因生病缺席。)

I called on him **on behalf of** my father. (我代父親去訪問了他。)

According to the papers the matter grows serious. (照報紙上看來，事件嚴重起來了。)

I wrote to him **with respect to** this matter. (關於這事件我寫信給他了。)

前置詞的目的語

(The Object of a Preposition)

前置詞的目的語，普通爲名詞與代名詞兩種：但亦有用其他 Word, Phrase, 及 Clause 作目的語的。今列舉於下。

(a) **Noun** (名詞):—

Rivers flow **into** *the sea*. (河流到海裏去。)

(b) **Pronoun** (代名詞):—

A basket with some apples **in** *it*. 盛着蘋果的籃)

(c) **Gerund** (動名詞):—

He talks **of** *going* abroad. (他說要出洋去。)

He is **above** *betraying* his country. (他不是一個會賣國的人。)

(d) **Infinitive** (不定詞)——不定詞通例不得作前置詞的 Object 用，但“about”與“but”的後面，常常有用不定詞作目的語的。

The patient was **about** *to die*. (病人快要死了。)

She does **nothing but** [*to*] *cry* all day. (她只是一天到晚哭泣。)

(e) **Adverb** (副詞):—

Till now (迄今), **since then** (從那個時候起), **from here** (從這裏), etc.

(f) **Adjective** (形容詞):—

In general (大概), **in private** (私下), **of late** (近來), etc.

(g) **Phrase** (短語):—

He came out **from** *behind the door*. (他從門背後走了出來。)

Stay **till** *after dinner*. (吃了飯之後去。)

(h) **Clause** (短句):—

Everything depends **upon** *whether he will consent or not*. (一切事情都要看他的意思如何。)

He told every one **of** *what he had heard*. (他把所聽到的事情告訴給大家聽了。)

[注意] 關係代名詞作前置詞的目的語用時，常被省去。

- { The man **for whom** we were looking (我們所尋找着的人)
 The man *whom* we were looking **for**. (同上)
 The man we were looking **for**. (同上)
- { I want a knife **with which** to sharpen my pencil. (我要一把削鉛筆的
 小刀。)
 I want a knife to sharpen my pencil **with**. (同上)
- { There were no chairs **on which** to sit. (沒有坐坐的椅子。)
 There were no chairs to sit **on**. (同上)

前置詞用作其他品詞

(Prepositions as Other Parts of Speech)

(a) **As Adverbs** (作副詞用) —— 前置詞後面省去目的語時，有成爲副詞的。

I have never met him **before** [this] (我以前一向沒有遇見過他。)

He looked cautiously **round** [him]. (他謹慎地向四週看了一眼。)

Come **in** (= come **into** the room). (進來。)

He went **out** (= he went **out of** the room). (他出去了。)

Put **on** your coat (= put your coat **on** your back). (把衣裳穿起來。)

He has **on** a straw hat (= he has a straw hat **on** his head). (他戴着草帽。)

Take **off** your boots (= take your boots **off** your feet) (脫去你的鞋子。)

[注意] 此種副詞，都可以移過去放在動詞的目的語後面；但目的語若爲代名詞時，則前置詞必須放在代名詞之後。

{ Put **on** your hat. } (把帽子戴起來。)

{ Put your hat **on**. }

{ Take your hat and put it **on**. (拿你的帽子來 把牠戴在頭上。)

(b) **As Adjectives** (作形容詞用)：—

The **above** rule holds good in this case. (上述的規則適用與此種情形。)

An **up** or **down** train. (上行車或下行車)

The upper and the **under** lips. (上唇與下唇)

The woods **beyond** are full of birds (對面的樹林中鳥很多。)

(c) **As Conjunctions** (作接續詞用):—

He arrived **before** I departed (在我出發之前他到了。)

I waited **till** he arrived (我等待他到了為止。)

[注意] 此種句子,前置詞後面原有引導 Noun Clause 的接續詞 “that”。省去這個 “that” 時,前置詞就成爲接續詞了。

前置詞的省略 (Omission of the Preposition)

(a) 表時間的名詞前面有 “this”, “that”, “next”, “last”, “every”, “some”, “any” 等詞時,前置詞 “in”, “at”, “on” 等一概不用。

He left here [on] **this morning**. (他今天出發了。)

I shall start [in] **this week** and return [in] **next week**. (我將在這星期動身,下星期回來。)

I am expecting his telegram [at] **every moment**. (我刻刻等待着他的電報。)

You may come to see me [at] **any time** between 4 and 5 (在四點到五點之間,無論什麼時候你都可以來會我。)

[On] **Last Sunday** he went to Hangchow (前個禮拜日他到杭州去了。)

(b) “Use” (用), “age” (年齡), “colour” (顏色), “size” (大小)等抽象名詞前面,前置詞一概省略。

It is [of] **no use** trying it a gain. (再試一次,也是無用的。)

He is [of] **the same age** as you. (他的年齡和你相同。)

[Of] **What colour** is it? (這是什麼顏色的?)

[Of] **What size** is it? (這東西大小如何?)

(c) “Way” (路)的前面有 “this”, “that” 等詞時,前置詞 “in” 可以省去。

Please drop in at my house when you come [in] **this way**. (你到這裏來時，請到我的家裏來。)

He went [in] **that way**. (他往那邊去了。)

前置詞的用法 (Uses of Prepositions)

1. 時的前置詞 (*Prepositions of Time*)

“At”, “In” and “On”

(1) “At” 用於表時間的一點 (Point of Time)。凡幾點、幾分鐘、正午、黎明、夜半、始、終等表一剎那時間的詞前面，都用 “at”。

at eight o'clock, at half past eleven, (at) what time?, at a quarter to two;

at daybreak, at noon, at midnight, at sunrise, at sunset;

at the beginning (middle, end) of June;

at that time, at this moment, at that instant etc.

The next train leaves **at half past eight** (下一班車八點半開。)

The steamer will arrive **at Yokohama at noon to-morrow**. (輪船將在明天正午到橫濱。)

A fire broke out **at midnight** last Sunday. (前個禮拜日的半夜裏發生了火災。)

(2) “In” 用於表較長的時期 (Extended Period of Time)。凡月、季、年、世紀、一生、一時期等表連續時期的詞前面，都用 “in”。

in January, in spring, in 1933, in the Twentieth Century;

in one's youth, in my time, in former times, in one's absence, etc.

He will return to China **in September next**. (他將在九月中歸國。)

Cherry-trees blossom **in spring** (櫻桃樹在春季開花。)

There was a civil war **in his reign** (在他治世的時候有一次內戰。)

(3) “On” 用於表一定的時日 (Particular Occasion).

on the present occasion, **on** the 3rd of November, **on** the night of the 12th;

on that morning, **on** Sunday, **on** New Year's Eve, etc.

The 10th meeting of the English Speaking Society will be held **on** the 5th of next month. (第十屆英語會將在下月五日舉行。)

I saved a man **on** one occasion. (我有一個時候救了一個人。)

All accounts are settled **on** New Year's Eve. (一切賬目在年終三十日夜結算。)

[注意] 未定何日，只漠然言晝間，上午，下午，晚間，早晨等時，前置詞用 “in”。但 “night” 通例用 “at”。

In the daytime, **in** the morning, **in** the afternoon, **in** the evening, **at** night.

比較 { It happened **in** the evening. (這是晚上的事情。)
 { It happened **on** the evening of the 13th. (這是十三日晚上的事情。)

“From” and “Since”

(1) “Since” 用於表繼續到現在為止的一事件的出發點，即為 “since then = from then till now” 的意味，常與 Present Perfect 的動詞同用。

I have been ill **since** last Sunday. (從前個禮拜日起，我生着病。)

He has lived in Japan **since** 1908. (從 1908 年起，他就住在日本。)

He has been staying at home **since** yesterday. (從昨天起他就留在家裏。)

It is three years **since** my uncle's death. (叔父死去之後已三年了。)

(2) “From” 只用於表事件開始的出發點，多用於 ‘從何時起到何時止’ 的文句中，常與 Past Tense 同用。

He works **from** dawn **till** dusk. (他一天到晚工作。)

He lived in America **from** 1902 **to** (or **till**) 1908. (從 1902 年起至 1908 年止，他住在美國。)

He stayed here **from** the 15th **till** the 20th. (從十五日起到二十日爲止，他住在這裏。)

He began English **from** the age of ten. (他從十歲起就開始學英語。)

【注意】“**Begin**”與“**commence**”兩動詞的後面，決不宜用“**from**”。

School *begins* **at** eight o'clock. (從八點鐘開始上課。)

The new term *commences* **on** the 11th of September. (新學期從九月十一日開始。)

比較 { I have lived here **from** that time. [誤]
 { I have lived here **since** that time. [正] (從那個時候起我就住在這裏。)

“Till” and “By”

(1) “**Till**”用於表‘繼續的終止點’。“**Until**”與“**till**”無用法上的區別，但用“**until**”時，似帶有點過遠的調子；又，主要文句的前面若有 Clause 或 Phrase 時，文句的冒頭用“**until**”的居多，如“**Until** you told me I had no idea of it.”)

I shall be here **till** six. (我將留在此地到六點鐘爲止。)

I shall wait for him **till** five in the afternoon. (我將等他到下午五點鐘爲止。)

I shall stay **till** the end of this month. (我將留在此地到月底爲止。)

【注意】“**Up to**”與“**down to**”的用法與“**till**”類似。但“**up to**”爲一種的 Emphatic expression，用於表確實的終止點；“**down to**”用於表意味不確實的終止點。

Up to that time, I had been studying **without** any definite object. (到那個時候爲止，我讀書毫無確定的目的。)

The custom continued **down to** recent times. (該習慣一直留存到近代。)

(2) “**By**”用於表‘完了的期限’。

You must finish your exercise **by** five in the afternoon. (到午後五點鐘時，你必須把練習題做好。)

He will have arrived **by** that time. (到那個時候，他就會到了。)

He must have arrived **by** this. (這時候他必定已經到了。)

比較 { I shall be here **till** six. (我將在此地到六點鐘為止。)
 { I shall be here **by** six. (到六點鐘的時候，我將在此地。)

“In”, “Within” and “After”

(1) “In” 用於表‘期間的經過’。

The blossoms will be out **in** a few days. (過幾天花就要開了。)

He will be back **in** a week's time. (過一個禮拜他就要回來。)

It will be ready **in** a short time. (過一回兒就可以安排好了。)

(2) “Within” 用於表‘期間以內’。

We must finish it **within** a week. (我們必須在一禮拜以內把牠做好。)

I beg you will answer **within** 24 hours. (請你於廿四小時以內答覆。)

Lost articles should be called for **within** three days. (遺失品須於三天以內領取。)

(3) “After” 亦用於表‘期間的經過’，但其用法與 “in” 不同。“In” 以現在為起點，用於述未來的事情；“after” 以過去為起點，用於述過去的事情。

He died **after** a few days. (幾天之後他就死了。)

He returned **after** a week. (一禮拜之後他回來了。)

比較 { I shall not be here **after** a month. [誤]
 { I shall not be here **in** a month. [正] (過了一個月，我就要走。)

[注意] “After” 不得用於述未來的事情，但熟語 “on and after” 為例外。

The new railway schedule will come into effect **on and after** the 1st of next month. (新訂火車時間表將從下月一號起實行。)

“Before”, “After”; “To”, “Past”

這四個前置詞都是用於表時間的前後的，但 “to” 與 “past” 只用於表鐘點。

I started **before** noon and arrived **after** dark. (我午前出發，夜裏到的。)

It is a quarter **past** seven by my watch. (我的錶上是七點一刻。)

He left home at a quarter **to** seven. (他於六時四十五分離家。)

【注意】“Past”亦可用於表年齡 如：

Past sixty years of age. (過了六十歲)

Past the age of bearing children. (過了生育子女的年齡)

“For”, “During” and “Through”

(1) “For” 用於表幾小時間、幾日間、幾年間等‘抽象的期間’。

He will **stay** here **for** a week. (他將在這裏住一個禮拜。)

He will have been studying English **for** five years **by** next month.

(到下個月，他學英語已滿五年。)

I have not seen you **for** a long time. (好久不見了。)

(2) “During” 用於表‘狀態的繼續中’。“For” 着重於時間，“during” 着重於事件。

He took my place **during** my absence. (我不在的時候，他代理着。)

The members are busy **during** the session. (會期中議員是忙的。)

I thank you very much for your kindness shown me **during** my stay in London. (在倫敦時承蒙照顧，感激得很。)

比較 { **In** summer people go to the seaside.

(夏天人都往海邊去。)

Are you going anywhere **during** the summer?

(本年夏季你打算到什麼地方去?)

(3) “Through” 用於表‘自始至終的繼續’。

I shall stay there **through** the holidays. (整個假期中我將住在那裏。)

He worked hard **through** the summer. (整個夏季中他起勁地工作。)

He remained a bachelor **through** life. (他做了一輩子的單身漢。)

比較 { He often falls asleep **during** the lesson. (他在上課時常常睡去。)

He was asleep all **through** the lesson. (上課時他儘是睡着。)

2. 場所的前置詞 (*Prepositions of Place*)

“At” and “In”

- (1) “At” 用於村、鎮、小島等‘較狹的場所’。

He lives **at** a small village near Shanghai. (他住在上海附近的一個小村裏。)

I passed my holidays **at** King-te-chen. (假期中我在景德鎮。)

He arrived **at** Chusan on the 12th of October. (他于十月十二日到舟山。)

- (2) “In” 用於國、大都會及其他‘廣大的場所’

How long have you been **in** China? (在中國有多少時候了?)

He lives **in** Nanking. (他住在南京。)

The regiment was then **in** Formosa. (當時艦隊在臺灣。)

[注意] (a) 由地圖上着想，指相隔遠處的較大的場所時，可用“at”。如

To arrive **at** London. (到倫敦)

(b) 大都會名與國名並用時，亦用“at”。如

At Edinburgh *in* Scotland. (在蘇格蘭愛丁堡)

“On” and “Off”

- (1) “On” 用於表示‘與表面或線的接觸’。

There is a book **on** the table. (桌上有一本書。)[向上的表面]

Insects can walk **on** the ceiling. (蟲能在天花板上行走。)[向下的表面]

London is situated **on** the Thames. (倫敦在泰晤士河邊。)[線]

A map hangs **on** the wall. (壁上掛着地圖。)[橫的表面]

He lives **on** the outskirts of Shanghai. (他住在上海市外。)[線]

- (2) “Off” 與“on” 正相反對，表示‘隔離’。

{ To sit **on** a chair. (坐上去)

{ To fall **off** a chair. (翻下來)

{ To put one's hat **on** one's head. (戴上帽子)

{ To take one's hat **off** one's head. (脫去帽子)

- { The island is situated **on** the coast of S. (島在 S 海岸。)
 { The ship was wrecked **off** the coast of S. (船沉在 S 洋面中。)

又，敘述無形的狀態時，“on”亦與“off”對立。

- { He is **on duty** to-day. (他今天值日。)
 { He will be **off duty** to-morrow. (他明天不值日。)

“In”, “Into” and “Out of”

(1) “In” 用於表‘內中靜止的狀態’。

There was no one **in** the room. (房間裏一個人都沒有。)

Fish live **in** water. (魚棲在水中。)

Peasants work **in** the fields. (農夫在田野中工作。)

(2) “Into” 用於表‘進入內中的運動 (motion)’。

I went **into** the room. (我走進到房間裏面。)

A bee came flying **into** the palace. (一隻蜜蜂飛到宮中來了。)

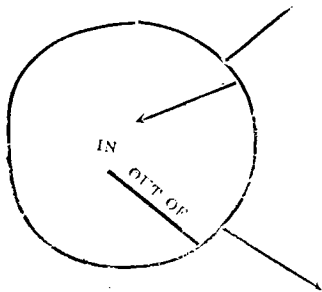
He plunged **into** the water. (他躍入水中。)

(3) “Out of” 正與 “in” 或 “into” 相反，表‘外面靜止的狀態’及‘向外的運動’。

He came **out of** the room. (他走出了房間。)

He took her **out of** the gutter. (他把她救出了——從苦海中救了出來。)

INTO



[注意] “Go in”, “come out” 等短語後面省去名詞時，則 “in” 與 “out” 成爲副詞。

He went out (=out of the house) into the garden (他走出到園裏去了。)

Come in(=into the house)out of the wet. (進來避雨吧。)

“On”, “Beneath”; “Above”, “Below”;
“Over”, “Under”; “Up”, “Down”

- (1) “On” 表示‘表面的接觸’，“beneath” 表示‘底下的接觸’。

{ The book is on the table. (書在桌上。)

{ Many heroes sleep beneath our feet. (許多勇士睡在我們的腳底下。)

- (2) “Above” (=higher than) 與 “below” (=lower than) 單用於表示位置的高低。

{ The moon has risen above the horizon. (月已升在地平線上了。)

{ The sun has sunk below the horizon. (太陽沉在地平線下了。)

比較 { We saw the whole scene below our eyes. (我們俯覽全景。)

{ We tread on anything beneath our feet. (我們腳踏一切。)

- (3) “Over” 與 “under” 表‘正對上與正對下的位置’(vertically above and vertically below)。

{ The lamp hung over the table. (洋燈掛在桌子之上。)

{ We took shelter from the rain under a big tree. (我們在一株大樹底下避雨。)

比較 { Can you keep yourself above water? (你能使自己浮在水上嗎?)

{ There is a sign-board over the door. (門之上有一塊招牌。)

{ You can see the whole town below your eyes. (你可以俯視全市。)

{ We were passing under a bridge. (我們正過一條橋的下面。)

- (4) “Up” 與 “down” 表示‘向上與向下’，常與表動作的動詞同用。

{ We sailed up the river. (我們向河的上流航行。)

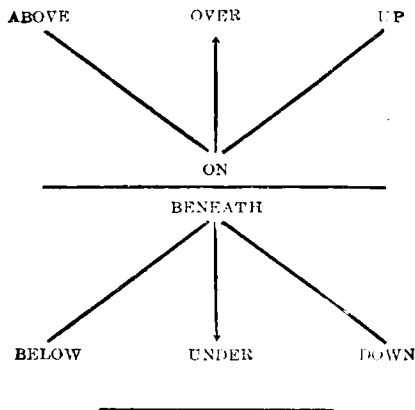
{ We sailed down the river. (我們向河的下流航行。)

[注意] “Up”, “down” 不與表動作的動詞同用時,則表結果生成的狀態 (Resultant Position)。此種前置詞,就叫做 **Resultant Preposition**。

There is a crow's nest **up** a fir tree. (杉樹上有一個烏鴉的巢。)

There is a city **down** stream. (溪的下流有一個城市。)

今將以上所述八個前置詞的關係,列表於下:



“Around”, “Round” and “About”

(1) “Around” 表‘周圍靜止的位置’。“Round” 表‘周圍環繞的運動’,與表動作的動詞同用。

- { They sit **around** the table. (他們團團圍桌而坐。)
- { The moon moves **round** the earth. (月亮繞地球而行。)
- { The boys stood **around** him. (孩子們繞了他立着。)
- { The child clung **round** her neck. (孩子攏住了她的項頸。)

(2) “About” 用於漠然指一處的地方,不論靜止或動作皆可用。

- { She tied a handkerchief **around** her neck. (她領頸裏圍了一條手帕。)
- { Her hair hung **about** her neck. (她的頭髮披在項頸裏。)
- { We walked **round** the pond. (我們繞了池走。)
- { We rowed **about** the pond. (我們在池中划船。)

“Along”, “Across” and “Through”

(1) “Along” 表示‘沿—長線的位置’。

The ship sailed **along** the coast. (船沿海岸而行。)

The road runs **along** the track. (道路沿軌道而進。)

We walk **d along** the banks of the river. (我們沿了河岸走。)

(2) “Across” 表‘交叉’或‘橫斷’。

The road runs **across** the plain. (道路橫互於野。)

Let us swim **across** the river. (讓我們游到河對岸去吧。)

He caught sight of me, and came running **across** the street. (他看到了我，就橫過街道跑來了。)

(3) “Through” 表示‘貫通’或‘穿過’。

The river flows **through** the city. (該河流貫城市。)

A bullet passes **through** the wall. (彈丸穿過牆壁。)

An aeroplane rushes **through** the air. (飛機飛過空中。)

“Among” and “Between”

“Among” 表‘三個以上的事物之間’。“Between” 表‘兩個事物之間’。

He concealed himself **in** the forest. (他隱身林中。)

He concealed himself **among** the trees. (他隱身在樹木之中。)

He concealed himself **between** the two houses. (他隱身在兩座房子之間。)

[注意] 但國際關係上如締結條約之類，不論有多少國家，還是只用“between”的。

The naval reduction treaty concluded **between** Great Britain, America, and Japan. (英美日三國所締結的海軍軍縮條約)

“Among” 與 “Between” 又用於表‘分配’之意。

He divided the property **between** his two sons. (他把財產分給他兩個兒子。)

He distributed the money **among** his followers. (他把錢分散給他的部下。)

“By”, “Beside” and “At”

(1) “By” 與 “beside” (= *by the side of*) 皆表示‘偶然的接近’，但 “by” 似多用於日常慣說的文句中。

- { There is a pine-tree **by** the gate. (門旁有一株松樹。)
 { There is a maple-tree **beside** the barn. (倉屋的旁邊有一株楓樹。)

[注意] “To **stand by** one” 因有‘助人’的意義，故‘立在人的旁邊’宜用 “to **stand beside** one”。

- { He **sat by** me. (他坐在我的旁邊。)
 { He **was standing beside** me. (他在我的旁邊立着。)
 { He **stood by** me. (他幫了我的忙。)

(2) “At” 表‘有意志的接近’。

- { There is a willow-tree **by** the well. (井旁有一株柳樹。)
 { The maid is **at** the well. (女僕在井旁。——其目的為汲水)
 { There was a large tree **beside** the fountain. (泉邊有一株大樹。)
 { The party halted **at** a fountain. (那班人在泉邊停住了。——其目的為解渴或休息)

Some one is **at** the door. (有人在門口。——其目的為訪問)

“Before”, “Behind” and “After”

(1) “Before”, “behind” 用於表‘前與後’。

- { Our waiter sits **before** us. (我們的堂倌坐在我們的前面。)
 { Their waiter stands **behind** them. (他們的堂倌立在他們的後面。)
 He hid himself **behind** the curtain. (他躲在窗簾的後面。)
 I walked **behind** him. (我走在他的後面。)

(2) “After” 表示‘從後面追趕’之意。又，表先後的順序時，用 “before” 與 “after”。

He ran **after** his master. (他追在主人的後面跑。)

He who runs **after** two hares will catch neither. (追二兔者不得其一。)

- { The English verb comes **before** the object. (英語的動詞在目的語之前。)
 { The French adjective comes **after** its noun. (法語的形容詞在名詞的後面。)

[注意] 此外表前後的位置，又有下列的 Phrase Preposition。

There is a pine-tree **in front of** the house. (房子的前面有一株松樹。)

There is a garden { **at the back of** } the house. (房子的後面有一個花園。)
 { **in the rear of** }

He walked **ahead of** me. (他走在我的前面。)

“To”, “Toward” and “For”

(1) “To” 表示‘到着’。“Toward” 只表‘運動的方向’。

- { He went **to** the door. (他走到門口去。)
 { I saw a man coming **toward** me. (我看到有一個人向我這方面走過來。)
 { He came up **to** Shanghai a few days ago. (他是前幾天到上海來的。)
 { He ran **toward** the sea-shore. (他向着海岸跑去。)

“To” 亦有用於只表‘方向’的，但意義與 “toward” 稍有不同 顯然指‘方向的一點’時用 “to”；指‘所朝的方向’時用 “toward”。

- { The needle points **to** the north. (針指着北方。)
 { The house faces **toward** the north. (房子是朝北的。)

(2) “For” 用在 “start”, “leave”, “depart”, “set out”, “sail”, “be bound” 等動詞後面時，表‘所去的目的地’。

We started **for** home at four o'clock. (四點鐘的時候，我們就動身回家來了。)

The ship is bound **for** San Francisco. (該船是到舊金山去的。)

{ He has gone **to** America. (他到美國去了。)

{ He has left **for** America. (他出發往美國去了。)

3. 分離與附着 (Separation and Adherence)

“From”, “Of” and “To”

(1) “From” 用於表‘分離’之意。

I have **parted from** my partner. (我與我的同伴分別了。)

He has **retired from** business. (他退出了實業界。)

Illness **prevented me from** attending the meeting. (疾病阻止我出席開會。)

He was **banished from** the land. (他被放逐出境。)

比較 { To **absent oneself** (=be absent) **from** school. (缺席)
 { To **present oneself** (=be present) **at** the meeting (出席)

(2) “Of” 亦表‘分離’，但必用在表‘減輕’，‘奪取’等意味的動詞後面。

“I will **ease you of** your burden.” So saying the highway man **robbed** him **of** his money. (‘給你減輕點担子吧’；這樣說着，斷路強盜就搶去了他的金錢。)

This medicine will **relieve you of** your pain. (這藥會醫好你的痛苦。)

Can you **cure me of** this disease? (你能醫好我這個病嗎?)

An eyedisease **deprived him of** his eyesight. (眼病使他失明了。)

比較 { To **steal money from** one. } (偷人的錢)
 { To **rob one of** money. }

(3) “To” 正為“from”的反對，表‘附着’之意。

He can **stick to** nothing. (他對於無論什麼事情都沒有恆心。)

You must **keep to** your agreement. (你必須守約。)

One should **cleave to** one wife. (人必須專意於一個妻子。)

The boys are **attached to** the teacher. (孩子們依戀着先生。)

{ You must **adhere to** your original plan. (你必須固守原定的計畫。)
 { You must not **depart from** it on any account. (你無論如何不應該變更牠。)

4. 根源或出處 (Source or Origin)

“From”, “Of” and “Out of”

表根源與出處的前置詞，通常為 “from”, “of”, “out of” 三個。三者的用法，依動詞與意味而有所限定。

(1) “From” 用在動詞 “rise”, “spring”, “issue”, “proceed”, “quote”, “translate”, “copy” 等的後面。

He **rose from** the ranks to be a general. (他從小兵升為大將。)

The trouble **arises from** racial prejudice. (這紛擾起於人種的偏見。)

This book is **translated from** the French. (這本書從法文譯過來的。)

What part of the country do you **come from**? (你是什麼地方的人?)

He likes to **quote from** Shakespeare. (他喜歡引用莎士比亞的話。)

(2) “Of” 用在動詞 “come”, “be born”, “ask”, “inquire”, “re-quire”, “beg” 等的後面。

He **comes of** a good family. (他是世家出身。)

I want to **ask** a favour **of** you. (我有事情要懇求你。)

He was **born of** rich parents. (他是富家子弟。)

I **demand** the reason **of** him. (我問他什麼理由。)

I **beg** pardon **of** you. (請你饒恕了我。)

(3) “Out of” 為‘出於’之意，有時可作 “from” 之代用，

Plants grow **out of** the earth. (植物生自地中。)

I **paid out of** my own pocket. (我從自己的袋裏拿出錢來付了。)

It is harder to translate than to write **out of** your own head. (翻譯比創作要難。)

比較 { You will get nothing **from** me. (我一個錢都不給你。)
 { You will get nothing **out of** me. (我是不會告訴你的。)

下列諸動詞後面，“from” 與 “of” 可以隨使用。

Of (or From) whom did you **buy** it? (從什麼人那裏買來的?)

I **borrowed it from** (or **of**) Mr. Chang. (從張君那裏借來的。)

You must not expect too much **of** (or **from**) me. (你不應該對我抱過於大的希望。)

5. 比較與一致 (Comparison and Agreement)

“With” and “To”

表比較與一致的前置詞，通常為“with”與“to”兩個。

(1) Comparison:—

(a) “With” 用在動詞 “compare”, “contrast” 的後面。

I have **compared** the translation **with** the original. (我把翻譯同原文對照過了。)

The white sails are beautifully **contrasted with** the dark horizon.
(白帆與暗色的水平成爲美麗的對照。)

(b) “To” 用在形容詞 “equal”, “similar”, “equivalent”, “proportionate”, “comparable”, “superior”, “inferior”, “previous”, “subsequent” 等及動詞 “prefer”, “liken”, “compare” (=liken) 等的後面。

比較 { Life is **compared to** a voyage. (人生譬如航海。)[譬如]
This is not to be **compared with** that. (這個是不能和那個比的。)[比較]

He is not **equal to** his task. (他是做不來他的工作的。)

Death is **preferable to** dishonour. (死勝於恥。)

Ten to one, he will fail. (十之八九他是要失敗的。)

This is **superior to** that. (這個比那個好。)

(2) Agreement:—

(a) “With” 表‘一致’時，用在 “agree”, “accord”, “concur”, “comply”, “coincide” 等動詞及 “consistent”, “compatible”, “commensurate” 等形容詞後面。

I **agree with** you on that point. (那點我是和你同意的。)

I can not **comply with** your request. (我難以答應你的要求。)

Your views do not **accord with** mine. (你的見地和我的不一致。)

This is not **consistent with** his statement. (這和他所說的話矛盾。)

(b) “To” 表‘一致’或‘適合’時，用在 “accede”, “assent”, “consent”, “be accustomed” 等動詞及 “suitable”, “adequate”, “appropriate” 等形容詞後面。

My father has **consented to** the match. (父親答應了這婚事。)

I can not **assent to** such terms. (我不能承認這種條件。)

He is **accustomed to** early rising. (他是早起慣的。)

比較 { I do not **agree with** you. (我不和你同意。)

{ I can not **agree to** your proposal. (我不能答應你的提議。)

6. 材料 (Material)

“From”, “Of” and “Out of”

(1) 凡一種製成品‘有材料原形保存’者，用 “of”。

Ships are now built **of** steel. (現在的船是用鋼鐵造的。)

Her clothes are made **of** muslin. (她的衣服是棉紗做的。)

A sentence is made up **of** words. (句子是用詞結成的。)

(2) 凡一種製成品‘全然失去材料的原形’者，用 “from”。

Wine is made **from** grapes, and beer **from** barley. (葡萄酒是用葡萄做的，啤酒是用大麥做的。)

The medicine is prepared **from** choice materials. (這藥是用精選的材料製的。)

(3) “Out of” 常用於動詞與前置詞分離時，語勢較 “of” 為強。

諸君須注意，上述 (1) 之 “of”，實為此 “out of” 的省略形。

- { Many useful things are **made of** Chinese paper. (許多有用的東西是用中國紙做的。)
- { The Chinese **make** many things **out of** paper. (中國人用紙做許多東西。)
- { We **make** many things **out of** bamboo. (我們用竹做出許多東西。)
- { Many things are **made of** bamboo. (許多東西是用竹做的。)

[注意] 如下列之 Liom 中, 通常省去 “out”。

I will **make a man of** you. (我要把你教成一個完全的人。)

She will **make a fool of** him. (她將愚弄他吧。)

7. 原因 (Cause)

“From”, “Through” and “Of”

(1) “From” 用於表‘直接的原因’。

Many people smoke **from** habit. (許多人因習慣而吸煙。)

Many fell sick **from** drinking muddy water. (許多人因喝了濁水而生病。)

He is suffering **from** influenza. (他因患感冒苦悶着。)

(2) “Through” 用於表不注意及怠慢等‘消極或偶然的原因’。

It was entirely **through** your neglect that your child was run over by a motor-car. (你的孩子被汽車軋死, 完全是你自己疏忽的緣故。)

He lost his situation **through** his carelessness. (他爲了自己的不常心而失職。)

It happened **through** no fault of mine. (這並不是因了我的過失發生的。)

(3) “Of” 用於表‘死的原因’。

His brother **died of** consumption. (他的兄弟生肺病死了。)

Many people **die of** typhoid fever. (許多人因腸壘扶斯病死去。)

[注意] 句中用有 “cause” 一詞時, “die” 下面不用 “of” 而用 “from”。

He **died from** some unknown **cause**. (他的死因不明。)

“At” and “Over”

“At” 與 “over” 皆表感情的原因 (Cause of emotion)

(1) “At” 用於表‘見了’，‘聽了’等以後感情發洩的原因。

The child rejoiced **at the sight of** its mother. (孩子看到了母親高興起來。)

They tremble **at the sound of** his footsteps. (他們聽到他的腳聲就戰慄起來。)

The whole nation rejoiced **at the news of** victory. (全國國民聽到了勝利的消息高興起來。)

Everybody is surprised **at** his success. (聽到了他的成功，人人吃驚。)

He was angry **at** my words. (他聽了我的話發怒起來。)

(2) “Over” 用於表‘成爲原因的事件’ 多用在動詞 “weep”, “cry”, “mourn”, “laugh” 等後面。

They mourned **over** his death. (他們哀悼他的死亡。)

The nation rejoiced **over** the victory. (國民慶祝勝利。)

She cried **over** her husband's remains. (她對着丈夫的遺骸哭泣。)

比較 { You should not **laugh at** people. (你不應該譏笑人。)
 { We **laughed over** his blunder. (我們看了他的錯失笑起來了。)

【注意】表喜怒哀樂等原因用 “at”，但表所接觸的對手方的人或物時用 “with”。

{ I am **pleased with** my new man. (我對於新來的人覺得滿意。)

{ I am especially **pleased at** his honesty. (對於他的誠實，我感到特別的滿意。)

“With” and “For”

“With” 與 “for” 皆用於表舉動的原因 (Cause of behavior)。

(1) “With” 表示‘由外界及於內體的原因’。

The old man is shivering **with** cold. (老人因寒冷戰慄着。)

I am tired **with** walking all day. (我因走了一天疲乏了。)

He was fatigued **with** toil. (他工作得疲勞了。)

He is enchanted **with** her charms. (他因了她的美而入迷。)

He is tottering **with** weakness. (他因衰弱，立不穩脚步。)

比較 { I am **tired of** my work. (我已討厭我的工作。)
 { I am **tired with** working. (我工作得疲乏了。)

(2) “For” 表示‘對於心中無形的原因’。

He could not speak **for** fear. (他怕得不敢作聲。)

We danced **for** joy. (我們高興得跳躍起來。)

I tremble **for** your safety. (我担心着你的安全。)

8. 理 由 (Reason)

“For” and “On”

(1) “For” 表理由時，常與 “reason”, “noted”, “famous”, “celebrated” 等詞，及 “for fear of”, “for want of” 等短語同用。

For what reason (= *why*) do you refuse? (你爲了什麼理由拒絕的?)

This is my **reason for** refusing. (這就是我拒絕的理由。)

Heaven has rewarded him **for** his honesty. (天報償了他的誠實。)

He was dismissed **for** neglecting his duties. (他爲了疏忽職務被免職了。)

The West Lake is **celebrated for** its scenery. (西湖以景色聞名。)

He is **noted for** his bravery. (他以勇敢出名。)

England is **famous for** its navy, and France **for** its army. (英國以海軍著名，法國以陸軍著名。)

(2) “On” 表理由或根據時，常與 “account”, “ground” 等詞同用。

He resigned **on the ground of** ill-health. (他以身體不好的理由辭職了。)

I absent myself **on account of** illness. (爲了生病的緣故我缺席了。)

He declined to see me **on the plea of** illness. (他稱病謝絕了我的面會。)

I engaged him **on** your recommendation. (我以你推薦的關係僱用了他。)

9. 目的 (Purpose)

“For”, “After” and “On”

(1) 表目的的 “for”, 由 “leave for ...” 等表目的地的 “for” 轉成。

What do you go to school **for**? (你爲什麼到學校裏去的?)

He is travelling **for the benefit of** his health. (他爲要保養身體出去旅行。)

Man **seeks for** happiness. (人求幸福。)

How I **long for** a sight of my home! (我怎樣的渴望着見一見我的家呀!)

(2) 表目的的 “after”, 由 “run after ...” 等表追求的 “for” 轉成。

He is much **run after**. (他是很出風頭的。)

They **hunger after** knowledge. (他們渴望着知識。)

He **run mad after** an actress. (他熱中於一個女伶。)

Whosoever looketh on a woman to **lust after** her, hath committed adultery with her already in his heart. (看着女人垂涎的人, 在中心已經犯了姦淫的罪。)

(3) “On” 表目的時, 常用在 “journey”, “tour”, “expedition”, “excursion”, “trip”, “business”, “errand” 等名詞的前面。

He has started **on a tour** round the world. (他出發漫遊全球去了。)

He has come to town **on business**. (他有事進城來了。)

I went **on a visit** to a friend in the country. (我去訪問了一個鄉間的朋友。)

I have sent the boy **on an errand**. (我有事把小孩子差出去了。)

10. 結果 (Result)

“To” and “Into”

(1) 凡結果都用 “to” 來表示。

I hope change of air will prove **to your benefit**. (我希望遷地療養會於你有益。)

I found **to my joy** that he was still alive. (我看到他還活着,使我高興得很。)

Some poor fellows were **starved to death**. (有幾個可憐的人餓死了。)

The bottle broke **to pieces**. (瓶破得粉碎了。)

(2) “Into” 用於表‘變化的結果’。

Heat changes water **into steam**. (熱使水化爲蒸氣。)

Divide the line **into two equal parts**. (把線等分爲兩部分。)

Wheat is ground **into flour**. (麥磨成粉。)

Glass is made **into cup**. (玻璃製成杯子。)

11. 標準與比率 (Standard and Rate)

“By” and “At”

(1) “By” 用於表‘計算的標準’。

Pencils are sold **by the dozen** (=at so much per dozen). (鉛筆論打出售。)

The prices are **regulated by** demand and supply. (物價依需要與供給而定。)

The teachers are paid **by the hour**. (教師論時間定薪水。)

Such men are not to be measured **by the common standard**. (這種人是不能以普通的眼光看的。)

The enemy were killed **by thousands**. (敵人幾千幾千的被殺。)

“By” 又用於表‘比較的相差’。

He is my senior **by three years**. (他長我三歲。)

The pole is too short **by a foot**. (竿長差一尺。)

(2) “At” 用於表‘價值等的比率’。

The train was running **at the rate of 50 miles an hour**. (火車以每小時五十哩的速力行駛。)

Pleasure is bought **at the price of pain**. (快樂是用苦痛的代價買來的。)

They are going **at a snail's pace**. (他們緩緩地走去。)

The ship was steaming **at full speed**. (船以全速力開行。)

The house is valued **at 10,000 dollars**. (房子的估價是一萬元。)

【注意】指每個錢若干或若干錢一個等比率時用“at”，但指全體的價錢時用“for”。

比較 { I bought them **at two dollars apiece**. (我以每件兩塊錢買的。)
 { I bought them all **for fifty dollars**. (我全部用五十塊錢買的。)

12. 提及 (Reference)

“Of” and “About”

(1) “Of” 只用於‘指人或物的存在’。

I know **of** such a man. (我曉得有這樣的一個人。)

Who ever heard **of** such a man? (誰曾聽到過這樣的一個人?)

He never spoke **of** his sister. (他從來不說起他的姊妹。)

What do you think **of** my new horse? (我那隻新買的馬你以為如何?)

(2) “About” 用於‘指關聯及人或物的事情’。

I don't know well **about** him. (其人如何我不大明白。)

Tell us **about** some great man. (請講點關於偉人的話給我們聽聽。)

I have written to him **about** the matter. (關於這事我已寫信給他了。)

比較 { He spoke **of** you. (=He mentioned you.) (他提起你。)
 { He spoke **about** you. (=He said something about you.) (他講起你的事情。)

“On” and “In”

(1) “On” 用於表‘主題’ (Subject-Matter)。

The professor lectures **on** chemistry. (教授講授化學。)

I shall not dwell **on** the subject any longer. (我不想再絮說這個問題。)

I have often reasoned with him **on** his conduct. (關於他的行為我常常和他理論。)

He was musing **on** the mutability of human affairs. (他思索着人事的無常。)

比較	{	To speak of a matter = to mention it. (說起一件事情)
		To speak about a matter = to say something about it. (談論一件事)
		To speak on a subject = to make a speech about it. (講述一個題目)

(2) “In” 用於表‘提及的一點’。

No one can compare with him **in** scholarship. (在學問這點上，沒有人能夠及他。)

This is superior to that **in** point of quality. (在品質這點上，這個比那個好。)

The enemy surpassed us **in** respect of numbers. (在數目這點上，敵人在我們之上。)

This flower resembles that **in** colour. (在顏色這點上，這花是和那朵花相像的。)

13. 反對 (Opposition)

“Against” and “To”

(1) “Against” 用於表‘相反的方向及反對的行動’。

He stood leaning **against** the post. (他靠了柱子立着。)

It is hard to swim **against** the stream. (逆流游泳是很難的。)

I was compelled to drink **against** my will. (我違反了自己的意志被迫喝酒。)

Luck goes **against** me. (我運氣不好。)

比較 { The government was **against** war. (政府反對戰爭。)
 { The people were **for** war. (人民主張戰爭。)

(2) “To” 表‘反對’之意時，用在 “contrary”, “opposite”, “object” 等詞後面。

My views are **opposite to** yours. (我的意見和你的反對。)

Such a doctrine is **contrary to** reason. (這種教義是悖理的。)

I **objected to** his going. (我反對他去。)

Such a treaty will be **adverse to** our interests. (這種條約是不利於我們的。)

14. 行爲者與用具 (Agency and Instrumentality)

“By” and “With”

(1) Passive Verb 後面，表‘行爲者’時用 “by”。

The steam-engine was invented **by** James Watt. (蒸氣機爲詹姆士·瓦特所發明。)

The city was destroyed **by** an earthquake. (城市被地震所毀。)

He was killed **by** a falling stile. (他被落下來之瓦片所中而死。)

The bridge was carried away **by** the flood. (橋被洪水衝去了。)

(2) Passive Verb 後面，表‘器具’時用 “with”。

He was killed **with** a stone. (=Some one killed him **with** a stone.)
 (他是被人用石頭打死的。)

比較 { The city was destroyed **by** fire. (=Fire destroyed the city.)
 (城市被火所毀。)
 { The city was destroyed **with** fire. (=They destroyed the city **with** fire.) (他們用火把城市燒了。)

“By” 又用於表示‘手段’。

Thoughts are expressed **by means of** words. (思想藉了言語表達。)

Do you inform him **by letter**? (你用信通知他嗎?)

I am going **by land**, and coming back **by water**. (我打算陸路去水路回來。)

Exercise LI

I. 將適當的前置詞填入下列文句中的空處：—

1. We touched — Singapore — our way — England.
2. I will start — April 4th — three o'clock — the afternoon.
3. Warships are now built — steel.
4. We can change water — steam.
5. He is taller than you — two inches.
6. He works — morning — night every day, not resting — his labour even — Sundays.
7. I arrived — Hangchow — the evening — the 15th — March — half — six.
8. He is suffering — influenza.
9. Did you go to Shanghai — business?
10. When will this ship start — Vladivostok?
11. It is made — flour and water.
12. He started — a journey.
13. He was honoured — a public funeral after his death.
14. He died — fever — the age of twenty.
15. Greatly — my surprise, he failed — his attempt.
16. He laughed — me — my conduct.
17. I congratulate you — your success.
18. I get up at a quarter — six.
19. He bought the hens — 50 cents apiece.
20. He was silent — a time.

II. 將下列文句譯成英文。

1. 他生什麼病死去了?
2. 他被人奪去了錢, 剝去了衣服。
3. 我的信有沒有?
4. 有人拉了我的袖子。
5. 這本書被譯成好幾種外國語。
6. 會議從九點鐘開始。
7. 他稱病拒絕了面會。
8. 昨天我寫了一封問候的信給先生。
9. 昨夜有一個乞丐凍死在雪裏。
10. 我們乘車去呢, 還是乘船去?

主要的前置詞的意義 (Meanings of the Chief Prepositions)

“About”

1. 周 圍 (About = around *or* round):—
 People crowded **about** the stranger. (人們羣集在來客的周圍。)
 She wore a handkerchief **about** her neck. (她項頸裏繫了一塊手帕。)
2. 近 邊:—He lives somewhere **about** Chapei. (他住在開北一帶地方。)
3. 這 裏 那 裏 (About = here and there; hither and thither):—
 After dinner we strolled **about** the town. (吃了中飯以後, 我們在市中踱來踱去。)
4. 身 邊:—Have you any money **about** you? (你身邊有錢嗎?)
5. 正 將 (About = just going to; on the point of):—
 I was **about** to reply when he interrupted me. (我正要回答的時候, 他把我的話打斷了。)
6. 大 約:—It is **about** ten o'clock. (大約是十點左右。)
7. 關 於 (About = concerning; respecting):—
 What is your opinion **about** it? (關於這事你的意見如何?)
8. 從 事 (About = occupied with; attending to; doing):—
 What are you **about**? (你在做什麼?)

“Above”

1. 上 面:—The heaven is **above** us. (天在我們的頭上。)
2. 優 越 (Above = superior to):—
Health is **above** wealth. (健康優於財富。)
3. 超 脫 (Above = beyond; far superior to).—
He is **above** such meanness. (他不是做這種卑鄙事情的人。)
4. 以 上 (Above = over; more than; upwards of):—
He is **above** twenty years of age. (他的年紀在二十歲以上。)

“After”

1. 時 間 的 後:—**After** dark, we went back to our home. (暗了以後我們回來了。)
2. 順 序 的 後:—I will enter **after** you. (請你先進去吧。)
3. 追 蹤:—The cat ran **after** a rat. (貓追鼠。)
4. 追 求:—He is always seeking **after** wealth. (他常是要想得到財富。)
5. 酷 似:—He takes **after** his father. (他很像他父親。)
6. 模 倣:—This painting is **after** Millet. (這張畫是模倣彌萊的。)
7. 雖 然 (After = in spite of):—
He failed **after** all his labours. (他雖然費了許多勞力,可是終歸失敗。)

“Against”

1. 反 對:—I am **against** the plan. (我是反對這計畫的。)
2. 憑 倚:—He stood leaning **against** the wall. (他靠着牆壁而立。)
3. 衝 突:—He ran **against** me. (他跑過來和我碰了一頭。)
4. 對 照:—Thirty of our soldiers were killed, **against** fifty on the
enemy's side. (與敵人的戰死者五十名相對,我軍的戰死者為
三十人。)
5. 準 備:—We should always lay up **against** a rainy day. (我們應該預
未雨綢繆。)
6. 不 利:—Decision was given **against** the plaintiff. (判決於原告不利)

“Among” and “Between”

“Among” 用於兩個以上的人或物之間，“between” 只能用於兩個人或物之間。

- Those two men quarrelled **between** themselves. (那兩個人之間有了口角。) [兩人]
- Those three men quarrelled **among** themselves. (那三個人之間有了口角。) [三人]

1. 分 配:—His property was equally divided **between** (among) the children. (他的財產平分給兒女了。)
2. 共 有:—They owned the whole estate **between** (among) them. (全部財產他們是共有的。)
3. 協 力:—We finished the bottle **between** (among) us. (我們齊心協力地這瓶酒喝乾了。)
4. 私 言:—**Between you and me**, I think him a fool. (私下說一句,我想他是個呆子。)

“At”

1. 場所的一點:—There is a police-station **at** the end of the street. (街的盡頭有個警察局。)
2. 出入口:—He went out **at** the back gate. (他從後門出去了。)
3. 時間的一點:—School begins **at** eight o'clock. (上課從八點鐘開始。)
4. 有意志的接近:—The fishmonger is **at** the door. (賣魚的到門口來了。)
5. 比 率:—This tea is sold **at** the rate of 50 cents a pound. (這茶每磅賣五角錢。)
- 6 代 價:—**At** what price did you buy that hat? (那頂帽你用多少錢買的。)
7. 從 事:—He was busily **at** work all day. (他整天忙碌地工作。)

I found him **at** his books in the library. (我看到他在圖書館裏看書。)

[注意] “At play”, “at church”, “at school”, “at dinner” 等的 “at”, 亦屬於此類。

8. 狀 態:—Please call on me to-morrow if you are **at** leisure. (如果你有空,請你明天來。)

[注意] “At war”, “at peace”, “at rest”, “at ease” 等的 “at”, 屬於此類。

9. 目 標:—The hunter fired **at** a fox. (獵人向狐狸開槍。)

[注意] “Gaze”, “glance”, “look”, “smile”, “aim”, “throw”, “cast”, “point” 等動詞後面的 “at”, 皆屬於此類。

10. 見 了:—I am surprised **at** the sight. (見了這光景使我吃驚。)

11. 聽 了:—He was frightened **at** the news. (他聽了這消息吃驚。)

12. 極 限:—I return by the 10th **at** the latest. (我至遲十號回來。)

[注意] “At least”, “at best”, “at last”, “at (the) worst”, “at one’s wit’s end” 等皆屬於此類。

“Before”

1. 時 間 的 前:—It rained the day **before** yesterday. (前天下雨了。)

2. 場 所 的 前:—Don’t stand **before** me. (不要立在我的前面。)

3. 順 序 的 前:—In English the verb comes **before** the object. (英語的動詞放在目的語之前。)

4. 高 位:—A marquis is **before** a count. (侯爵比伯爵高。)

5. 選 擇:—He chooses **death before** dishonour. (他寧可死,不肯受辱。)

“Behind”

1. 後 面:—He stood **behind** me. (他立在我的後面。)

2. 背 後:—Do not speak ill of a man **behind** his back. (不要在背後說人的壞話。)

3. 身 後:—He has left a great fortune **behind** him. (他身後留下了一大
* 宗財產。)

4. 落 後:—Yesterday I was **behind** time. (我昨天遲到了。)

I am **behind** them in English. (我英文不及他們。)

They are **behind** the times. (他們是時代落伍的。)

“Below”

1. 下面:—The thermometer stood at five degrees **below** freezing point this morning. (今朝寒暑表在冰點以下五度)
2. 低 位:—A count is **below** a marquis in rank. (伯爵比侯爵位置低。)
3. 以 下:—He can not be **below** thirty. (他不會在三十歲以下。)
4. 劣 於:—His scholarship is **below** his cousin's. (他的學問不及他的堂兄弟。)

“Beneath”

1. 低 下:—Let us rest **beneath** the shade. (樹蔭底下來休息一下。)
2. 脚 下:—Many heroes sleep **beneath** those tombstones. (許多英雄躺在那些墓的下面。)
3. 不 足:—That is **beneath** your notice. (那是不足使你注目的。)
4. 卑 下:—Such conduct is **beneath** the dignity of a gentleman. (這種行為有損於紳士的體面。)

“Beside” and “Besides”

“Beside”與“Besides”本來是一個字，但現今在用法上已經有了區別。“Beside”含有“by the side of”及“aside from”等意義，“besides”只用於表“in addition to”或“over and above”之意。

1. 旁 邊:—She is standing **beside** her mother. (她立在她母親的旁邊。)
2. 超 出:—His speech was **beside** the mark. (他的言論是不中肯要的。
Your remark is quite **beside** the question. (你所說的，全是問題以外的事情。))
3. 比 較:—This is a poor work **beside** yours. (和你的比較起來，這物品是要不來的。)
4. 除 外:—They received a large bonus **besides** their salary. (他們除薪水之外，獲得了許多獎金。)

“Beyond”

1. 對 面:—The village is situated **beyond** the town of M. (村莊在 M 市的對面。)
2. 力 之 不 及:—The miserable **state** of those who are suffering from the famine is **beyond** description. (那些爲了飢饉受苦的人們的慘狀,實在非紙筆所能盡述。)
3. 超 過:—He was glad **beyond** measure. (他高興得不得了。)
Whatever relates to human life has usually attraction for him **beyond** all else. (凡於人生有關係的東西,通常比無論什麼東西都要惹他的注意。)

“By”

1. 旁 邊 (By = beside; by the side of):—
Come and sit **by** me. (請過來坐在我的旁邊。)
 2. 行 爲 者:—America was discovered **by** Columbus. (美洲是哥倫布所發見的。)
 3. 手 段 (By = by means of; by the help of):—
The money was taken from me **by** force. (錢是從我這裏強奪去的。)
Are you going **by** train or **by** steamer? (你預備乘車去呢,還是乘船去?)
A man pulled me **by** the sleeve. (有人拉我的袖子。)
- [注意] “By tele- phone”, “by wire”, “by land”, “by sea”, “by letter”, “by word of mouth”, “by car”, “by fax.” 等皆屬於此類。
4. 標 準 (By = according to):—
I did it **by** your advice. (這事情我是依了你的忠告做的。)
A man is known **by** the company he keeps. (人之如何,視其所交的朋友可知。)
Time is measured **by** the hour. (時間是以鐘點計算的。)

5. 相 差:—He is younger than I **by** two years. (他比我小兩歲。)

6 比 率:—Do you board **by** the week or **by** the month? (你是論星期住宿的呢,還是論月住宿的?)

They were slain **by** hundreds and thousands. (他們整百整千地被殺。)

7. 期 限:—I shall finish **it by** to-morrow morning. (到明天早上我就把他做好。)

8. 分配或累加:—They came in **one by one**. (他們一個一個地進來。)

[注意] “Little by little”, “step by step”, “day by day” 等皆屬於此類。

9. 警 言:—**By Heavens**, this is too much. (天哪,這是太過分了。)

“For”

1. 目 的 地:—He left Shanghai **for** America. (他離開上海到美國去了。)

[注意] 表目的的“for”, 用在 “depart”, “start”, “set out”, “sail”, “set off” 等動詞後面。

2. 意 向 (For = intended for):—

Whom is this letter **for**? (這封信給誰的?)

3. 目 的:—He has gone to Europe **for** sight-seeing. (他爲要增廣見識到歐洲去了。)

[注意] “For heaven’s sake”, “for convenience sake”, “for the purpose of” 等皆屬於此類。

4. 爲 了:—She made a coat **for** me. (她爲我做了一件衣裳。)

5. 探 求:—What are you looking **for**? (你在找什麼東西?)

[注意] 表探求的“for”, 用在 “ask”, “inquire”, “seek”, “search”, “hunt”, “hope” 等動詞後面。

6. 同 情:—I am sorry **for** you. (你真可憐。)

I am anxious **for** his safety. (我很掛念他。)

7. 贊 成:—I am **for** the bill, but he is against it. (我贊成這議案,但他反對的。)

8. 交 換:—I will exchange this **for** the other one. (我要拿這個換另外的一個。)
I bought it **for** (= *at the price of*) ten dollars. (這個我用十塊錢買的。)
A pronoun is used **for** (= *instead of*) a name. (代名詞是代用作一個名字的。)
9. 原 因:—I am angry with you **for** doing such a thing. (因你做這種事情,所以我對你發怒。)
She wept **for** joy. (她高興得出眼淚了。)
10. 理 由:—This place is noted **for** its beautiful scenery. (這地方以美麗的景色聞名。)
What is your reason **for** refusing? (你拒絕有什麼理由?)
11. 期 間:—I have not seen him **for** a long time. (我好久沒有看見他了。)
12. 距 離:—We rode side by side **for** a mile or so. (我們並肩乘了一哩光景的馬。)
13. 比 較:—The boy is tall **for** his age. (論起年紀來,這孩子並不矮。)
14. 雖 然:—**For** all his wealth, he is discontented. (他雖然有錢,却並不滿足。)

“From”

1. 場所的出發點:—How far is it **from** here to Ningpo? (從此地到寧波有多少路?)
2. 時間的出發點:—I have known him **from** the childhood. (我從孩兒時代起就認識他的。)
3. 推 定:—**From** what I hear, I think he must be guilty. (據我所聽到的說起來,我想他一定是有罪的。)
4. 分 離:—He has recovered **from** his illness. (他的病恢復原狀了。)
He has been away **from** home for over two years. (他離家已有兩年多。)

5. 區別:—Can you tell a dog **from** a wolf? (你能說得出犬與狼的區別嗎?)
This differs **from** that. (這個和那個不同。)
6. 材料:—Wine is made **from** grapes. (葡萄酒是用葡萄做的。)
7. 出處:—He comes **from** Chekiang. (他是浙江人。)
The war resulted **from** commercial rivalry. (這戰爭起於商業上的競爭。)
8. 妨害:—The rain prevented me **from** starting. (我因雨不能出發。)
- [注意] “Keep”, “hinder”, “dissuade” 等後面所用的 “from”, 皆屬於此類。
9. 禁止:—We are prohibited **from** smoking. (我們是不許吸煙的。)
10. 保護:—Let us take shelter **from** the rain. (讓我們躲一躲雨吧。)
11. 免除:—Those goods are free **from** duties. (這些貨品是免稅的。)
12. 原因:—He became crazy **from** drinking too much. (他因為飲酒過度發癡了。)
13. 動機:—This was all done **from** spite. (這完全是出於惡意做的。)

“In”

1. 較長的時間:—He was born **in** 1900. (他生在一千九百年。)
2. 期間的經過:—I shall be back **in** a few days. (我過幾天就回來的。)
3. 較廣的場所:—He lives **in** England. (他住在英國。)
- [注意] 雖為狹小的地方, 若談話者居住在該地方時, 則須用 “in”。
- I was born **in** this village. (我生在這村莊裏。)
4. 範圍:—Problem **in** politics and morals are more complex than those **in** mathematics. (政治上與道德上的問題比數學上的問題複雜。)
The word is frequently so used **in** Shakespeare. (該詞莎士比亞是常常作如此用的。)]
5. 狀態:—We should keep our body **in** health. (我們必須要保持身體康健。)
- [注意] “In good (bad) humour”, “in high (low) spirits”, “in a rage”, “in safety”, “in fury”, “in surprise”, “in fashion” 等皆屬於此類。

6. 樣 子:—The house is built **in** foreign style. (房子是照洋式造的。)

[注意] “In this way”, “in haste” “in earnest” 等皆屬於此類。

7. 目 的:—A reception will be given to-morrow **in** his honour. (明天將
爲他開一個歡迎會。)

[注意] “In memory of”, “in favour of”, “in behalf of” 等皆屬於此類。

8. 同 一:—I have found a good friend **in** Mr. A. (我找到了 A 君這個良
友。)

If you ever want a friend, you shall have one **in** me.
(= I will be your friend.) (若你要得一個朋友,那我就做了
你的朋友吧。)

9 程 度:—His success is **in** some measure owing to fortunate circum-
stances. (他的成功有幾分是靠幸福的境遇的。)

10. 分 量:—Pearls are found here **in** great numbers. (在這裏真珠可以大
量地取得。)

11. 在 某 一 點 上:—He is the first **in** mathematics. (他數學第一等。)

They are varied **in** size, colour, and shape. (他們的大
小,顏色,形狀都不同。)

12. 服 裝:—She is dressed **in** white. (她穿着白色的衣服。)

13. 材 料:—She looked like a statue cut **in** marble. (她的神色好像大理
石彫出的像。)

You must not write it **in** red ink. (你不應該用紅墨水寫。)

[注意] “A painting **in** oil”, “a book written **in** English”, “to speak **in** English”, “embroidered **in** gold”, “to speak **in** a loud voice” 等皆屬於此類。

14. 信 仰:—Do you believe **in** ghosts? (你相信鬼嗎?)

“Into”

1. 進 入:—He plunged **into** the water. (他跳入水中。)

2. 變 化:—Water changes **into** ice at 32° by Fahrenheit. (水到華氏三十
二度變冰。)

3. 製 作:—Bamboo is made **into** various kinds of things. (竹可製成種種
東西。)

4. 調 查:—Look **into** your dictionary. (查一查辭典。)

[注意] 此種意味的 “into”, 用在 “enter”, “inquire”, “go”, “search”, “dive” 等動詞後面。

5. 狀 態.—He flew **into** a passion. (他發了脾氣。)

[注意] “To get into favour”, “to run into debt”, “to burst into tears” 等皆屬於此類。

6. 結 果:—I talked her **into** submission. (我把她說服了。)

[注意] “To reason a man into compliance”, “to bribe a man into secrecy”, “to argue a man into conviction” 等皆屬於此類。

“Of”

1. 所 有:—He lives **in** the house **of** his uncle. (他住在叔父的家裏。)

[注意] 表所有的 “of”, 又有一種目的格的用法, 初學者務須注意。如 “The discovery of America”, “the destruction of a city”, “Caesar’s conquest of Gaul” 等。

{ The love **of** God (= God’s love for man). (神之愛)
 { The love **of** God (= man’s love for God). (人對於神的愛)

2. 同 格:—The country **of** China. (中國這國家)

The city **of** London. (倫敦市)

3. 形容短語:—He is a man **of** courage (= a *courageous man*). (他是個勇敢的人。)

This is **of** great use (= *very useful*). (這是很有用的。)

4. 部 分:—Some **of** the boys returned **by** steamer. (孩子中有幾個乘輪船回來了。)

5. 內 容:—He takes a glass **of** wine every evening. (他每晚喝一杯葡萄酒。)

[注意] “A cup of coffee”, “a spoonful of milk”, “a purse of money” 等皆屬於此類。

6. 材 料:—Formerly all ships were made **of** wood. (從前船都是木頭做的。)

This box is made **of** leather. (這箱子是用皮做的。)

7. 起 源:—Your illness comes **of** eating too much. (你的毛病是吃得過多的緣故。)

He is **of** noble blood. (他是個貴族。)

8. 關 係:—What became **of** your father? (你的父親怎樣了?)

Does your father know **of** this? (關於這事,你的父親知道嗎?)

It is very good **of** you to say so. (你這樣說,真是親切得很。)

[注意] “Hear of”, “talk of”, “boast of”, “complain of”, “remind of” 等皆屬於此類。

9. 原 因:—He died **of** consumption. (他生癆病死了。)

10. 褫 奪:—I was robbed **of** my money. (我的錢被搶去了。)

He was stripped **of** his clothing. (他被剝去了衣裳。)

比較 { I know the man. (我知道這個人。)
 { I know **of** such a man (= know that there is such a man). (我知道有這樣的一個人。)
 { I know **of** his death (= know that he is dead). (我知道他是死了。)
 { I know well **about** him. (關於他的事情,我很知道。)

“On”, “Upon”

“On” 與 “upon” 意義完全相同。除幾處 “upon” 的慣用之外, 普通用 “on” 的居多。

1. 表面的接觸:—There hangs a map **on** the wall. (壁上掛着一張地圖。)

2. 線的接觸:—The city of London stands **on** the Thames. (倫敦市在泰晤士河岸。)

3. 限定的時日:—A big fire broke out **on** the 10th of this month. (本月十號發生了大火。)

He goes to church **on** Sunday morning. (他星期日早上到教會裏去。)

4. 題 目:—Mr. Chang wrote an essay **on** electricity. (張君寫了一篇論電氣的文章。)

5. 實際的狀態：—He had killed an officer **on** duty. (他殺了一個勤務中的官長。)

[注意] “On fire”, “on the alert”, “on the watch”, “on one’s guard” 等皆屬於此類。

6. 目的：—He came up **to** town **on** important business. (他爲了重要的事情進城來了。)

[注意] “On purpose”, “on a tour”, “on an errand” 等皆屬於此類。

7. 基礎：—You must act **on** this theory. (你必須依這條學理行動。)
This novel is founded **on** fact. (這小說是根據於事實的。)

8. 理由：—He resigned **on** account of his poor health. (他因身體不好辭職了。)

[注意] “On the ground of”, “on that account” 等屬於此類。

9. 依賴：—Your success or failure depends **on** your exertion. (你的成敗須看你的努力如何。)

[注意] “Rely”, “count”, “reckon” 等後面所用的 “on”, 屬於此類。

10. 攻擊：—The German army advanced **on** Paris. (德國軍隊進攻巴黎。)
The lion sprang **on** the elephant. (獅子襲擊象。)

11. 樂器：—Can you play **on** the piano? (你會彈鋼琴嗎?)

12. 以後：—**On** leaving (= when he left) school, he went into business. (走出學校以後，他就進了實業界。)

“Out of”

1. in 的反對：—He is a fish **out of** water. (他猶如失水之魚。)

2. into 的反對：—He rushed **out of** the house into the street. (他從家裏跑出到街上去。)

3. 動機：—I saved him **out of** pity for his family. (我因憐憫他的家族，所以救了他。)

4. 來源：—**Out of** the same mouth proceed blessing and curse. (祝福與詛咒出於同一張嘴。)

5. 部分：—This is only one instance **out of** many. (這不過是許多實例中的一個而已。)

6. 材 料:—We make many things **out of** paper. (我們用紙製造許多東西。)

7. 失 去:—They are **out of** work. (他們失了業。)

[注意] “Out of fashion”, “out of favour”, “out of breath” 等皆屬於此類。

“Over”

1. 上 面:—The sun shines **over** the earth. (太陽照在地球上。)

2. 披 蓋:—Please spread the blanket **over** the grass. (請把絨毯鋪在草地上。)

3. 支 配:—He had no control **over** his children. (他不能制御他的子女。)

4. 以 上:—He seems to be **over** fifty. (他好像五十歲以上了。)

5. 同 時:—He went to sleep **over** his work. (他一邊工作,一邊睡去了。)

The discussed the matter **over** a bottle of wine. (他們一邊吃酒一邊討論事情。)

6. 感 情 的 原 因:—She wept **over** his death. (她悲泣他的死。)

He was a sentimental youth, and used to cry **over** a novel. (他是個傷感的青年,老是看了小說就哭起來。)

7. 跳 越:—He climbed **over** the wall. (他爬過牆去。)

8. 反 覆:—I will think **over** the matter. (這事情我來思考一下吧。)

“Through”

1. 貫 通 (Through=passing from one end or side to the other):—
They shot him **through** the head. (他們射穿了他的頭顱。)

2. 全 面 (Through=over the whole extent or surface of):—
The rumour spread **through** the city. (謠言散佈市中。)

3. 始 終 (Through=from the beginning to the end of):—
He was a diligent student **through** life. (他一生是個勤勉的學生。)

4. 媒 介:—They speak **through** an interpreter. (他們藉了翻譯者談話。)

5. 原 因:—He lost his position **through** neglect of his duty. (他爲了疏忽職務而失職。)

“To”

1. 時 間：—He remembered it **to** his dying day. (這事情他至死不忘。)
2. 鐘 點：—Ten minutes **to** twelve. (十二點前十分)
3. 方 向：—This road leads **to** Kiangwan. (這條路是到江灣去的。)
4. 附 加：—Add three **to** four. (四加三。)
5. 程 度：—Snow fell **to** the depth of 2 feet. (積雪厚二尺。)
6. 結 果：—He was burnt **to** death. (他被燒死了。)

[注意] “Starved to death”, “cut to pieces”, “reduced to ashes” 等皆屬於此類。

7. 比 例：—Ten **to** one he will fail in the new enterprise. (十之八九他的新事業是要失敗的。)
8. 比 較：—Life is compared **to** a voyage. (人生譬如航海。)
I prefer beer **to** wine. (與其葡萄酒，我還是歡喜啤酒。)
9. 適 合：—This work was not **to** his taste. (這工作與他的趣味不合。)
She has a husband **to** her mind. (她有個合意的丈夫。)
10. 合 調：—She sang **to** the piano. (她合着琴聲唱歌。)
11. 目 的：—He said something **to** that effect. (他說了點那種意味的話。)
12. 反 對：—Such a conduct is contrary **to** orders. (這種行動是違反命令的。)
13. 關 係：—He is the heir **to** that property. (他是那筆財產的承繼人。)
He is blind **to** his own faults. (他看不出自己的錯誤。)

“Under”

1. 下 面：—There is a cat **under** the table. (桌子底下有一隻貓。)
2. 支 配 之 下：—We were **under** his command. (我們是聽他指揮的。)
I learned English **under** a foreign teacher. (我的英文是外國教師那裏學的。)
3. 正 在：—The building is **under** repairs. (房子正在修理中。)
The case is **under** trial. (事件正在審查中。)
4. 以 下：—I am **under** twenty. (我還未滿二十歲。)

5. 負 担:—The old man bent **under** the heavy load. (老人負着重荷彎了身子。)
6. 假 托:—He is remaining in Nanking **under** the pretext of study. (他藉口求學,留在南京。)
7. 境 遇:—It is impos-ible **under** such circumstances. (在這種情境之下,這是不可能的。)

“With”

1. 所 有:—He is an oculist **with** a good practice. (他是個營業興盛的眼科醫生。)
2. 攜 帶:—He came back **with** this letter. (他帶了這封信回來了。)
3. 用 具:—We see **with** our eyes, and hear **with** our ears. (我們用眼看,用耳聽。)
4. 原 因:—Hearing the news, she is mad **with** joy. (聽到了這消息,她高興得發狂起來。)
5. 同 時:—I rise **with** the lark, and go **with** the lark to bed. (我與雲雀同起同睡。)
- With** this, he went away. (這樣說着他就走了。)
6. 比 較:—This is not to be compared **with** that. (這個是不能和那個比較的。)
7. 一 致:—He acted in accordance **with** rule. (他依照規則行動。)
8. 同 居:—I lived **with** my uncle for many years. (我和叔父同住了好幾年。)
9. 對 抗:—I have quarreled **with** him. (我和他有了口角。)
10. 關 係:—Don't keep company **with** such people. (不要同這種人做伴。)
- [注意] ‘Familiar’, ‘popular’, ‘intimate’, ‘sympathize’ 等後面的“with”, 即屬於此類。
11. 分 離:—I parted **with** my friend yesterday. (昨天我和我的朋友分別了。)
12. 樣 子:—He looked upon them **with** anger (= *angrily*). (他憤怒地看他們。)

13. 在 於 (With=in the case of):—

Marriage is, **with** the Christians, a religious ceremony.

(結婚在基督教徒,是一種宗教上的儀式。)

14. 附帶的狀態:—He was sitting **with** his back against the wall. (他靠了牆壁坐着。)

Exercise LII

I. 改正下列文句中的錯誤:—

1. The meeting will begin from seven o'clock this morning.
2. I arrived there at the 10th of the last month.
3. They will arrive in May 21st on 3 o'clock in afternoon.
4. This letter is written with red ink.
5. The carpenter builds your house with the bad wood.
6. Our customs are different with yours.
7. Whom shall I let run to this errand?
8. Two men-of-war just entered into the port.
9. This is the book that I referred.
10. He speak with such low voice that he could not be heard on the further end of the room.
11. He tried to run off, but I took his hand.
12. I have heard his death.
13. The West Lake is famous with its scenery.
14. They robbed his money.
15. I want you to clearly understand how I am sorry about you.
16. The stars are upon us.
17. What have you done to my watch?
18. Wine is made of grapes.
19. The boy made a kite by a knife.
20. We are much obliged by you to your help.

11. 將下列文句譯成中文：—

1. There was nothing of the student about him, but very much of the miner.
2. Poor as he was, he was above selling his country at any price.
3. He will do nothing that is beneath his high station.
4. After tea he had wrapped his plaid round him and gone out to look after his sheep, for the snow was falling heavily.
5. Are you tired of being always at work and of doing the same thing to-day that you did yesterday?
6. The stone was so large that it was beyond his strength to remove it.
7. He tied a long scarf round her neck to keep her from catching cold.
8. Roses are in bloom, filling the garden with their sweet scent.
9. To his great surprise, the lion came gently towards him, making a low, mourning sound as though he were begging help.
10. Tired out with his long journey, he lay down; and fell fast asleep.

第八章

接續詞 (CONJUNCTIONS)

接續詞可分爲以下兩類。

- 1 同位接續詞 (Co-ordinate Conjunctions)
- 2 從屬接續詞 (Subordinate Conjunctions)

[注意] 不論屬於何種接續詞，凡“as well as”，“in order that”等集數詞而成一接續詞的，統叫做 **Phrase Conjunction** (接續短語)。又，如“both...and”，“not only...but also”等前後相呼應的，叫做 **Correlative Conjunction** (關連接續詞)。

I. 同位接續詞 (Co-ordinate Conjunctions)

連接文法上有對等地位的詞、短語、及短句的接續詞，叫做同位接續詞 (Co-ordinate Conjunction)。

Chang and Wang are great friends. (張君與王君是好朋友。)

Are you going by land or by sea? (你打算由陸路去呢，還是海路去?)

He is old, but he is still strong. (他老了，但還是壯健的。)

同位接續詞又可細分爲以下四種：—

- (1) 連繫接續詞 (Copulative Conjunctions)
- (2) 選擇接續詞 (Alternative Conjunctions)
- (3) 反意接續詞 (Adversative Conjunctions)
- (4) 推論接續詞 (Illative Conjunctions)

1. 連繫接續詞 (Copulative Conjunctions)

連繫接續詞只用於連接 Word, Phrase, 或 Clause。

He gave me a book **and** a fountain-pen. (他給我一本書和一支自來水筆。)

He is a teacher, **and also** a musician. (他是個教師, 並且是個音樂家。)

He is a teacher, **and** a good one, **too**. (他是個教師, 而且是一個好教師。)

I do not want to go; **besides** I have **no** time. (我不要去, 並且工夫也沒有。)

He is well educated; **moreover**, he is a genius. (他受着好的教育, 況且他又是一個天才。)

This book is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{both} \\ \text{alike} \\ \text{at once} \end{array} \right\}$ interesting **and** instructive. (這本書又有趣又有益。)

This book is **not** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{only} \\ \text{merely} \end{array} \right\}$ interesting, **but** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{also} \\ \text{likewise} \end{array} \right\}$ instructive.

(這本書不但有趣, 並且有益。)

This book is instructive **as well as** interesting. (這本書有趣而又有益。)

2. 選擇接續詞 (Alternative Conjunctions)

選擇接續詞用於表選擇兩者之一的意味。

Do you know French **or** German? (你知道法文或德文嗎?)

Do you know **either** French **or** German? (你懂法文呢還是德文?)

He knows **neither** French **nor** German. (他不懂法文, 也不懂德文。)

[注意] 表兩方的打消時, 若前面用“neither”, 則後面必用“nor”; 但前面若為其他的打消詞時, 則後面須用“or”。

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He does not drink or smoke.} \\ \text{He neither drinks nor smokes.} \end{array} \right\}$ (他不喝酒, 也不吸煙。)

I am not rich, and I do not wish to be **either**.

I am not rich, **neither** do I will to be.

I am not rich, **nor** do I wish to be.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{I am not rich, and I do not wish to be either.} \\ \text{I am not rich, neither do I will to be.} \end{array} \right\}$ (我不是有錢的, 而且我也不想有錢。)

3. 反意接續詞 (Adversative Conjunctions)

反意接續詞表示反對的意味。

He is poor **but** proud. (他雖窮却是驕傲。)

He is young, **and yet** he is prudent. 他年紀青,但他却是謹慎的。)

He was unsuccessful; **still** he did not lose heart. (他沒有成功;但他仍然不失望。)

It is a fault, which, **however**, is a venial one. (這確是過失,但却是可以原諒的。)

It may sound strange, **nevertheless** it is true.

It may sound strange, **but** it is true for all that. } (聽起來或許覺得奇怪,但却是的確的。)

I am a late riser, **while** he is an early riser. (我是起得遲的,但他却是個早起家。)

Indeed he is young, **but** he is prudent. (他的確年紀青,但他是謹慎的。)

It is true he is old, **but** he is still strong. (他年紀確是老了,但他仍然是壯健的。)

A good method, **to be sure**; **but** hard to practise. (確是一個好方法,但是難以實行。)

4. 推論接續詞 (Illative Conjunctions)

推論接續詞表推論的意味,即用以連結前提與斷言的。

All men are mortal; kings are men; **therefore** kings are mortal. (人都要死的,王也是人,所以王也要死的。)

He is very tall; **hence** his nickname "Longfellow." (他身體很長,所以綽號叫做 Longfellow。)

I have no money, **so** I can't buy it. (我沒有錢,所以不能買。)

Have you walked it? **Then** you must be tired. (走了來的嗎?那你一定疲乏了。)

II. 從屬接續詞 (Subordinate Conjunctions)

統率 Noun Clause, Adjective Clause, 或 Adverb Clause 等 Subordinate Clause 的接續詞, 叫做從屬接續詞 (Subordinate Conjunctions)。

(1) Noun Clause 由 “that”, “if”, “whether” 或 “who”, “which”, “what” 等 Dependent Interrogative (從屬疑問詞) 統率。

That he will succeed is certain. } (他的成功是無疑的。)
It is certain that he will succeed. }

I asked if his father was at home. (我問他父親在家否。)

I don't know whether it is true or not. 這是否屬實, 我不知道。)

[注意] “That” 所率的 Noun Clause, 若爲動詞的 Object 時, 則 “that” 往往略去。

I think (that) he will certainly succeed. (我想他是一定成功的。)

(2) Adjective Clause 由 Relative Pronoun, Relative Adjective, Relative Adverb 統率, 請參照所舉各項可也。

(3) 統率 Adverb Clause 的接續詞, 可分爲幾種, 今將其中的主要者列舉於下。

(a) Time (時):—

He learned English when he was young. (他年青的時候學了英文。)

He took my place while I was ill. (我生病的期間也替我代了。)

You may come whenever you like. (隨便什麼時候你要來就可以來。)

You may read it as you run. (你可以一邊跑一邊讀——容易讀得很。)

It is ten years since I left home. (我離家已有十年。)

I must wait till (= until) my brother comes. (我必須等待到我的兄弟來。)

I left before he arrived. (在他到以前我出發了。)

He arrived after I left. (在我出發以後他到了。)

He left the room **as soon as** he saw me. (他一看到了我,就走出房間去了。)

He had **no sooner** seen me **than** he left the room. (他看到了我,就立刻走出房間去了。)

He had **scarcely** seen me **when** he left the room. (他差不多還沒看到我,就走出房間去了。)

You shall want for nothing **as long as** (= *while*) I live. (在我活着的期中,我總使你們萬事如意。)

Any book will do **so long as** (= *if only*) it is interesting. (只要是有趣的書,什麼書都可以。)

(b) Place (場所):—

Leave the flower **where** it is. (留花於原處。)

He is welcomed **wherever** he goes. (他不論到什麼地方去都受歡迎。)

(c) Comparison of Manner (狀態的比較):—

He treats me **as** he would treat a servant. (他像待奴僕一般地待我。)

He treats me **as if** I were a servant. (他待我像奴僕一樣。)

As the desert is like a sea, **so** is the camel like a ship. (駱駝之像船,正如沙漠之像海。)

As you sow, **so** will you reap. (善有善報,惡有惡報。)

(d) Comparison of Degree (程度的比較):—

He is **as** tall **as** his brother [is]. (他和他的兄弟一樣高。)

He is **not so** tall **as** his brother [is]. (他沒象他的兄弟那麼高。)

He is **taller than** his brother [is]. (他比他的兄弟高。)

(e) Cause or Reason (原因或理由):—

People despise him, **because** he is poorly dressed. (因他衣服醜陋,人都輕視他。)

I do **not** despise him **because** he is poorly dressed. (我並不因他衣服醜陋而輕視他。)

Since you say so, I must believe it. (因你這樣說,那,非相信不可。)

As prices are going up daily, poor people **are** in **great** distress. (因物價天天騰貴,所以貧民大感困苦。)

Now that (=since) you have finished your work, you may go. (你已做好了工作,那你可以去了。)

(f) Effect (結果):—

{ He studied so diligently that he was soon at the top of his class.
He studied with such diligence that he was soon at the top of his class. (他非常用力,所以不久就做了一級中的白眉。)

I am ill, so that I can not go out. (我生着病,所以不能出去。)

(g) Purpose (目的):—

H. works hard { (so) that
(in order) that } his family may live in comfort.

(他努力工作,使他的家庭得安樂地度日。)

Men work that they may earn a living. (人爲了謀生而工作。)

The old man walks with a cane, lest he should stumble. (老人恐怕跌倒,拿着拐杖走路。)

(h) Condition (條件):—

If you are hungry, I will give you something to eat. (如果你肚裏餓了,我就拿點吃的東西給你吧。)

You can not succeed in anything unless you are diligent. (你若不勤力,什麼事情都不能成功。)

I will leave a note in case he is absent. (如果他不在,那我就留一張條子給他吧。)

I will pardon him provided he acknowledge his fault. (如果他認錯,那我就饒恕他。)

(i) Concession (讓步):—

Although (=though) he is rich, he is not happy. (他雖然有錢,却並不幸福。)

Whether it may be true or not, it does not concern us. (不論確實與否,總之這事情於我們無關。)

If he is old, he is still strong. (他雖然老,却是強健的。)

Even if he is poor, he is honest. (他雖然窮,却是誠實的。)

